



W. L. Marshall

W. L. Marshall

Ευφροσύνη

no 217

William H. Young.
Glendale Institute
Kirkwood.
Missouri.

25

1847

1847

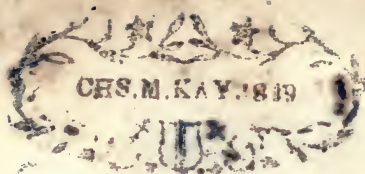
1847

1847

1847

1847

1847



Charles M. Kay
Shurtleff College
June 9th - 1889

1870

Handwritten text, possibly a signature or date, appearing in the lower left quadrant.

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2008 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation

GALLIA ANTIQUA.

Roman Miles

Londonum

BRITANNIA

CANTUARIA

Fredum

Sarnia

Concubantia

Caracallum

Caletum

Casuria

Alroquens

Lexovii

Constantine

Auterci Eburoni

Curiosokites

Diablintes

Corisopolis

Redones

Anter

Veneti

Samnites

Andes

Endilbes

Canabum

Turonis

Pictones

Pictavi

Bitur

Pictunum

Tharust

Biturige

Biturige

Biturige

Biturige

Biturige

Biturige

Biturige

Biturige

Biturige

Biturige

Biturige

Biturige

Biturige

Biturige

Biturige

Biturige

Biturige

Biturige

HISPANIA



Map of Gaul (France) and surrounding regions, showing Roman provinces, cities, and geographical features. The map is oriented with North at the top.

Key features include the Rhine River (Rhenus) on the right, the Alps (Alpes) in the south, and the Mediterranean Sea (Mare Internum) on the left.

Major Roman provinces labeled include Gallia Belgica, Gallia Lugdunensis, and Gallia Narbonensis.

Notable cities and towns marked include Lugdunum, Narbonne, Arles, and others.

A prominent red line, likely representing a major Roman road or boundary, runs from the northwest towards the southeast.

The map is framed by a double-line border, with the word "GALLIA" written vertically along the right edge and "GALLIENSIS" along the bottom edge.



THE FIRST SIX BOOKS
OF
CÆSAR'S COMMENTARIES
ON THE
GALLIC WAR,
ADAPTED TO
BULLIONS' LATIN GRAMMAR;

WITH AN INTRODUCTION, ON THE IDIOMS OF THE LATIN
LANGUAGE; COPIOUS EXPLANATORY NOTES; AND
AN INDEX OF PROPER NAMES, ETC.

By Rev. PETER BULLIONS, D. D.,
PROFESSOR OF LANGUAGES IN THE ALBANY ACADEMY; AND AUTHOR
OF THE SERIES OF GRAMMARS, GREEK, LATIN AND
ENGLISH, ON THE SAME PLAN.

THIRD EDITION.

NEW-YORK:
PUBLISHED BY PRATT, WOODFORD & Co.
No. 82 WALL STREET.

.....
1845.

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1845, by
PETER BULLIONS,
in the Clerk's Office of the Southern District of New-York.

EDUCATION LIBR.

PA6235

B 94

1845

Educ.

Lib.

PREFACE.

CÆSAR is usually, and with great propriety, among the first books put into the hands of pupils commencing the study of Latin. In adapting a portion of this work, as well as the Latin Reader, to his Latin Grammar, the chief object of the Editor has been to lead the student, in the beginning of his course, to a minute and thorough acquaintance with the principles of the language. The text of Oudendorp has been generally followed. For the sake of convenience, and also because, with many, Cæsar is the first book studied after the Grammar, the Introduction on the Latin Idioms prefixed to the Latin Reader has been prefixed here also. To this as well as to the Grammar reference is constantly made at the foot of the page, for the purpose of explaining and illustrating principles as they occur; and if the pupil will only take the pains to examine these references as he proceeds, he will gradually, and with comparatively little labor, become so familiar with the grammatical structure and idioms of the language that his future progress will be much more rapid and pleasant than it can be without such a course of training.

To the text copious notes have been added, for the purpose of explaining more particularly some constructions of the language,—aiding the pupil in the selection of an appropriate term, or, in giving variety to his expression,—and, in some cases, of assisting him to apprehend more clearly the meaning of the author. These, together with the references to the Introduction and Grammar above specified, contain such and so much assistance as an industrious and intelligent pupil, at this stage of his progress, in preparing his lessons, may be supposed to need from his teacher; so that by a proper use of this work, both the teacher will be relieved in a great measure from that labor, and interruption of other duties which the ren-

M577009

dering of this assistance would require, and the pupil will have always at hand the assistance needed. These notes are taken chiefly from Dymock's *Cæsar*, Glasgow edition. A few have been added from other sources.

The Vocabulary or index at the end of the work is abridged from the same author, and contains various and important information respecting the persons and places mentioned in the text, and also respecting many things belonging to the antiquities and polity of the Romans and their method of conducting military operations. In this part several wood cuts have been introduced to aid the pupil in forming correct ideas of some of the engines and operations of war, as they existed in the days of *Cæsar*.

The map of Ancient Gaul has been prepared with special reference to this work, and exhibits the divisions of that country, with the names of nations, tribes, and towns, mentioned by *Cæsar*, as they existed in his time, so far as their position can be ascertained from authentic sources. The modern names of the same places will be found, generally, by consulting the Index.

A correct pronunciation as it regards quantity should be attended to from the beginning. In order to aid the pupil in forming correct habits in this too much neglected part of study, the quantity of the penult syllable has been marked in all words of more than two syllables, except where the penult vowel is followed by two consonants or a double consonant, in which case it is always long; or where the penult vowel is followed by another vowel, in which case it is almost always short; or when the syllable being common, that is, either short or long, there is no danger of the quantity being given wrong. In words of two syllables there is little danger of wrong pronunciation, and if, in words of more than two syllables, the quantity of the penult is correctly given, there is little danger of error elsewhere.

With a view to render the work as full as was deemed necessary, and at the same time to bring the price so low as to make it more generally accessible, only the first six books of the *Commentaries* on the Gallic war have been taken. These contain all that portion of this author usually read in academies and schools, and to have taken more would only have increased the size and the price of the book without any corresponding benefit to the purchaser.

The Editor takes this opportunity to renew his grateful acknowledgements to the many learned men, and instructors of youth, for

the favor with which his humble labors have been received by them, and for the many important suggestions communicated, by which he has been enabled to add essentially to their value and usefulness. A Greek Reader adapted to the Greek Grammar is now preparing, and will be published as speedily as possible.

ALBANY ACADEMY, }
February 26, 1845. }

NOTICE.

In the text, the references to the Grammar generally will be found at the places indicated, in all the editions. Those marked § 140, 1, 1st, 2d, 3d, 4th, will be found in editions previous to the last of 1844, at § 145, Obs. 5, 1st, 2d, 3d, 4th: And those marked § 140, 2, 3, 4, 5, will be found under § 140, Obs. 1, 2d, 3d, 4th, and 5th.

INTRODUCTION.

SENTENCES.

1. A sentence is such an assemblage of words as makes complete sense; as, *Man is mortal.*
2. Sentences are of two kinds, *simple* and *compound*.
3. A simple sentence contains but one subject and one verb; as, *Life is short. Time flies.*
4. A compound sentence contains two or more simple sentences combined; as, *Life, which is short, should be well employed.*
5. In the combining of words to form a sentence, observe carefully the following

General Principles of Syntax.

1. In every sentence there must be a *verb* in the indicative, subjunctive, imperative, or infinitive mood, and a *subject*, expressed or understood.
2. Every adjective, adjective pronoun, or participle, must have a substantive expressed or understood with which it agrees, § 98 and § 146.*
3. Every relative must have an antecedent or word to which it refers, and with which it agrees, § 99.
4. Every nominative has its own verb expressed or understood, of which it is the subject, §§ 100, 101, 102. Or is placed after the substantive verb in the predicate, § 103.
5. Every finite verb; i. e., every verb in the indicative, subjunctive or imperative mood, has its own nominative, expressed or understood, §§ 101, 102, and when the infinitive has a subject it is in the accusative, § 145. The infinitive without a subject does not form a sentence or proposition, § 143.
6. Every oblique case is governed by some word, expressed or understood, in the sentence of which it forms a part.

* The references are to the sections in the Latin Grammar.

Resolution or Analysis.

Every simple sentence consists of two parts, the subject and the predicate, § 94, 6. 7. 8. In analyzing a sentence, it is necessary to distinguish between the *Grammatical* subject and predicate, and the *Logical* subject and predicate.

The *Grammatical subject* is the name or thing spoken of, without, or separated from, all modifying words or clauses, and which stands as the nominative to the verb, or the accusative before the infinitive.

The *Logical subject* is the same word in connection with the qualifying or restricting expressions, which go to make up the full and precise idea of the thing spoken of.

The *Grammatical predicate* is the word or words containing the simple affirmation made respecting the subject.

The *Logical predicate* is the grammatical predicate combined with all those words or expressions that modify or restrict it in any way; thus:

In the sentence, "An inordinate desire of admiration often produces a contemptible levity of deportment;" the Grammatical subject is "*desire*;" the Logical "*An inordinate desire of admiration.*" The Grammatical predicate is "*produces*," the Logical, "*produces often a contemptible levity of deportment.*"

In Latin and English, the *general* arrangement of a sentence is the same, i. e., the sentence commonly begins with the subject and ends with the predicate. But the order of the words in each of these parts, is usually so different in Latin, from what it is in English, that one of the first difficulties a beginner has to encounter with a Latin sentence, is to know how "to take it in," or to arrange it in the proper order of the English. This is technically called *construing* or *giving the order*. To assist in this, some advantage may be found by carefully attending to the following

Directions for Beginners.

DIRECT. I. As all the other parts of a sentence depend upon the two leading parts, namely, the subject or NOMINATIVE, and the predicate or VERB; the first thing to be done with every sentence, is to find out these. In order to this,

1. Look for the leading verb, which is always in the present, imperfect, perfect, pluperfect, or future of the indicative, or in the imperative mood,* and usually at or near the end of the sentence.

2. Having found the verb, observe its number and person; this will aid in finding its nominative, which is a noun or pronoun in the same number and person with the verb, commonly before it, and near the beginning of the sentence, though not always so, § 151. R. I. with exceptions.

DIRECT. II. Having thus found the nominative and verb, and ascertained their meaning, the sentence may be resolved from the Latin into the English order, as follows:

1. Take the *Vocative, Exciting, Introductory, or connecting words*, if there are any.

2. The NOMINATIVE.

3. Words *limiting* or *explaining* it, i. e., words agreeing with it, or governed by it, or by one another, where they are found, till you come to the *verb*.

4. The VERB.

5. Words *limiting* or *explaining* it, i. e., words which modify it, are governed by it, or depend upon it.

6. Supply everywhere the words *understood*.

7. If the sentence be compound, take the parts of it severally as they depend one upon another, proceeding with each of them as above.

DIRECT. III. In arranging the words for translation, in the subordinate parts of a sentence, observe the following

Rules for construing.

I. An oblique case, or the infinitive mood, is put after the word that governs it.

Exc. The relative and interrogative are usually put before the governing word, unless that be a preposition; if it is, then after it.

II. An adjective, if no other word depend upon it or be coupled with it, is put *before* its substantive; but if another word depend upon it, or be governed by it, it is usually placed after it.

* All the other parts of the verb are generally used in subordinate clauses. So, also, is the pluperfect indicative. In oblique discourse, the leading verb is in the infinitive, § 141. Rule VI.

III. The participle is usually construed after its substantive, or the word with which it agrees.

IV. The relative and its clause, should, if possible, come immediately after the antecedent.

V. When a question is asked, the nominative comes after the verb; (in English between the auxiliary and the verb.) Interrogative words, however, such as *quis*, *quotus*, *quantus*, *uter*, &c., come before the verb.

VI. After a transitive active verb, look for an accusative, and after a preposition, for an accusative or ablative, and arrange the words accordingly.

VII. Words in apposition must be construed as near together as possible.

VIII. Adverbs, adverbial phrases, prepositions with their cases, circumstances of time, place, cause, manner, instrument, &c., should be placed, in general, after the words which they modify. The case absolute commonly before them, and often first in the sentence.

IX. The words of different clauses must not be mixed together, but each clause translated by itself, in its order, according to its connection with, or dependence upon, those to which it is related.

X. Conjunctions should be placed before the last of two words, or sentences connected.

LATIN IDIOMS.*

PARTICULAR DIRECTIONS AND MODELS FOR TRANSLATION.

[The following explanations and directions are intended chiefly for reference. But it will be of great advantage for the pupil to become familiar with them by going through them two or three times, *in course*, simultaneously with his reading lessons.]

1. BEFORE translating, every sentence should be read over till it can be read correctly and with ease, paying special attention to the quantity and pronunciation. The words should then be arranged according to the preceding general directions, and translated as they are arranged, separately or in clusters, as may be found convenient; always remembering to place adjectives and adjective pronouns with their substantives before translating. The sense and grammatical construction being thus ascertained, the translation may then be read over without the Latin, and due attention paid to the English idiom. The whole sentence, whether simple or compound, may then be analyzed as directed § 152, and last of all, every word parsed separately as directed, § 153.

2. In order to arrange and translate with ease, it is necessary to be familiar with, and readily to distinguish the different cases, genders, and numbers of nouns, pronouns, adjectives, and participles, and to translate them correctly and promptly, in these cases and numbers, &c.; and also to distinguish and correctly translate the verb in its various moods, tenses, numbers, persons, &c. This can be acquired only by continual practice and drilling, which should be kept up till the utmost readiness is attained.

3. The English prepositions used in translating the different cases in Latin, for the sake of convenience, may be called SIGNS of those cases; and in translating these, the English *definite* or *indefinite* article is to be used as the sense requires. The signs of the cases are as follows:

Nom. (No sign.)	Acc. (No sign.)
Gen. <i>Of</i> .	Voc. <i>O.</i> or no sign.
Dat. <i>To</i> or <i>for</i> .	Abl. <i>With, from, in, by, &c.</i>

* A *Latin idiom*, strictly speaking, is a mode of speech peculiar to the Latin language. It is here used in a more extended sense, to denote a mode of speech different from the English, or which, if rendered word for word, and with the ordinary signs of cases, moods, tenses, &c., would not make a correct English sentence.

In certain constructions the idiom of the English language requires the oblique cases in Latin to be translated in a manner different from the above. The chief of these constructions are the following:

4. The Genitive.

1. The genitive denoting the place where, R. XXXVI., is translated *at*; as, *Romæ*, "At Rome."

2. Denoting *price*, sometimes *for*; as, *Vendidit pluris*, "He sold it *for more*;" or without a sign; as, *Constitit pluris*, "It cost *more*."

5. The Dative.

1. After a verb of taking away, R. XXIX.; the dative is translated *from*; as, *Eripuit me morti*, "He rescued me *from death*;" *Eripitur morti*, "He is rescued *from death*." R. XXXII–III. See § 123, Exp.

2. Denoting the doer after a passive verb, R. XXXIII., it is translated *by*; as, *Vix audior ulli*, "I am scarcely heard *by any one*."

3. Denoting the possessor, R. XV., Obs. 1, it is translated as the genitive; as, *Ei in mentem venit*, "It came into the mind *to him*," i. e., *of him*, or into *his* mind.

4. After verbs signifying "to be present," *at*; as, *Adfuit precibus*, He was present *at prayers*. § 112, R. I.

6. The Ablative.

1. The ablative denoting a property or quality of another substantive, R. VII., is translated *of*; as, *Vir miræ magnitudinæ*, "A man *of wonderful size*."

2. The place where, R. XXXVI. Exc., commonly *at*, sometimes *in*.

3. After the comparative degree, § 120, R. XXIV., *than*; as, *Dulcior melle*, "Sweeter *than honey*."

4. Denoting the material of which a thing is made, § 128, Obs. 2, *of*; as, *Factus ebore*, "Made *of ivory*."

5. After *dignus* and words denoting origin; also after *opus* and *usus*, signifying need, *of*; as, *Dignus honore*, "Worthy *of honor*."

6. Denoting time how long, sometimes *in*; as, *Uno die fecit*, "He did it *in one day*;" sometimes without a sign; as, *Uno die abfuit*, "He was absent *one day*."

7. Time when, *at, on*; as, *Solis occāsu*, "At the setting of the sun;" *Idibus Aprīlis*, "On the ides of April."

8. After verbs of depriving, § 125, *of*; as, *Eum veste spoliāvit*, "He stripped him of *his garment*."

Cases without Signs.

7. When the genitive, dative, or ablative, is governed by an intransitive verb which is translated by a transitive verb in English, (§ 38, Obs. 4.) or by an adjective denoting likeness, the sign of the case is omitted; as,

- | | |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. Gen. <i>Miserere mei</i> , | Pity me. |
| 2. Dat. <i>Præfuit exercitui</i> , | He commanded the army. |
| 3. " <i>Placuit regi</i> , | It pleased the king. |
| 4. Abl. <i>Utitur fraude</i> , | He uses deceit. |
| 5. " <i>Potitus est imperio</i> , | He obtained the government. |
| 6. Dat. <i>Similis patri</i> , | Like his father. |

Obs. But when rendered by an intransitive verb in English, the sign of the case must be used; as,

7. *Insidiantur nobis*, They lie in wait for us.

8. When a verb governs two datives, by R. XIX., the dative of the end or design is sometimes rendered without the sign; as,

1. *Est mihi voluptati*, It is to me [for] a pleasure; i. e.,
It is [or brings] a pleasure to me.

9. The ablative absolute, R. LX., (See No. 109,) and frequently time how long, R. XL., are without the sign; as,

1. *Bello finito*, The war being ended.
2. *Sex mensibus abfuit*, He was absent six months.

10. When the ablative is governed by a preposition, the English of that preposition takes the place of the sign of the ablative, and no other will be used; thus,

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. <i>Ab exercitu</i> , From the army. | 4. <i>Cum dignitate</i> , With dignity. |
| 2. <i>Ex urbe</i> , Out of the city. | 5. <i>Pro castris</i> , Before the camp |
| 3. <i>In agro</i> , In the field. | 6. <i>Tenus pube</i> , Up to the middle |

11. In order to specify more particularly, the English idiom sometimes requires the possessive pronouns, *my, thy, his, her, its, our, your, their*, (not expressed in Latin unless contrasted with others,) to be supplied before a noun, and espe-

cially if they refer to the subject of the sentence. The sense will shew when this is to be done and what pronoun is to be used; as,

- | | |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. <i>Filius similis patri,</i> | A son like his father. |
| 2. <i>Reverere parentes,</i> | Reverence your parents. |

12. Nouns in apposition, (§ 97, R. I.,) must be brought as near together as possible, and the sign of the case, when used, prefixed to the first only; as,

- | | |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. Nom. <i>Cicero Orator,</i> | Cicero the orator. |
| 2. Gen. <i>Ciceronis oratoris,</i> | Of Cicero the orator. |
| 3. Dat. <i>Ciceroni oratori,</i> | To Cicero the orator, |
| 4. Abl. <i>Cicerone oratore,</i> | With Cicero the orator. |

13. The noun in apposition is sometimes connected with the noun before it by the words *as, being, &c.*; as,

- | | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Misit me comitem,</i> | He sent me as a companion. |
| 2. <i>Hic puer venit,</i> | He came, when [or being] a boy. |

Adjectives and Substantives.

14. In translating an adjective or adjective pronoun and a substantive together, the adjective is commonly placed first, and the sign of the case is prefixed to it, and not to the noun, § 98, R. II.; as,

- | | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Nom. <i>Altus mons,</i> | A high mountain. |
| 2. Gen. <i>Alti montis,</i> | Of a high mountain. |
| 3. Dat. <i>Alto monti,</i> | To [for] a high mountain. |
| 4. Abl. <i>Alto monte,</i> | With a high mountain. |

15. When two or more adjectives, coupled by a conjunction belong to one substantive, they may be placed either before or after it; as,

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Jupiter optimus et maximus,</i> | Jupiter the best and greatest; or |
| <i>Optimus et maximus Jupiter,</i> | The best and greatest Jupiter. |
| 2. <i>Viri sapientis et docti,</i> | Of a man wise and learned; or |
| <i>Sapientis et docti viri,</i> | Of a wise and learned man. |

16. The adjective must be placed after its substantive when the former has a negative joined with it, or another word in the sentence governed by it, or dependent upon it. So also *solus*; as,

- | | |
|--|----------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Dux peritus belli,</i> | A general skilled in war. |
| 2. <i>Filius similis patri,</i> | A son like his father. |
| 3. <i>Poeta dignus honore,</i> | A poet worthy of honor. |
| 4. <i>Homines soli sapient,</i> | Men alone are wise. |
| 5. <i>Avis tam parum decora,</i> | A bird so little beautiful. |
| 6. <i>Littore non molli neque arenoso,</i> | With a shore not soft nor sandy. |

17. The adjectives *primus*, *medius*, *ultimus*, *extrēmus*, *infimus*, *imus*, *summus*, *suprēmus*, *reliquus*, *cæter*, or *cætērus*, and some others describing a *part* of an object, are translated as substantives, with the sign of the case prefixed, and *of* before the substantive following, § 98, Obs. 9; as,

- | | |
|------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Mediâ nocte</i> , | <i>In the middle of the night.</i> |
| 2. <i>Ad summum montem</i> , | <i>To the top of the mountain.</i> |

18. When these adjectives (No. 17,) describe the whole and not a part only, they are translated as No. 11.; as,

- | | |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| <i>Summum bonum</i> , | <i>The chief good.</i> |
| <i>Suprēmus dies</i> , | <i>The last day.</i> |

19. An adjective without a substantive usually has a substantive understood, but obvious from the connexion, § 98, Obs. 5. Masculine adjectives, (if plural,) commonly agree with *homīnes*, or, if possessives, with *amīci*, *cives*, or *mīlites*, understood; and neuters, with *factum*, *negotium*, *verbum*, *tempus*, &c.; as,

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. <i>Boni (homīnes) sunt rari</i> , | <i>Good men are rare,</i> |
| 2. <i>Cæsar misit suos (mīlites,)</i> | <i>Cæsar sent his soldiers.</i> |
| 3. <i>Cocles transnāvit ad suos</i>
<i>(cives,)</i> | <i>Cocles swam over to his fellow-</i>
<i>citizens.</i> |
| 4. <i>Labor vincit omnia (negotia)</i> | <i>Labor overcomes all things.</i> |
| 5. <i>In postērum (tempus,)</i> | <i>In time to come,—for the future.</i> |
| 6. <i>In eo (loco) ut.</i> | <i>In such a situation that.</i> |

20. Adjectives commonly used without a substantive, (but still belonging to a substantive understood,) may be regarded as substantives. They are such as *mortāles*, *boni*, *mali*, *supēri*, *infēri*, *Græcus*, *Romānus*, &c. (See § 98, Obs. 5.); as,

- | | |
|------------------------------------|---|
| 1. <i>Mali odērunt bonos</i> , | <i>The wicked hate the good.</i> |
| 2. <i>Græcos Romāni vicērunt</i> , | <i>The Romans conquered the Greeks.</i> |

21. Adjective words when partitives, or used partitively, take the gender of the noun expressing the whole, and govern it in the genitive plural, (if a collective noun, in the genitive singular,) § 107, RULE X. In this case verbs and adjectives agree with the partitive as if it were a noun; as,

- | | | |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------|
| 1. <i>Aliquis philosophōrum</i> | <i>Some one of the philosophers</i> | <i>has</i> |
| <i>dixit,</i> | <i>said.</i> | |
| 2. <i>Una musārum</i> | <i>One of the muses</i> | <i>will come.</i> |
| 3. <i>Multi nobiliūm juvēnum</i> , | <i>Many noble young men.</i> | |

22. The comparative degree not followed by an ablative, or the conjunction *quam*, (than) is usually translated by the positive with *too* or *rather* prefixed. For explanation see § 120, Obs. 5.; as,

1. *Iracundior est*, (scil. *æquo*,) He is *too* (or *rather*) *passionate*.
2. *Ægrius ferēbat*, He took it *rather ill*.
3. *Altius volāvit*, He flew *too high*.

Obs. In a comparison, *ed* or *tanto* with a comparative in one clause, and *quod* or *quanto* in the other, may be rendered "the ;" (See No. 44. 7. 8.) as,

4. *Quod plures, ed feliciōres*, *The more the happier*.

23. The superlative degree expressing comparison, is usually preceded by the article *the* in English, (§ 25,) as,

1. *Doctissimus Romanōrum*, *The most learned* of the Romans.
2. *Fortissimus miles in exercitu*, *The bravest soldier* in the army.

24. When the superlative does not express comparison, but only eminence or distinction, it is translated with the article *a* or *an* prefixed in the singular, and without an article in the plural; or by the positive, with *very*, *eminently*, &c., prefixed, (§ 25,) as,

1. *Homo doctissimus*. *A most learned* (or *a very learned*) man.
2. *Homīnes doctissimi*, *Most learned* (or *very learned*) men.

25. *Alius* repeated with a different word in the same clause, renders that clause double, and requires it to be translated as in the following examples:

1. *Alius aliā viā*, One by one way, another by another.
2. *Aliud aliis videtur*, One thing seems good to some, another to others, i. e. Some think one thing, and some another. (See other varieties. § 98. Obs. 11.)

The same usage occurs with words derived from *alius*. See Gr. § 98, Obs. 12.

26. The distributive numeral adjectives are usually translated by the cardinal number indicated, with "each," or "to each," annexed; sometimes by repeating the cardinal thus, "one by one;" "two by two," &c., § 24, 11; as,

1. *Consules binas naves habebant*, The consuls had *each two* ships, or, had *two ships each*.
2. *Quā singūli carri ducuntur*, Where wagons could be led *one by one*.
3. *Tigna bina*, Beams *two by two*, or in pairs.
4. *Singūlis singulas partes distribuit æquales*, He distributed equal parts, *one to each*.
5. *Singūlis mensibus hoc fecit*, This he did *every* (or *each*) month.
6. *Plures singūli uxōres habent*, They have *each* many wives.

Pronouns.

27. 1st. The adjective pronoun, *hic*, *hæc*, *hoc*, with a noun following, is used as an adjective, and means, in the singular, "*this*,"—in the plural, "*these*."—*Ille*, *illâ*, *illud*,—*is*, *ea*, *id*,—*iste*, *ista*, *istud*, with a noun, in the singular, mean "*that*,"—in the plural, "*those*."

2d. Without a noun following they are all used substantively, and mean, in the singular, *he*, *she*, *it*; in the plural, *they*; thus,

1. *Hic vir*, This man.

2. *Illa femina*, That woman.

3. *Ea urbs*, That city.

4. *Hic fecit*, He did it.

5. *Illa vēnit*, She came.

6. *Ea* (Dido) *condidit eam*, She built it, (Carthage.)

Obs. In sentences containing an enumeration of particulars, the same pronoun is sometimes used in successive clauses, but they require to be translated differently, (§ 98, *Obs.* 12.); thus,

7. <i>Hic</i> ,	} "one," "the one."	— <i>hic</i> ,	} "another," "the other."
8. <i>Is</i> ,		— <i>is</i> ,	
9. <i>Ille</i> ,		— <i>ille</i> ,	
10. <i>Alter</i> ,		— <i>alter</i> ,	

When antithesis or contrast is stated, *hic* is translated "*this*," and refers to the nearer antecedent, *ille*, "*that*," and refers to the more distant; as,

11. *Hic minor natu est, ille major*, This is the younger, that, the older.

28. *Is*, *ea*, *id*, followed by *ut*, or the relative, *qui*, *quæ*, *quod*, in the next clause, means "*such*," and implies comparison. The relative after it may be translated, *that I*, *that thou*, *that he*, *that they*, &c., according as the antecedent requires, or it may be translated *as*, and its verb by the infinitive (§ 31, *Obs.* 2.); thus,

1. *Is homo erat ut*, &c.,

He was *such* a man that, &c.

2. *Neque is sum qui terrear*,

I am not *such that* I may be frightened. Or better thus, I am not *such a one as* to be frightened.

Obs. The adverb *eò* with *ut* following it means "*so far*," "*to such a degree*," "*to such a point*," "*in such a state*;" as,

3. *Eò pervēnit ut*,

"He came *so far*, (i. e. made such progress.) *that*;"

Possessive Pronouns.

29. The possessive pronoun is equivalent in meaning to the genitive of the substantive pronoun, and may often be so translated; as,

1. *Beneficio suo populiq̄e Romāni,* By the kindness of himself and of the Roman people.
2. *Cum mea nemo scripta legat, vulgo recitāre timentis,* Since no one reads the writings of me, fearing to recite them publicly.

30. The possessives, *suus, sua, suum*, in Latin, agrees in gender, number, and case, with the noun denoting the *object possessed*, but in English must be translated by a pronoun denoting the *possessor*; thus,

1. *Pater diligit suos liberos,* A father loves his children.
2. *Parentes diligunt suam sobolem,* Parents love their offspring.
3. *Frater diligit suam sororem,* A brother loves his sister.
4. *Soror diligit suum fratrem,* A sister loves her brother.

Obs. In the first sentence, "*suos*," agrees with "*liberos*," but must be translated "*his*," denoting "*pater*," the possessor. In the second, *suam*, though singular, to agree with *sobolem*, must be translated "*their*," so as to denote the possessors, "*parentes*," &c.

Usage of Sui, Suus;—Ille, Iste, Hic, Is.

31. The reflexive, *sui*, and its possessive, *suus*, generally refer to the subject of the leading verb* in the sentence; *ille, iste, hic, is*, never refer to that subject, but to some other person or thing spoken of; thus,

1. *Cato occidit se,* Cato killed himself.
2. *Pater diligit suos liberos,* A father loves his (own) children.
3. *Parentes diligunt suam sobolem,* Parents love their (own) offspring.
4. *Dicit se valere,* He says that he is well.

Obs. In the second and third sentence, *suos*, "*his*," and *suam*, "*their*," referring to some other person than *pater* or *parentes*, would be made by the genitive of *ille, iste, hic, is*. In the first and fourth, *se* would be made *eum*. For the difference between these words usually translated "*he*," see Gr. § 28, Obs. 3.

* See Gr. § 28, Obs. 3, 1st., with note.

Note. If a second subject and verb be introduced, the reflexive governed by that verb will belong to the new subject, unless the whole clause refer to the words, wishes, or actions, of the first subject; as,

5. *Scipio civitatibus Italiæ reddidit omnia quæ sua recognoscēbant,* Scipio restored to the States of Italy, all the things which they recognised as *their own*.

Usage of Ipse.

32. *Ipse* renders the word with which it is joined emphatic, whether expressed or understood, and is equal to the English, *myself*, *thyself*, *himself*, *themselves*, &c., annexed to it; sometimes to the word *very* prefixed. With *numbers* it denotes exactness, and sometimes it is used by itself as a reflexive instead of *sui*, § 28, Obs. 3, 2d.; as,

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. <i>Ipse faciam,</i> (i. e. <i>ego ipse</i>), | I will do it <i>myself</i> . |
| 2. <i>Ipse fruëris otio,</i> (i. e. <i>tu ipse</i>), | Thou <i>thyself</i> enjoyest ease. |
| 3. <i>Jaculo cadit ipse,</i> (i. e. <i>ille ipse</i>), | He <i>himself</i> falls by a dart. |
| 4. <i>Cæsar ipse venit,</i> | Cæsar <i>himself</i> came. |
| 5. <i>Tempus ipsum convenit,</i> | The <i>very</i> time was agreed on. |
| 6. <i>Ad ipsas portas,</i> | To the <i>very</i> gates. |
| 7. <i>Decem ipsi dies,</i> | Ten <i>whole</i> days. |
| 8. <i>Precatus est ut ipsum liberaret,</i> | He begged that he would liberate <i>him</i> . |
| 9. <i>Donum ipsi datum,</i> | A present given to <i>him</i> . |

33. When joined with the personal pronouns, used in a reflexive sense, and in an oblique case, it sometimes agrees with them in case, but more commonly with the subject of the verb in the nominative or accusative. It is always, however, to be translated with the oblique case, to which it adds the force of the word *self*, or simply of emphasis; thus,

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. <i>Se ipse interfecit</i> (or <i>se ipsum</i>), | He slew <i>himself</i> . |
| 1. <i>Nosce ipse</i> (or <i>te ipsum</i>), | Know <i>thyself</i> . |
| 2. <i>Mihi ipse</i> (or <i>ipsi</i>), <i>faveo</i> , | I favor <i>myself</i> . |
| 3. <i>Agam per me ipse,</i> | I will do it <i>myself</i> . |
| 4. <i>Virtus est per se ipsa laudabilis,</i> | Virtue is to be praised for it-
<i>self</i> . |
| 5. <i>Se ipsos omnes naturâ diligunt.</i> | All men naturally love them-
<i>selves</i> . |

RELATIVE AND ANTECEDENT.

General Principle.

34. Every sentence containing a relative and its antecedent, is a compound sentence, of which the relative with its

clause forms one of the parts, and is used further to describe or limit its antecedent word in the other part. That word may be the subject, or belong to the predicate, or to some circumstance connected with either. But to whichever of these it belongs, the relative and its clause must all be translated *together*, and in immediate connexion with its antecedent word. Hence the following

General Rule of Arrangement.

35. The relative with its clause should be placed immediately after, or as near as possible to the antecedent, and, unless unavoidable, another substantive should not come between them; thus,

Latin Arrangement.

1. *Urbi immīnet mons, qui ad Arcadiam procurrit.* Here "*qui*" with its clause, "*ad Arcadiam procurrit*," belongs to, and further describes the antecedent subject, "*mons*." As then the subject with all that belongs to it must be taken before the verb, (Gr. § 152, Direct. 2, 2d, 3d,) the above sentence should be arranged for translation, thus: *Mons qui procurrit ad Arcadiam, immīnet urbi*, A mountain, which extends to Arcadia, hangs over the city.

Or, the English order may be inverted, thus: *Urbi immīnet mons, qui procurrit ad Arcadiam*, Over the city hangs a mountain, which, &c.

But not, *Mons immīnet urbi, qui*, &c., because this arrangement would place "*urbi*" between the antecedent, "*mons*," and the relative, "*qui*," and so lead to a false translation. The following sentence also affords an example:

2. *Proxīme urbem Eurōtas fluvius delabītur, ad cuius ripas Spartāni se exercēre solēbant.* Arrange, *Proxīme urbem delabītur*, &c., Close to the city flows; or, *Eurōtas fluvius, ad cuius ripas*, &c.

36. When another noun necessarily comes between the relative and its antecedent, there is more danger of ambiguity in English than in Latin, as the gender and number of the Latin relative will generally direct to the proper antecedent, to which in English we are directed chiefly by the

sense. The following sentence affords an example of this kind: *Ad Byzantium fugit, oppidum naturā munitum et arte, quod copiā abundat.*

37. The antecedent in Latin is often understood when the English idiom requires it to be supplied. It is generally understood, and should be supplied in the proper case :

1st. When it is intentionally left indefinite, or is obvious from the gender and number of the relative, and the connexion in which it stands, as in No. 19; as,

1. *Sunt (h o m i n e s) quos juvat,* There are *men* whom it delights.
2. *Hic est (i d) quod quærimus,* That which we seek is here.
- “ *Hic sunt, (e a) quæ quærimus* Those things which we seek are here.
3. *(I s) qui cito dat, bis dat,* (He) who gives promptly, gives twice.

Note. In the preceding sentences the antecedent supplied is in parentheses.

2d. The antecedent is usually understood before the relative, when it is expressed after it, and in the same case, (§ 99, Obs. 1, 2d.); as,

4. *(P a r s) quæ pars terrēna fuit,* The part which was earthy.
5. *(L o c u s) in quem locum venit,* The place into which he came.
- “ *Apud Actium (l o c u m) qui lo-* At Actium a place which is, &c.
cus est, &c.

Note. 1. When the antecedent word is expressed in the relative clause, as in the examples Nos. 4, and 5, or is repeated, as in the following, No. 6, (§ 99, Obs. 1, 3d.,) it is omitted in translating; as,

- 6 *Erant omnino duo itinēra, qui-* There were only two ways by
bus itineribus domo ex- which they could go from
ire possent, home.

Note. 2. *Quisquis, quidquid, or quicquid,* (and also *quicunque, quæcunque, quodcunque,*) “whoever, whatever,” used as a relative without an antecedent, includes a general or indefinite antecedent, in such case as the construction requires, and is equivalent to *omnis*, or *quivis qui*,—*omne*, or *quidvis quod*; as,

7. *Fortūnam quæcunque (i. e. They would hazard whatever*
quæ mavis fortūnam quæ) fortune (i. e. any fortune
accidat experiantur, which) might happen.
8. *Quidquid tetigerat aurum* Whatever (i. e. every thing which)
fiēbat, he had touched became gold.

Note 3. When the antecedent is a proposition, or clause of a sentence, § 99, Exp., the relative is put in the neuter gender, and sometimes has *id* before it referring to the same clause ; as,

9. *Servi, quod (or id quod) nunquam ante factum, manumissi et milites facti sunt;* The slaves, *which* never had been done before, were set free and made soldiers.

38. In the beginning of a sentence, a relative, with or without *quum*, or other conjunctive term, and referring to some word, clause, or circumstance, in a preceding sentence, usually has the antecedent word repeated, or, if evident, understood; and instead of *who* or *which*, may be rendered *this*, *that*, *these*, *those*, or, *and this*, *and that*, &c., according as the closeness of the connexion may require, (§ 99, Obs. 8,); as,

1. *Quæ urbs quum infestaretur,* And since (or because) *this* city was infested.
 “ *Qui legati quum missi essent,* When *these* ambassadors had been sent.
 2. *Quæ contentio cuncta permiscuit,* This contention threw all things into confusion.
 3. *Quibus nunciis acceptis,* These tidings being received.
 4. *Quod quum ille cerneret,* And when he saw *this*.
 5. *Quo facto,* This being done (or accomplished)
 6. *Quæ dum omnia contemplantur,* And while they were contemplating all *these* things.
 7. *Quod quum impetrasset,* And when he had obtained *this*.
 8. *A quo consilio quum revocaret.* When he recalled him from *this* design.
 9. *Quo ictu ille extinctus est,* And by *this* blow he was killed.

Note. To this construction belongs *quod*, (apparently for *propter* or *ad quod*, § 128,) in the beginning of a sentence, referring to something previously stated, and meaning, “*on account of, with respect to, or as to, THIS THING ;*” as,

10. *Quod diis gratias habeo,* On account of *this*, (for *this* thing, wherefor,) I give thanks to the gods.
 11. *Quod diceret se venturum,* As to *what* (as to that thing which) he said, that he would come.

39. When the antecedent word is not repeated, as in No. 38, the relative, with or without *quum*, or other conjunctive term, may be rendered *he*, *she*, *it*, *they*, or *and he*, *and she*, &c., according as the antecedent word requires, (§ 99, Obs. 8,); as,

1. *Qui quum admitteret,* And when he admitted.
2. *Quæ quum vidisset,* And when she had seen.
Quæ quum visa esset, When she had been (or was) seen.
3. *Quam quum dare nollet,* And when he would not give it.
4. *Quibus quum occurrisset,* When he had met them.
5. *Qui (quæ; pl. qui, quæ,) respondit,* And he, (she, they) replied.
6. *Qui (or quæ) quum adessent.* And when they were present.
7. *Quem Meleæger interfecit,* And Meleager slew him.
8. *Quam quum duceret,* And when he was leading her.
9. *Ad quem quum venissent,* And when they had come to him.
10. *Quem ut vidit,* As soon as, (or when) he saw him.

40. When the relative in any case is followed by the subjunctive mood, and the two clauses, viz: the antecedent and relative, involve a *comparison*; or the latter expresses the *purpose, object, or design*, of something expressed by the former, the relative is better translated by the conjunction *that* and the personal pronoun; thus, *that I, that thou, that he, that they, &c.*, as the antecedent word may require, (See Gr. § 141, R. II. and Explanation,);

1. *Missus sum qui te adducërem,* I have been sent *that I* might bring you.
2. *Neque is qui facias id,* You are not such a person *that* you should do that.
3. *Quis est tam lynceus qui, &c.* Who is so sharp sighted *that he*.
4. *Misit legatos qui cognoscèrent,* He sent ambassadors *that they* might find out.
5. *Fruges mandavit quæ disseminaret,* She gave him fruits *that* he might scatter them.

41. In the expressions, *quippe qui, ut qui, utpote qui*, the relative is better translated by the personal pronoun which represents the antecedent, (§ 141, Obs. 4.); as,

1. *Quippe qui nunquam legërim,* For, (or because) *I* have never read them.

42. After *dignus, indignus, idoneus*, and the like, in the predicate, the relative and subjunctive mood may be rendered by the infinitive, (§ 141, Obs. 2. 1st.); as,

1. *Dignus qui ametur,* Worthy *to be* loved.
2. *Si dignum qui numeretur crearit,* If you shall elect a person worthy *to be* reckoned, &c.

43. Sometimes the natural order of the sentence is inverted, so that the relative clause stands first and the antecedent follows it. In translating, the antecedent clause should generally be placed first; as,

1. *Qui bonis non recte utitur, ei bona mala fiunt,* Good things become evil to him who does not use good things well.
2. *Qui cito dat, (is) bis dat,* He gives twice who gives quickly.

Correlative Adjectives.

44. The demonstratives, *tot*, so many, and *totidem*, just so many; *tantus*, as great, so great, as much, so much; *talis*, such; are followed by their relatives, *quot*, *quantus*, *qualis*, signifying *as*, to denote comparison; as,

1. *Tot homines quot,* As many men as.
2. *Totidem naves quot,* Just so many ships as
3. *Tantus exercitus quantus,* As great (or so great) an army as.
4. *Talis homo qualis,* Such a man as.

So also the correlative adverbs.

- | | | | | | |
|------------------|---|-----------------|---------------|---|--------|
| 5. <i>Toties</i> | — | <i>quoties,</i> | As often | — | as. |
| 6. <i>Tam</i> | — | <i>quam,</i> | So | — | as. |
| 7. <i>Eò</i> | — | <i>quò</i> | By so much | — | as. |
| 8. <i>Tanto</i> | — | <i>quanto,</i> | By so much | — | as; or |
| | | | In proportion | — | as. |

45. Instead of the relative in such sentences, the conjunctions *ac*, *atque*, (§ 149, Obs. 6,) *ut*, and the relative *qui*, *quæ*, *quod*, are sometimes used and may generally be translated, “as,” or “that.”

1. *Honos talis paucis est delātus ac mihi,* Such honor has been bestowed upon few persons, as upon me.
2. *Cum totidem navibus atque profectus erat, rediit,* He returned with just as many ships as he had departed with.
3. *Nulla est tanta vis quæ non frangi possit,* No power is so great as (or, that it) cannot be broken.

46. When the relative only is expressed in sentences implying comparison, the *demonstrative* (No. 44,) must be supplied and the sentence translated as above; as,

1. *Crocodylus parit (tanta) ova quanta anseres,* The crocodile lays (as large) eggs as geese lay.
2. *(Tot) millia quot unquam venere Mycēnis,* As many thousands as ever came from Mycenæ.

47. Sometimes, as in No. 43, the natural order of the sentence is inverted, so that the relative clause stands first and the antecedent follows it. In translating, the antecedent clause should be placed first; as,

- | | | |
|-----------------------------------|---|---|
| 1. <i>Quot homines tot causæ,</i> | } | <i>As many causes as there are men.</i> |
| <i>arrange</i> | | |
| <i>Tot causæ quot homines,</i> | | |

48. The relatives, *quot*, *quoties*, *quantus*, *qualis*, used *interrogatively*, or *in an exclamation*, or *indefinitely*, in the indirect interrogation, and without implying comparison, have no reference to an antecedent term either expressed or understood, and are translated respectively, "how many," "how often," "how great," or "how much," "what," or "of what kind;" as,

1. *Inter. Quo t annos habet?* *How many years has he? i. e. how old is he?*
2. *Indef. Nescio quot,* *I know not how many.*
3. *Excl. Cum quantâ gravi- With how much gravity.*
tâte!
4. *Indef. Doce quales sint,* *Tell us of what kind they are.*

THE VERB AND ITS SUBJECT.

General Principle.

49. Every finite verb (§ 95, 5,) has its own subject, expressed or understood, in the nominative case.

Obs. The subject of the verb is the person or thing spoken of, and may be a *noun*, a *pronoun*, a *verb in the infinitive mood*, a *clause of a sentence*, or any thing which, however expressed, is the subject of thought or speech. (§ 101, Exp.)

General Rule of Arrangement.

50. The subject and all the words agreeing with it, governed by it, connected with it, or dependent upon it, must be arranged in the order of their connection and dependence, and translated before the verb.

1. *Cânis latrat,* *The dog barks.*
2. *Ego Scribo,* *I write.*
3. *Ludere est jucundum,* *To play is pleasant.*
4. *Dulce est pro patriâ mori,* *To die for one's country is sweet.*
5. *Totus Græcôrum exer- The whole army of the Greeks had*
citus Aulide convenêrat, *assembled at Aulis.*
6. *Vir sapit qui pauca lo- The man who speaks little is wise.*
quitur,

51. When the subject of a verb is the infinitive, either alone or with its subject; or a clause of a sentence, connected by *ut*, *quod*, or other conjunctive term, the English pronoun, *it*, is put with the verb referring to that infinitive or clause following it, and which is its proper subject; as,

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. <i>Facile est jubere,</i> | <i>It is easy to command.</i> |
| 2. <i>Nuntiātum est classem devinci,</i> | <i>It was announced that the fleet was conquered.</i> |
| 3. <i>Semper accīdit ut absis,</i> | <i>It always happens that you are absent.</i> |
| 4. <i>Qui fit ut metuas,</i> | <i>How happens it that you fear.</i> |
| 5. <i>Nunquam Romānis placuisse imperatōrem a suis militibus interfīci,</i> | <i>That it never had pleased the Romans, that a commander should be killed by his own soldiers.</i> |

52. The verb must always be translated in its proper tense, and in the same person and number with its nominative. (See paradigms of the verb, §§ 54-70.) But when it has two or more nouns or pronouns in the singular, taken together, or a collective noun expressing many as individuals, as its subject, the verb must be translated in the plural; as,

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| 1. <i>Et pater et mater venērunt,</i> | <i>Both his father and mother have come.</i> |
| 2. <i>Turba quoquoversum ruunt,</i> | <i>The crowd rush in every direction.</i> |

53. The nominative to a verb in the first or second person, being evident from the termination, is seldom expressed in Latin; but must be supplied in translating; as,

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Scribo,</i> <i>I write.</i> | 3. <i>Scribimus,</i> <i>We write.</i> |
| 2. <i>Legis,</i> <i>Thou readest.</i> | 4. <i>Legitis,</i> <i>You read.</i> |

54. When the verb in the third person has no nominative expressed, it refers to some noun or pronoun evident from the connection; and, both in translating and parsing, the pronoun *ille*, or *is*, in the *nominative* case, and in the *gender* and *number* of the noun or pronoun referred to, must be supplied; as,

- | | | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------|----------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. <i>(Ille) scribit,</i> | <i>(He) writes.</i> | 2. <i>(Illi) scribunt,</i> | <i>(They) write.</i> |
|---------------------------|---------------------|----------------------------|----------------------|

55. When the same word is the subject of several verbs closely connected in the same construction, it is expressed with the first and understood to the rest, both in Latin and English; thus,

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. <i>Cæsar venit, vidit, et vicit,</i> | <i>Cæsar came, saw, and conquered.</i> |
| 2. <i>Dicitur Cæsārem venisse, vidisse, et vicisse,</i> | <i>It is said that Cæsar came, saw, and conquered.</i> |

Interrogative Sentences.

56. A question is made in Latin in four different ways, as follows:

1st. By an interrogative pronoun; as, *Quis venit?* "Who comes?" *Quem misit?* "Whom did he send?" *Cujus pecus hoc?* "Whose flock is this?" &c.

2d. By an interrogative adverb; as, *Unde venit?* "Whence came he?" *Cur venit?* "Why did he come?"

3d. By the interrogative particles, *num*, *an*, and the enclitic, *ne*. Thus used these particles have no corresponding English word in the translation; they merely indicate a question; as, *Num venit*, or *an venit*, or *venitne?* "Has he come?" *Num videtur?* "Does it seem?"

4th. By simply placing an interrogation mark at the end of the question; as, *Vis me hoc facere?* "Do you wish me to do this?"

57. The interrogative pronoun or adverb, in all cases, is translated before the verb; as,

- | | |
|-----------------------------|---|
| 1. <i>Quis fecit?</i> | <i>Who</i> did it? or <i>who</i> has done it? |
| 2. <i>Quem misit?</i> | <i>Whom</i> did he send? |
| 3. <i>Quanto constitit?</i> | <i>How much</i> did it cost? |
| 4. <i>Qualis fuit?</i> | <i>What sort of</i> a man was he? |

This is true also of the indirect question, i. e., when the substance of a question is stated but not in the interrogative form; as,

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| 5. <i>Nescio quanto constitutur,</i> | I know not <i>how much</i> it cost. |
| 6. <i>Docuit quam firma res esset</i> | He shewed them <i>how firm</i> a thing |
| <i>concordia,</i> | agreement was. |

Note. When the verb in the direct or indirect question comes under § 103, R. V., the predicate, or nominative *after* the verb, is translated *first*, and the subject or nominative, in the direct question after the verb, as in Ex. 4; but in the indirect, before it, as in Ex. 6. Thus, in Ex. 4, *qualis* is the predicate, and *ille* understood, the subject; in Ex. 6, *res* is the predicate, and *concordia* the subject.

58. In all forms of interrogation not made by an interrogative pronoun, as in No. 57, the nominative or subject is translated *after the verb* in English, in the simple forms, and *after the first auxiliary* in the compound forms; as,

- | | |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Videsne?</i> | Seest thou? or dost thou see? |
| 2. <i>An venisti?</i> | Hast thou come? or have you come? |
| 3. <i>Scribetne?</i> | Will he write? |
| 4. <i>Num ibimus?</i> | Shall we go? |
| 5. <i>Nonne fecit?</i> | Has he not done (it)? |

- | | |
|------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 6. <i>An egisset melius?</i> | Would he have done better? |
| 7. <i>Nosne alēmus?</i> | Shall we support? |
| 8. <i>Nonne Dei est?</i> | Does it not belong to God? |
| 9. <i>Iste est frater?</i> | Is that your brother? |

59. When a sentence not interrogative is introduced by *nec* or *neque*, not followed by a corresponding conjunction, (See No. 124,) in a connected clause, the verb will be translated by an auxiliary, and the English nominative will stand after the first auxiliary; as,

- | | |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Neque hoc intelligo,</i> | Neither do I understand this. |
| 2. <i>Nec venisset,</i> | Neither would he have come. |
| 3. <i>Nec adeptus sum,</i> | Nor have I attained. |

The object of the verb.

60. In translating, the object of a transitive verb in the accusative is arranged after the verb, and as near to it as possible. That object may be a *noun*, a *pronoun*, an *infinitive mood*, or a *clause of a sentence*, (§ 116, Exp.); as,

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. <i>Romulus condidit urbem,</i> | Romulus built a city. |
| 2. <i>Vocavit eam Romam,</i> | He called it Rome. |
| 3. <i>Disce dicere vera,</i> | Learn to speak the truth. |
| 4. <i>Obtulit ut captivos redimerent,</i> | He offered that they should redeem the captives. |

61. The interrogative or relative pronoun is always translated *before* the verb that governs it; as,

- | | |
|------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. <i>Quem mittemus?</i> | Whom shall we send? |
| 2. <i>Cui dedisti?</i> | To whom did ye give it? |
| 3. <i>Deus quem colimus,</i> | God whom we worship. |
| 4. <i>Cui omnia debemus,</i> | To whom we owe all things. |

62. When a transitive verb governs two cases, the immediate object in the accusative, according to the natural order, is usually translated first, and after that the remote object in the genitive, § 122; dative, § 123; accusative, § 124; or ablative, § 125; as,

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Arguit me furti,</i> | He accuses me of theft. |
| 2. <i>Comparo Virgilium Homēro,</i> | I compare Virgil to Homer. |
| 3. <i>Poscimus te pacem,</i> | We beg peace of thee. |
| 4. <i>Onerat naves auro,</i> | He loads the ships with gold. |

Note. The accusative of the person after verbs of asking, is translated by *of*, or *from*; as,

- | | |
|---|---|
| 5. <i>Pyrrhum auxilium poposcērunt,</i> | They demanded aid of (or from) Pyrrhus. |
|---|---|

63. But when the remote object is a *relative*, or when the immediate object is an *infinitive*, or a clause of a sentence, or a noun further described by other words, the remote object must be translated first ; as,

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. <i>Cui librum dedimus,</i> | <i>To whom</i> we gave the book. |
| 2. <i>Da mihi fallere,</i> | Give <i>me</i> to deceive. |
| “ <i>Dixit ei confiteor meum peccatum,</i> | He said <i>to him</i> , I confess my fault. |
| 3. <i>Eum rogaverunt, ut ipsos defenderet,</i> | They entreated <i>him</i> , that he would defend them. |
| 4. <i>Docuit illos quam firma esset,</i> | He shewed <i>them</i> how firm it was. |
| 5. <i>Civitatem, antea sollicitatam, armis ornat,</i> | He supplies <i>with arms</i> , the city already excited. |

64. When a verb, which in the active voice governs two cases, is used in the passive form, that which was the immediate object in the accusative, becomes the subject in the nominative, and the remote object in its own case immediately follows the verb. Thus, the examples No. 62, may be arranged and translated as follows, § 126.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. <i>Arguor furti,</i> | <i>I am</i> accused of theft. |
| 2. <i>Virgilius comparatur Homero,</i> | <i>Virgil</i> is compared to <i>Homer</i> . |
| 3. <i>Pax poscitur te,</i> | <i>Peace</i> is begged of thee. |
| 4. <i>Naves onerantur auro,</i> | <i>The ships</i> are loading with gold. |

So also the participles.

- | | |
|------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 5. <i>Accusatus furti,</i> | Accused of theft. |
| 6. <i>Comparatus Homero,</i> | Compared to <i>Homer</i> , |
| 7. <i>Onerata auro,</i> | Loaded with gold. |
| 8. <i>Nudata hominibus,</i> | Stripped of men. |
| 9. <i>Ereptus morti,</i> | Saved from death |

Impersonal Verbs.

65. The impersonal verb has no nominative before it in Latin. It is translated by placing the pronoun *it* before it in English ; as, (§ 85, 2.)

- | | | | |
|--------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|----------------------|
| 1. <i>Decet,</i> | <i>It</i> becomes. | 4. <i>Pugnatur,</i> | <i>It</i> is fought. |
| 2. <i>Constat,</i> | <i>It</i> is evident. | 5. <i>Itur,</i> | <i>It</i> is gone. |
| 3. <i>Tonat,</i> | <i>It</i> thunders. | 6. <i>Curritur,</i> | <i>It</i> is run. |

66. Impersonal verbs governing the dative or accusative in Latin, may be translated in a personal form by making the word in the dative or accusative the nominative to the English verb, taking care always to express the same idea, (§ 85, 6, and § 113 ; thus,

	<i>Impersonally.</i>	<i>Personally.</i>
1. <i>Placet mihi,</i>	It pleases <i>me</i> ;	<i>I</i> am pleased.
2. <i>Licet tibi,</i>	It is permitted to <i>you</i> ;	<i>You</i> are permitted
3. <i>Decet eum,</i>	It becomes <i>him</i> ;	<i>He</i> ought.
4. <i>Pudet nos,</i>	It shames <i>us</i> ;	<i>We</i> are ashamed.
5. <i>Tædet vos,</i>	It wearies <i>you</i> ;	<i>You</i> are wearied.
6. <i>Favetur illis,</i>	Favor is done to <i>them</i> ;	<i>They</i> are favored.
7. <i>Nocetur hosti,</i>	Hurt is done to the <i>enemy</i> ;	The <i>enemy</i> is hurt.
8. <i>Misæret me tui,</i>	It moves <i>me</i> to pity of <i>you</i> ;	<i>I</i> pity <i>you</i> .
9. <i>Pœnitent eos,</i>	It repents <i>them</i> ;	<i>They</i> repent.
10. <i>Pœnitent me pe- casse,</i>	It repents <i>me</i> , i. e.,	<i>I</i> repent of having sinned.

67. When the doer of an action denoted by an impersonal verb, or by a passive verb used impersonally, is expressed by the ablative with *a*, (§ 85, 6,) the verb may be translated personally in the active voice, and the doer, in the ablative, be made its English subject or nominative ; as,

	<i>Impersonally.</i>	<i>Personally.</i>
1. <i>Pugnâtur a me,</i>	It is fought by <i>me</i> ;	<i>I</i> fight.
2. <i>Currîtur a te,</i>	It is run by <i>thee</i> ;	<i>Thou</i> runnest.
3. <i>Favetur a nobis</i>	It is favored by <i>us</i> ;	<i>We</i> favor.
4. <i>Favetur tibi a nobis,</i>	It is favored to <i>you</i> by <i>us</i> ;	<i>We</i> favor <i>you</i> ; or <i>you</i> are favored by <i>us</i> .

Note. The doer in the ablative with *a*, is frequently understood, (especially when no definite person or thing is intended,) and must be supplied as the context requires ; as,

5. <i>Ubi perventum est (ab illis),</i>	When it was come by <i>them</i> , i. e., when they came.
6. <i>Descenditur (ab hominibus),</i>	<i>Men</i> (or <i>people</i> ,) go down.
7. <i>Conveniebâtur (ab hominibus),</i>	<i>People</i> assembled.

68. Some verbs, not impersonal, are used impersonally, when used before the infinitive of impersonal verbs, (§ 113, Obs. 1.) ; as,

	<i>Impersonally.</i>	<i>Personally.</i>
1. <i>Potest credi tibi,</i>	<i>It can</i> be trusted to <i>you</i> ;	<i>You can</i> be trusted ; 66. 2.
2. <i>Non potest noceri hosti,</i>	<i>It cannot</i> be hurt to the <i>enemy</i> ;	The <i>enemy cannot</i> be hurt ; 66. 7.
3. <i>Ut fieri solet,</i>	As <i>it wont</i> to be done ; or, As is usual.	

69. Verbs usually impersonal are sometimes used personally, and have their subject in the nominative, (§ 113, Obs. 1.) ; as,

- | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Doleo</i> I grieve, (Impersonally | <i>Dolet mihi,</i>) It grieves me, |
| 2. <i>Candida pax homines decet,</i> | Candid peace becomes men. |
| 3. <i>Ista gesta mīna nostros humeros decet,</i> | These arms become my shoulders. |

Usage of *Videor*, “*I seem*.”

70. *Videor*, “*I seem*,” though never impersonal in Latin, is often rendered impersonally in English; and the dative following it, seems properly to come under Rule XXXIII, § 126, to denote the person to whom any thing seems or appears, i. e., by whom it is seen; thus, *Videor tibi esse pauper*, I seem to you, (i. e., I am seen by you,) to be poor. *Videor mihi esse pauper*, I seem to myself, (i. e., I am seen by myself,) to be poor; or, I think that I am poor. So the following:

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. <i>Videor esse liber,</i> | I seem to be free; or, <i>It seems</i> that I am free. |
| 2. <i>Videor mihi esse liber,</i> | I seem to myself to be free; or, <i>It seems</i> to me, (or, I think) that I am free. |
| 3. <i>Vidēris esse,</i> | You seem to be; or, <i>It seems</i> that you are. |
| 4. <i>Vidēris tibi esse,</i> | You seem to yourself to be; or, <i>It seems</i> to you, (i. e., you think) that you are. |
| 5. <i>Vidēris mihi esse,</i> | You seem to me to be; or, <i>It seems</i> to me, (i. e., I think) that you are. |
| 6. <i>Tu, ut vidēris, non scribis,</i> | You, as you seem, (or, as <i>it seems</i>) do not write. |

Obs. The third person singular of *videor* followed by an infinitive, with its subject in the accusative, or by a dependent clause after *ut*, or *quod*, may be said to be used impersonally; though strictly speaking, that infinitive with its accusative, or that clause, is the subject, (See No. 51.); as,

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| 7. <i>Vidētur mihi te valēre,</i> | It appears to me that you are well; strictly rendered, That you are well appears to (or, is seen by) me. |
| 8. <i>Illi vidētur ut valeat,</i> | It appears to him, (or, he thinks) that he, (<i>another person</i>) is well. |
| 9. <i>Vidētur sibi valēre,</i> | It appears to him, (or, he thinks) that he, (<i>himself</i>) is well. He seems to himself to be well. |

Verbs.—Indicative Mood.

71. Verbs in the indicative mood are translated as in the paradigm in the Grammar. Care must be taken, however, to notice when the sense requires the *simple*, or *emphatic*, or *progressive* form.

72. When the perfect tense expresses a past action or event extending to, or connected with the present, in itself or in its consequences, it is used *definitely*, and must be rendered by the auxiliaries, *have*, *hast*, *has*, or *hath*; as,

1. *Regem vidi hodie*, I have seen the king to day.

73. When the perfect tense expresses a past action or event, without reference to the present, it is used *indefinitely*, (Gr. § 44, III.) and cannot be rendered by *have*, *hast*, *has*, or *hath*; as,

1. *Regem vidi nuper*, I saw the king lately.

Subjunctive Mood.

The subjunctive mood is used in two different ways, viz: *subjunctively* and *potentially*. (Gr. § 42, II. and §§ 139–141.)

Subjunctive used subjunctively.

74. This mood is used subjunctively, but for the most part translated as the indicative, when it expresses what is actual and certain though not directly asserted as such. This it does,

1st. When it is subjoined to some adverb, conjunction, or indefinite term in a dependent clause, for the purpose of stating the existence of a thing, (without directly asserting it,) as something supposed, taken for granted, or connected with the direct assertion, as a cause, condition, or modifying circumstance, (§ 140, Obs. 4.); as,

1. *Ea cum ita sint discēdam*, Since these things are so, I will depart.
2. *Si maeat*, If it is wet.
3. *Quum Cæsar rediret*, When Cæsar returned—was returning.
4. *Ita perterritus est ut mori- rētur*, He was so frightened that he died.
5. *Gratulor tibi quod rediēris*, I am glad that you have returned.

6. *Si imperitavērint*, If they have commanded.
7. *Si reliquissem iniqui dicērent*, If I had left him, &c.
8. *Quum Cæsar profectus esset*, When Cæsar had departed.

Obs. In the first of the above examples the direct assertion, is *discēdam*, "I will depart." The dependent clause, *ea cum ita sint*, "since these things are so," expresses the existence of certain things referred to without directly asserting it, but taking it for granted as a thing admitted or supposed, but still affecting in some way the event directly asserted. This holds good of all the other examples above.

* The dependent clause connected by *ut*, or *ubi*, "when;" *dum*, "whilst;" *priusquam*, "before;" *postquam*, "after;" and other conjunctions, (§ 140, *Obs.* 2 and 3,); and also by *quum* or *cum*, "when," (*Obs.* 4,) sometimes take the indicative mood.

2d. The subjunctive mood is used subjunctively, as above, after an interrogative word used indefinitely, in a dependent clause, or in what is called the *indirect* question, i. e., an expression containing the substance of a question without the form. All interrogative words may be used in this way, (See § 140, 5,); thus,

9. *Nescio quis sit—quid fiat*, I know not *who* he is—*what* is doing.
10. *Doce me ubi sint dii*, Tell me *where* the gods are.
11. *Nescio uter scriberet*, I know not *which* of the two wrote.
12. *Nescio quid scriptum esset*, I know not *what* was written.
12. *Scio cui, (a quo) scriptum esset*, I know *to whom* (by whom) it was written.
13. *An scis quis hoc fecerit?* Do you know *who* has done this?
14. *An scis a quo hoc factum fuerit?* Do you know *by whom* this has been done?
15. *Nemo sciebat quis hæc fecisset*, None knew *who* had done these things.
16. *Percunctatus quid vellet*, Having enquired *what* he wished.

Note. The direct question requires the indicative; as, *Quis fecit?* "Who *did* it?" The indirect requires the subjunctive; as, *Nescio quis fecerit*, "I know not *who did* it."

75. This mood is used subjunctively, and usually translated as the indicative in a relative clause, after an indefinite general expression, (§ 141, R. I.) a negation, or a ques-

tion implying a negation, and also after the relative in oblique narration, (§ 141, R. VI.); as,

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. <i>Est qui dicat,</i> | There is one who <i>says</i> . |
| 2. <i>Nullus est qui neget,</i> | There is no one who <i>denies</i> . |
| 3. <i>Quis est qui hoc faciat?</i> | Who is there that <i>does this</i> ? |
| 4. <i>Antonius inquit, artem esse earum rerum quæ sciuntur,</i> | Antonius says that art belongs to those things which <i>are known</i> . |

The Subjunctive used Potentially.

76. The subjunctive mood is used *potentially*; 1st, in interrogative sentences; and 2d, to express a thing not as actual and certain, but contingent and hypothetical, (Gr. § 42, II. 2, and Obs. 3.) Thus used it is much less definite with respect to time, and is translated with some variety; as follows:

- | | |
|-----------------------|---|
| 1. <i>Present,</i> | by <i>may, can, shall, will, could, would, should.</i> |
| 2. <i>Imperfect,</i> | by <i>might, could, would, or should.</i> |
| 3. <i>Perfect,</i> | by <i>may have, can have, must have, &c.</i> |
| 4. <i>Pluperfect,</i> | by <i>might have, could have, would have, should have,</i>
and denoting futurity, <i>should.</i> |

The most usual renderings of each tense are the following:

77. *Present.* The present subjunctive used potentially expresses present liberty, power, will, or obligation, usually expressed by the English auxiliaries, *may, can, shall, will, could, would, should.* (§ 45, 1.)

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. <i>Licet eas,</i> | You <i>may go</i> . |
| 2. <i>An sic intelligat?</i> | Can he so <i>understand it</i> ? |
| 3. <i>Men' moveat cimex Panti-
lius?</i> | Shall (or <i>should</i>) the insect Panti-
lius <i>discompose me</i> ? |
| 4. <i>Quis istos ferat?</i> | Who <i>could bear</i> those men? |
| 5. <i>Si hic sis, aliter sentias,</i> | If you were here you <i>would think</i>
otherwise. |

Imperatively.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| 6. <i>Sic eat,</i> | Thus <i>let her</i> (or him) <i>go</i> . |
| 7. <i>Eamus,</i> | <i>Let us go</i> . |
| 8. <i>Pugnētur, (Impersonally,)</i> | <i>Let it be fought</i> . |
| 9. <i>Dii faciant,</i> | <i>May the gods grant</i> . |

78. *Imperfect.* The imperfect subjunctive used potentially, is preceded by a past tense, and expresses *past* liberty, power, will, or duty, but still in its use expresses time very indefinitely. It is usually rendered by the English

auxiliaries, *might, could, would, should*, sometimes *had, would have, should have*; as,

1. *Legēbat ut discēret*, He read that he *might* learn.
2. *Quid facērem?* What *could* I do?
3. *Iret si jubēres*, He *would* go if you *should* order it.
4. *Cur venīret*, Why *should* he come.
5. *Rogavērunt ut venīret*, They entreated that he *would* come.
6. *Si quis dicēret, nunquam, putārem*, If any one *had* said it, I *would* not have thought it.

Note. After verbs denoting to hinder, forbid, and the like, *quo minus* with the subjunctive, may be rendered by *from* and the present participle, (§ 45, II. 3.); thus,

7. *Impedivit quo minus iret*, He hindered him *from* going

Obs. An action or state which would, or would not exist, or have existed, in a case supposed, but the contrary of which is implied, is expressed in Latin by the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive, without an antecedent verb or conjunction, (§ 139, 2.); as,

8. *scribērem, si nescesse es-* I *would* write, if it were necessary.
8. *scripsissem, si necesse fuisset*, I *would* have written, had it been necessary.

79. *Perfect.* The perfect subjunctive properly expresses what is supposed to be past, but of which there exists uncertainty. Thus used it is commonly rendered by the auxiliaries *may have, can have, &c.* It is also used sometimes in a present and sometimes in a future sense, with much variety of meaning, according to its connection, (§ 45, III.); as,

1. *Fortasse erravērim*, Perhaps I *may* have erred.
2. *Etsi non scripsērit*, Though he *cannot* have written.
3. *Ut sic dixērim*, That I *may* so speak.
4. *Citius credidērim*, I *would* sooner believe.
5. *Facile dixērim*, I *could* easily tell.
6. *Quasi affuērim*, As if I *had* been present.

80. *Pluperfect.* The pluperfect (§ 45, IV.) is usually rendered by the auxiliaries, *might have, could have, would have, should have*, as in the paradigm of the verb. But when an action is related as having been future at a certain past time, it is expressed in Latin in the pluperfect subjunctive, and translated *should*; as,

1. *Quodcunque jussisset me facturū dixi*, I said that I *would* do whatsoever he *should* order

2. *Promisisti te scriptūrum, si* You promised that thou would
rogavissem; write, if I should desire it.
 3. *Dum convalesceret,* Until he should get well.

81. The pluperfect subjunctive active, with *quum*, in verbs not deponent, is used instead of a past participle active, (§ 49, 8,) and may be rendered by the compound perfect participle in English; as,

1. *Cæsar, quum hæc dixisset* Cæsar having said these things;
 (literally, Cæsar, when he had said these things.)

82. When the subjunctive has a relative for its subject, and the relative and antecedent clause involve a comparison, they may be rendered as in No. 40, or the sense will be expressed if we render the relative by *as*, and the subjunctive by the infinitive; thus,

1. *Quis tam esset amens qui semper viveret,* Who would be so foolish as to live always.
 2. *Neque tu is es qui nescias,* You are not such a one as not to know.

83. When the relative and subjunctive follow such adjectives as *dignus*, *indignus*, *idoneus*, (§ 141, Obs. 2.) and the like; or when they express the end or design of something expressed in the antecedent clause, their meaning will be expressed as in No. 40, or by the infinitive alone, or preceded by the phrase "in order to;" thus,

1. *Dignum qui secundus ab Romulo numeretur,* Worthy to be ranked next after Romulus.
 2. *Legatos miserunt qui eum accusarent,* They sent legates to accuse (or, in order to accuse) him.
 3. *Virgas iis dedit quibus agerent,* He gave them rods to drive, (in order to drive; or, so that with these they might drive.)

84. The subjunctive with, or without *ut*, after verbs signifying to *bid*, *forbid*, *tell*, *allow*, *hinder*, *command*, and the like, (§ 140, 1, 3d, and Obs. 5,) may be rendered by the English infinitive preceded by the subject of the verb in the objective case; as,

1. *Precor venias,* I pray that you may come; i. e.,
 I pray you to come.
 2. *Dic veniat,* Tell her to come.
 3. *Sine eat,* Permit him to go.
 4. *Non patieris ut eant,* You will not suffer them to go.
 5. *Non patieris ut vescamur,* You do not suffer us to eat.

85. When several verbs in the same mood and tense, have the same nominative, and are connected in the same construction, the *auxiliary* and “to,” the sign of the infinitive, in the translation is used with the first only, and understood to the rest ; as,

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. <i>Et vidisset et audivisset,</i> | He might have both seen and heard. |
| 2. <i>Et visus et auditus esset,</i> | He might have been both seen and heard. |
| 3. <i>Cupimus et vidēre et audire,</i> | We wish both to see and hear. |

The Infinitive Mood.

86. When the infinitive is without a subject, it is to be considered as a verbal noun, (§ 144,) and translated as in the paradigm of the verb ; as,

- | | |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Volo scribere,</i> | I wish to write. |
| 2. <i>Dicitur didicisse,</i> | He is said to have learned |
| 3. <i>Dicitur itūrus esse,</i> | He is said to be about to go. |
| 4. <i>Dicitur itūrus fuisse,</i> | He is said to have been about to go. |

87. When the verbs *possum*, *volo*, *nolo*, *malo*, in the indicative or subjunctive, are translated by the English auxiliaries, *can*, *will*, *will not*, *will rather*, and sometimes, in the past tense, by *could*, *would*, &c., the infinitive following is translated without *to* before it ; as,

- | | |
|---|--------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Potest fieri,</i> | It can be done. |
| 2. <i>Volo ire,</i> | I will go. |
| 3. <i>Nolo facere,</i> | I will not do it. |
| 4. <i>Malo facere,</i> | I will rather do it. |
| 5. <i>Ut se volucrem facere vellet,</i> | That he would make her a bird. |
| 6. <i>Nihil jam defendi potuit,</i> | Nothing could now be defended. |
| 7. <i>Hoc facere non potuit,</i> | He could not do this. |
| 8. <i>Nolite timere,</i> | Do not fear. |

88. The present is generally translated as the perfect without “to,” after the imperfect, perfect and pluperfect tenses of *possum*, *volo*, *nolo*, *malo*, when translated *could*, *would*, *would not*, *would rather*; and with “to” after the same tenses of *debeo*, and *oportet*, translated *ought*; as,

- | | |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Melius fieri non potuit,</i> | It could not have been done better. |
| 2. <i>Volui dicere,</i> | I would have said. |
| 3. <i>Sumere arma noluit,</i> | He would not have taken arms. |
| 4. <i>Maluit augere,</i> | He would rather have increased. |
| 5. <i>Quam potuisset edere,</i> | Than he could have caused. |
| 6. <i>Debui mihi ignoscere,</i> | You ought to have pardoned me. |
| 7. <i>Dividi oportuit.</i> | It ought to have been divided. |

Note. A strictly literal translation of most of the above sentences would not express the precise idea intended ; thus, in the third sentence, "He would not have taken arms," and "He **was** not willing to take arms," manifestly do not mean the same thing.

89. After verbs denoting to *see, hear, feel*, and the like, the present infinitive is often translated by the English present participle ; as,

- | | |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Audivi eum dicere,</i> | I heard him <i>saying</i> . |
| 2. <i>Surgere videt lunam,</i> | He sees the moon <i>rising</i> . |
| 3. <i>Terram tremere sensit,</i> | He felt the earth <i>trembling</i> . |

Obs. So also when the infinitive alone, or as part of a clause, is the subject of another verb ; as,

- | | |
|---|---|
| 4. <i>Morari periculösium est,</i> | Delaying is dangerous. |
| 5. <i>Morari periculösium (esse) arbitrantur,</i> | They think that <i>delaying</i> is dangerous. |

The Infinitive with a subject.

90. The infinitive with its subject in the accusative, though but seldom, is sometimes translated in the same form in English ; as,

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Cupio te venire,</i> | I wish you to come. |
| 2. <i>Quos discordare noverrat,</i> | Whom he had known to differ. |
| 3. <i>Hoc optimum esse judicavit,</i> | He decided this to be the best. |
| 4. <i>Eum vocari jussit,</i> | He ordered him to be called. |

91. The infinitive with a subject, usually is, and always may be, translated by the English indicative or potential, according to the sense intended. When so rendered, its subject must always be translated in the nominative ; and this, if not a relative, is usually preceded by the conjunction *that*, (§ 145,) ; as,

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. <i>Cupio te venire,</i> | I wish that you would come. |
| 2. <i>Dicit me scribere,</i> | He says that I write. |
| 3. <i>Eos ivisse putabat,</i> | He thought that they had gone. |
| 4. <i>Quem nunquam risisse ferunt,</i> | Who they say never laughed. |
| 5. <i>Rogavit quid faciendum (esse) putaret,</i> | He asked what he thought ought to be done. |

92. Both the Latin and the English infinitive, by their tenses, represent an act, &c., as present, past or future, *at the time of the governing verb*. Hence, when the one is translated by the other ; that is, the Latin infinitive by the English infinitive, (Nos. 86 and 90,) any tense of the one

will be correctly translated by the same tense in the other, (except as in No. 83,) no matter what be the tense of the governing verb; as,

1. Pres. <i>Dicitur,</i>	}	Pres.	Past.	Future.
2. Past, <i>Dicebatur,</i>		<i>habere;</i>	<i>habuisse;</i>	<i>habiturus esse.</i>
3. Fut. <i>Dicetur,</i>				
1. Pres. He is said	}	to have; to have had; to be about to have.		
2. Past, He was said				
3. Fut. He will be said				

93. But when the Latin infinitive, with its subject, is translated by the English *indicative* or *potential*, the tense used in these moods, must be that which will correctly express the time of the act expressed by the Latin infinitive as estimated, not from the time of the governing verb, as in Latin, but as estimated from the present. That is, events present at the same time, or past at the same time, will be expressed in English by the same tense; an event represented in Latin as prior to the present time, (perfect infinitive after the present tense,) will be expressed by the English imperfect or perfect indefinite; and an event represented in Latin as prior to a past event, (perfect infinitive after a past tense,) will be expressed by the English pluperfect: thus:

1. Pres. *Dicunt eum venire,* They say that he is coming, or comes.
2. Past, *Dixerunt eum venire,* They said that he came.
3. Pres. *Dicunt eum venisse,* They say that he came.
4. Past, *Dixerunt eum venisse,* They said that he had come.
5. Past, *Cæperunt suspicari illam venire,* They began to suspect that she came.

Note. The infinitive after the future does not follow this analogy, but is always translated in its own tense; as,

Pres.	Perf.	Future.
6. <i>Dicent eum venire,</i>	<i>venisse,</i>	<i>venturum esse.</i>
They will say that he comes,	has come,	will come.

94. 1. Present, past, and future time, are variously expressed as follows:

1st. *Present time* is expressed by the *present tense*, and sometimes by the *perfect definite*.

2d. *Past time* is expressed by the *imperfect*, *perfect definite* and *pluperfect*.—by the *perfect participle*,—the *present infinitive after a past tense*,—the *present tense used to express a past event*, § 44, I, 3,—and by the *pre-*

sent participle, agreeing with the subject of the governing verb in any of these tenses, § 49, 5.

3d. Future time is expressed by the *future*, and *future perfect*.

2. The infinitive of deponent verbs, is translated in the same manner as the infinitive active in the following examples in Nos. 95 to 100.

3. After verbs denoting to *promise*, *request*, *advise*, *command*, and the like, implying a reference to something future, the present infinitive, with its subject, is usually translated as the future, by *should*, or *would*, (See No. 100, 1, 2, 3, 7, 8, 9,); as, *Jussit, eos per castra duci*, He ordered that they *should be led* through the camp.

4. The Latin words for "*he said*," "*saying*," or the like, introducing an oblique narration, are often omitted, and the infinitive takes the form of translation corresponding to the *time* expressed by the word to be supplied.

From these principles are deduced the following directions for translating the infinitive with a subject.

Present Infinitive after Present or Future time.

95. DIRECT. I. When the preceding verb is in the *present*, the *perfect* used definitely, or *future tense*, the present infinitive is translated as the present; as,

Active Voice.

- | | |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Dico eum laudāre,</i> | I say that he <i>praises</i> . |
| 2. <i>Dixi eum laudāre,</i> | I have said that he <i>praises</i> . |
| 3. <i>Dicam eum laudāre,</i> | I will say that he <i>praises</i> . |

Passive Voice.

- | | |
|------------------------------|---|
| 4. <i>Dico eum laudāri,</i> | I say that he <i>is praised</i> . |
| 5. <i>Dixi eum laudāri,</i> | I have said that he <i>is praised</i> . |
| 6. <i>Dicam eum laudāri,</i> | I will say that he <i>is praised</i> . |

Present Infinitive after Past time.

96. DIRECT. II. When the preceding verb is in the *imperfect*, *perfect indefinite*, or *pluperfect*, or in the *present infinitive after a past tense*, the present infinitive is translated as the *imperfect*, or *perfect indefinite*; as,

Present Infinitive Active.

1. *Dicēbam eum laudāre*, I said that he *praised*.
2. *Dixi eum laudāre*, I said that he *praised*.
3. *Dixēram eum laudāre*, I had said that he *praised*.
4. *Cēpi dicere eum laudāre*, I began to say that he *praised*.

Present Infinitive Passive.

5. *Dicēbam eum laudāri*, I said that he *was praised*.
6. *Dixi eum laudāri*, I said that he *was praised*.
7. *Dixēram eum laudāri*, I had said that he *was praised*.
8. *Cēpi dicere eum laudāri*, I began to say that he *was praised*.

Exc. I. When the present infinitive expresses that which is always true, it must be translated in the *present*, after any tense, § 44, I. 1; as

9. *Doctus erat deum gubernare mundum*, He had been taught that God *governs* the world.

Exc. II. When the present infinitive expresses an act subsequent to the time of the governing verb, it is translated after any tense, by the potential with *should*; *would*; as,

- | | | | |
|---------------------|-------------------|----------------|-------------------------------|
| 10. <i>Jubet</i> | } <i>te ire</i> , | He orders | } that you <i>should go</i> . |
| 11. <i>Jussit</i> | | He ordered | |
| 12. <i>Jussērat</i> | | He had ordered | |

Perfect Infinitive after Present or Future time.

97. DIRECT. III. When the preceding verb is in the *present*, *perfect definite*, or *future tense*, the perfect infinitive is translated as the imperfect or perfect indefinite; as,

Active Voice.

1. *Dico eum laudavisse*, I say that he *praised*.
2. *Dixi eum laudavisse*, I have said that he *praised*.
3. *Dicam eum laudavisse*, I will say that he *praised*.

Passive Voice.

4. *Dico eum laudatum esse*, I say that he *was praised*.
5. *Dixi eum laudatum esse*, I have said that he *was praised*.
6. *Dicam eum laudatum esse*, I will say that he *was praised*.
7. *Dico eum laudatum fuisse*, I say that he *has been praised*.
8. *Dixi eum laudatum fuisse*, I have said that he *has been praised*.
9. *Dicam eum laudatum fuisse*, I will say that he *has been praised*.

Perfect Infinitive after Past Tenses.

98. DIRECT. IV. When the preceding verb is in the *imperfect*, *perfect indefinite*, or *pluperfect*, or in the *present infinitive after a past tense*, the perfect infinitive is translated as the pluperfect; as,

Active Voice

1. *Dicēbam eum laudavisse*, I said that he *had praised*.
2. *Dixi eum laudavisse*, I said that he *had praised*.
3. *Dixēram eum laudavisse*, I had said that he *had praised*.
4. *Cēpi dicere eum laudavisse*, I began to say that he *had praised*.

Passive Voice.

5. *Dicēbam eum laudātum esse*, I said that he *had been praised*.
6. *Dixi eum laudātum esse*, I said that he *had been praised*.
7. *Dixēram eum laudātum esse*, I had said that he *had been praised*.
8. *Cēpi dicere eum laudātum esse*, I began to say that he *had been praised*.
9. *Dicēbam eum laudātum fuisse*, I said that he *had been praised*.
10. *Dixi eum laudātum fuisse*, I said that he *had been praised*.
11. *Dixēram eum laudātum fuisse*, I had said that he *had been praised*.
12. *Cēpi dicere eum laudātum fuisse*, I began to say that he *had been praised*.

Future Infinitive after the Present Tense.

99. When the preceding verb is in the *present*, or *perfect definite*, or *future tense*, the future infinitive with *esse*, is translated as the future indicative; and with *fuisse* by *would have*, or *should have*, in the pluperfect potential in a future sense, and *fore*, for *futūrum esse*, by *will be*.

Active Voice.

1. *Dico eum laudatūrum esse*, I say that he *will praise*.
2. *Dixi eum laudatūrum esse*, I have said that he *will praise*.
3. *Dicam eum laudatūrum esse*, I will say that he *will praise*.
4. *Dico eum laudatūrum fuisse*, I say that he *would have praised*.
5. *Dixi eum laudatūrum fuisse*, I have said that he *would have praised*.
6. *Dicam eum laudatūrum fuisse*, I will say that he *would have praised*.

Passive Voice.

7. *Dico eum laudatum iri,* I say that he will be praised.
 8. *Dixi eum laudatum iri,* I have said that he will be praised.
 9. *Dicam eum laudatum iri,* I will say that he will be praised.

Future Infinitive after Past Tenses.

100. DIRECT. VI. When the preceding verb is of the *imperfect*, *perfect indefinite*, or *pluperfect*, the future of the infinitive with *esse*, is rendered by *would* or *should*; and with *fuisse*, by *would have*, and *should have*; and *fore* for *futurum esse* after any past tense, by *would be*; as,

Active Voice.

1. *Dicēbam eum laudatūrum* I said that he would praise.
esse,
 2. *Dixi eum laudatūrum, &c.* I said that he would praise.
 3. *Dixēram eum laudatūrum* I had said that he would praise.
 4. *Dicēbam eum laudatūrum* I said that he would have praised.
fuisse,
 5. *Dixi eum laudatūrum, &c.* I said that he would have praised.
 6. *Dixēram eum laudatūrum* I had said that he would have praised.
fuisse,

Passive Voice.

7. *Dicēbam eum laudatum* I said that he would be praised.
iri,
 8. *Dixi eum laudatum iri,* I said that he would be praised.
 9. *Dixēram eum laudatum* I had said that he would be praised.
iri,
 10. *Dicēbam (dixi) eum fore* I said that he would be safe.
tutum,

Usage of Fore.

Obs. *Fore* is used for *futurum esse*, and, with a subject after present tenses means "*will be*," after past tenses "*would be*." Both of them when followed by a subjunctive with *ut* (§ 145, *Obs.* 6,) after a present tense, may be translated by the future indicative of that verb; and after a past tense, by the imperfect potential; as,

11. *Credo eum fore tutum,* I believe that he will be safe.
 12. *Credēbam, or credidi, (credidēram) eum fore tutum,* I believed, (had believed) that he would be safe.
 13. *Credo fore (or futurum esse) ut discas,* I believe that you will learn.
 14. *Credēbam or credidi (credidēram) fore (or futurum esse) ut discēres,* I believed, (had believed) that you would learn.

Participles.

101. Participles are usually translated after their nouns, as in the paradigms of the verb; thus,

- | | | |
|---------------------|----------------------------|--|
| 1. Present active, | <i>Homo carens fraude,</i> | A man wanting guile. |
| 2. Future active, | <i>Homo scripturus,</i> | A man about to write. |
| 3. Perfect passive, | <i>Vita bene acta,</i> | A life well spent. |
| 4. ———— , | <i>Cæsar coactus,</i> | Cæsar being (or having been) compelled. |
| 5. (Deponent,) | <i>Cæsar regressus,</i> | Cæsar having returned |
| 6. Future passive, | <i>Mala vitanda,</i> | Evils to be avoided,
i. e., which ought to
be avoided. |

Exc. But when a participle is used as an adjective, (§ 49, 3,) it is translated, like the adjective, before its substantive; as,

7. *Tigrin ostendit mansuefactam;* He exhibited a tamed tiger.
 8. *In ferventibus arenis insistens,* Standing on the burning sands.

Future Participle Active.

102. When the Future participle active is used to express a *purpose, end, or design* of another action, (§ 146, Obs. 3,) it is rendered by “to,” or the phrase “in order to,” instead of “about to;” as,

1. *Pergit consulturus ora-* He goes to consult (or, in order to
cûla, consult) the oracle.

Obs. The present participle is also sometimes used in this sense; as,

2. *Venerunt postulantes cibum,* They came to (or, in order to) ask food.

Perfect Participle Passive.

103. As the Latin verb has no perfect participle in the active sense, (except in deponent verbs,) its place is usually supplied by the perfect participle passive in the case absolute, (§ 146, Obs. 8,); thus, “Cæsar having consulted his friends,” rendered into Latin, will be, *Cæsar amīcis consultis*, literally, “Cæsar, his friends being consulted. Hence,

104. When the action expressed passively by the perfect participle in the case absolute, or agreeing with the object of a verb, is something done by the subject of the leading

verb in the sentence, the participle is rendered more in accordance with English idiom, by the compound perfect active participle in English, agreeing with the subject of the verb, and followed by its noun in the objective case, (§ 49, 8, and § 146, Obs. 8.); thus,

1. *Cæsar, his dictis, profectus est*, translated in the Latin idiom, *Cæsar, these things being said*, departed.
English idiom, *Cæsar, having said these things*, departed.
2. *Opere peracto, ludemus*,
Latin idiom, *Our work being finished*, we will play.
English idiom, *Having finished our work*, we will play.
3. *Pythiam ad se vocatum pecuniâ instruxit*,
Latin idiom, He supplied with money Pythias *being called* to him.
English idiom, *Having called* Pythias to him, he supplied him with money.

105. The perfect participle of deponent verbs having an active signification, accords with the English idiom, and is best translated literally; as,

1. *Nactus naviculum*, *Having found* a boat.
2. *Cohortatus exercitum*, *Having exhorted* the army.

106. When the perfect participle of deponent or common verbs, expresses an act nearly or entirely contemporaneous with the leading verb, it may be translated by the English present participle in *ing*, (§ 48, 5, Note.); as,

1. *Rex hoc facinus miratus* The king, *admiring* this act, dismissed the youth.
2. *Columba delapsa refert sagittam*, The dove *falling* brings back the arrow.

The Future Participle Passive.

107. After verbs signifying *to give, to deliver, to agree or bargain for, to have, to receive, to undertake*, and the like, the participle in *dus* generally denotes *design* or *purpose*, and is rendered simply as in the paradigm, or with the phrase "in order to," prefixed, (§ 146, Obs. 4.); as,

1. *Testamentum tibi tradit legendum*, He delivers his will to you *to* (or *in order to*) be read.
2. *Attribuit nos trucidandos* He has given us over to Cethegus *(in order) to be slain*.

108. The participle in *dus*, especially when agreeing with the subject of a sentence or clause, generally denotes *propriety, necessity, or obligation*, and is rendered variously, as

the tense of the accompanying verb and the connection require, (§ 146, Obs. 5,); the following are examples :

1. *Legātus mittendus est*, An ambassador *must* (or *should*)
be sent.
2. *Legātus mittendus erat* or *An ambassador had to be sent.*
fuit,
3. *Legātus mittendus erit*, An ambassador *will have to be sent.*
4. *Legātum mittendum esse*, That an ambassador *should be sent.*
5. ——— *mittendum fu-* ——— *ought to* (or
is se, *should) have been sent.*
6. *Dissimulanda loquitur*, He speaks things that *ought to be*
concealed.
7. *Dissimulanda loquebā-* He spake things which *ought to*
tur, *have been concealed.*
8. *Quæ dissimulanda* Which *will have to be concealed.*
erunt,
9. *Dic, quid statuendum* Say, what is *to be* (or *must be*)
sit *thought.*

Ablative Absolute.

109. When a participle stands with a substantive in the ablative absolute, R. LX., the substantive is translated without a sign, No. 9, and after it the participle, as in the paradigm of the verb ; as,

1. *Romūlo regnante*, Romulus *reigning.*
2. *Hac oratione habitā*, This oration *being delivered.*
3. *Cæsare ventūro*, Cæsar (being) *about to come.*
4. *Præceptis tradendis*, Rules *being to be delivered.*
5. *Bello orto*, War *having arisen.*

Note. The future participles, Ex. 3, 4, are seldom used in the case absolute.

110. When two nouns,—a pronoun and a noun,—a noun or a pronoun and an adjective, are used in the ablative without a participle, (§ 146, Obs. 10,) they are translated in the nominative without a sign, and the English participle “*being*,” inserted between them ; as,

1. *Adolescentūlo duce*, A young man *being* leader.
2. *Mario consule*, Marius *being* consul.
3. *Me suasore*, I *being* the adviser.
4. *Annibālī vivo*, Hannibal *being* alive.
5. *Se invito*, He *being* unwilling.

Gerunds and Gerundives.

111. The gerund, being a verbal noun, is translated in

the same manner as other nouns of the same case, and at the same time may govern the case of its own verb, § 147; as,

- | | |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| 1. N. <i>Petendum pacem,</i> | Seeking peace. |
| 2. G. <i>Petendi pacem,</i> | Of seeking peace. |
| 3. D. <i>Utendo libris,</i> | To (or for) using books |
| 4. Ac. <i>Obliviscendum injuriarum,</i> | Forgetting injuries. |
| 5. Abl. <i>Parendo magistratui,</i> | By obeying the magistrate. |
| 6. Abl. <i>Petendo pacem,</i> | With, from, in, by seeking peace. |

112. Of verbs that govern the accusative, instead of the gerund in the oblique cases, the Latins commonly used the participle in *dus*, in the sense of the gerund, and agreeing with its object in gender, number and case; the case being governed by the same word that would have governed the gerund. When thus used it is called a *gerundive*. (§ 147; R. LXII.)

Gerunds.

Gerundives.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| 1. <i>Ars librām legēdi,</i> | 5. <i>Ars librī legēdi,</i>
The art of reading a book. |
| 2. <i>Utile vulnēra curando,</i> | 6. <i>Utile vulneribus curandis.</i>
Useful for healing wounds. |
| 3. <i>Ad litēras scribendum,</i> | 7. <i>Ad litēras scribendas,</i>
For writing a letter. |
| 4. <i>De captivos commutando,</i> | 8. <i>De captivis commutandis,</i>
Respecting exchanging captives. |

113. When the gerund is the subject of the verb *est*, and governs the dative, it implies necessity, and is variously translated into the English idiom, as the tense of the verb requires, (§ 147,); as,

Latin Idiom.

English Idiom.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. <i>Legendum est mihi,</i>
Reading is to me; i. e., | I must read; I ought to read;
I should read. |
| 2. <i>Legendum erat (fuit) mihi.</i>
Reading was to me; | I had to read; I ought to have
read; I should have read. |
| 3. <i>Legendum fuērat mihi,</i>
Reading had been to me; | I had been obliged to read. |
| 4. <i>Legendum erit mihi,</i>
Reading will be to me; | I will have to read; It will be
necessary for me to read. |
| 5. <i>Dicit legendum esse mihi,</i>
He says that reading is to me; | He says that I must read—
ought to read—should read. |
| 6. <i>Dicit legendum fuisse mihi,</i>
He says that reading was to me; | He says that I had to read—
ought to—or should—have
read. |

Obs. The dative is frequently omitted, and generally when it denotes persons or things, in a general or indefinite

sense. In such cases, *homīni*, *hominibus*, *nobis*, or the like, must be supplied ; as,

7. *Vivendum est recte* (*scil. hominibus*,) Living honestly, is viz : to men ; i. e., men ought to live honestly.
 8. *Dicit vivendum esse recte*, (*scil. homīni*,) He says that living honestly is, viz : to a man ; i. e. a man ought to live honestly.

Supines.

114. The Supines are rendered without variation, as in the paradigm, and under the rules, (§ 148,) ; as,

1. *Abiit deambulatum*, He has gone to walk.
 2. *Facile dictu*, Easy to tell, or to be told.

Passive Voice.

115. The passive voice, in the indicative mood, is translated as in the paradigms. The subjunctive mood is subject to all the variety of construction and translation used in the active voice, Nos. 74–84, acting on the verb *to be*, which as an auxiliary with the perfect participle, makes up the passive form of the verb in English.

In the compound tenses, (§ 53, 3,) when two or more verbs in a sentence are in the same tense, and have the same nominative, or are in the same construction, the verb *sum* is commonly expressed with the last and understood to the rest, as in the following Ex. 1. But when the nominative is changed, the verb “to be” should be repeated as in Ex. 2.

1. *Nisus a Minōe victus et occisus est*, Nisus was conquered and killed by Minos.
 2. *Tres naves captæ, decem demersæ, duo millia hostium capta, tredëcim millia occisa sunt.* Three ships were taken, ten sunk; two thousand of the enemy were taken, thirteen thousand killed.

Passive Voice in a Middle Sense.

116. The Latin passive voice is often used to represent its subject, not as acted upon by another, but as acting on itself, or for itself, or intransitively, by its own impulse ; and so corresponds in sense to the middle voice in Greek. Thus used, it is best translated by the active voice followed by the reflexive pronoun as an object, or by an intransitive

verb expressing the idea intended, (§ 41, Obs. 3.) The following are examples.

1. *Paludibus abditi sunt,* They concealed themselves in the marshes.
2. *Cum omnes in omni genere scelerum volutentur,* Since all give themselves up, to every kind of wickedness.
3. *Fertur in hostes,* Rushes against the enemy.
4. *Volutati super poma,* Rolling themselves over the apples.
5. *Cingitur armis,* Girds himself with his armor.
6. *Sternuntur tumulo,* Throw themselves on the grave.
7. *Gallus victus occultatur,* The cock, when conquered, hides himself.

117. The verb *sum* governing the genitive by R. XII., § 108, may generally be translated by the phrase "belongs to," "is the part," "is the property," &c. See explanation under Rule; as,

1. *Est regis,* It belongs to the king.
2. *Pecus est Melibæi,* The flock belongs to Melibæus.
3. *Prudentia est senectutis,* Prudence is the characteristic of old age.

118. The verb *sum*, (also *desum*,) in the third person, governing the dative by § 112, Rule II., may generally be translated by the corresponding tenses of the verb "to have," with the Latin dative for its subject, and the Latin subject for its object; as,

	<i>Latin Idiom.</i>	<i>English Idiom.</i>
1. <i>Liber est mihi,</i>	A book is to me,	I have a book.
2. <i>Liber erat mihi,</i>	A book was to me,	I had a book.
3. <i>Liber fuit mihi,</i>	A book was (or has been) to me,	I had, or have had a book.
4. <i>Liber fuërat mihi,</i>	A book had been to me,	I had had a book.
5. <i>Liber erit mihi,</i>	A book will be to me,	I will have a book.
6. <i>Liber sunt mihi,</i>	Books are to me,	I have books.
7. <i>Est mihi,</i>	It is to me,	I have it.
8. <i>Liber deest mihi,</i>	A book is not to me,	I have not a book.

119. When a compound verb, rendered by the simple verb and a preposition, is followed by two cases, the simple verb with the immediate object (always in the accusative,) is usually translated first, and then the preposition with the remote object.

1. *Flumen copias transduxit,* He led his forces across the river.
2. *Circumdare mœnia opido,* To build walls around the city
3. *Caput dejecit saxo,* He threw the head down from the rock.

120. An adverb, adverbial phrase, or clause expressing some circumstance in translating, may often be arranged in different situations in a sentence, due regard being paid to the sense and harmony of the whole; thus, *Magna debemus suscipere dum vires suppētunt*, may be arranged variously for translating, as follows:

1. *Debemus suscipere magna, dum vires suppētunt*; or,
2. *Dum vires suppētunt*, *debemus suscipere magna*; or,
3. *Debemus, dum vires suppētunt*, *suscipere magna*.

121. The negative conjunction *ne*, is variously rendered *lest*, *lest that*, *that-not*, *not*; and after verbs signifying to *fear*, *forbid*, and the like, it is translated *that*, while *ut* in the same situation, means *that not*.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. <i>Ne quis eat,</i> | <i>Lest</i> (or <i>that not</i>) any one may go. |
| 2. <i>Orat ne se perdat,</i> | She entreats <i>that</i> he would not destroy her. |
| 3. <i>Egi ne interessem,</i> | I managed <i>that</i> I should not be present. |
| 4. <i>Dum ne veniat,</i> | Provided he do not come. |
| 5. <i>Respondit ne cogitata quidem latent.</i> | He replied <i>that not</i> even the thoughts are concealed. |
| 6. <i>Vereor ne cadas,</i> | I am afraid <i>that</i> you may fall. |
| 7. <i>Timui ut veniret,</i> | I feared <i>that</i> he would not come. |

Note 1. But when the fear expressed, refers to such things as we wish, *ne* means *that-not*; as, *Paves ne ducas illam*, You are afraid *that* you do not get her to wife.

Ne, after a command implying a negative, or prohibition, is often omitted; as, *cave titūbes*, take care *that* you do not stumble.

Note 2. *Ne quidem*, (always separate,) is an emphatic negative, and has the emphatic word between; as, *ne hoc quidem*, not even *this*; *ne tum quidem*, not even *then*.

122. When a verb is translated into English by the aid of an auxiliary, an adverb, or clause modifying it, will often have to be placed *between* the auxiliary and the verb, (Eng. Gr. § 74.); as,

1. *Dixit ne ob hoc alios con-* He said that we should not on this
temnāmus, account despise others.

123. Some prepositions are variously translated according to the meaning of the words, or the case with which they are connected; thus,

1. *In* followed by an accusative, means *to, into, towards, for, against*. &c., (§ 136, R. L.)
2. *In*, followed by the ablative, means *in, upon, among, in. in the case of*, (§ 136, R. LI.)
3. *Inter*, referring to two, means *between*; to more than two, *among*.
4. *Sub* means *under, at the foot of, close up to*.
5. *Præ* means *before, in comparison of*;—sometimes, *more than*.

124. When the following conjunctions, adjectives, and adverbial particles, are placed, one before each of two successive words or clauses, the first is commonly translated differently from the second, and usually in the following manner, (§149, Obs. 5.)

1. <i>Et</i>	— <i>et</i> ,	Both	— and.
2. <i>Que</i>	— <i>que</i> ,	Both	— and.
3. <i>Aut. vel,</i>	} — <i>aut, vel,</i>	Either	— or.
<i>sive,</i>			
4. <i>Nec</i>	— <i>nec.</i>	Neither	— nor.
5. <i>Neque</i>	— <i>neque,</i>		
6. <i>Sive, seu</i>	— <i>sive, seu,</i>	Whether	— or.
7. <i>Tum</i>	— <i>tum.</i>	{ Not only	— but also.
8. <i>Cum</i> or <i>quum</i>	— <i>tum,</i>	Both	— and.
9. <i>Jam</i>	— <i>jam,</i>	{ Not only	— but also.
10. <i>Nunc</i>	— <i>nunc,</i>		
11. <i>Simul</i>	— <i>simul,</i>	Both	— and.
		Now	— then.
		{ At one time	— at another.
		Not only	— but also.
		No sooner	— than.
		As soon as	— instantly.
		{ At one time	— at another
12. <i>Modo, alias</i>	— <i>modo, alias,</i>	Sometimes	— sometimes.

Corresponding Conjunctive Terms.

13. <i>Ne</i>	— <i>an,</i>	Whether	— or.
14. <i>Utrum</i>	— <i>an,</i>	Whether	— or.
15. <i>Ita, sic, tam, adeo</i>	— <i>ut,</i>	So	— that; so — as.
16. <i>Talis, tantus</i>	— <i>ut.</i>	Such, so great	— that.
17. <i>Is, ejusmodi</i>	— <i>ut,</i>	Such, of such a kind	— that.
18. <i>Simul</i>	— <i>ac, or atque,</i>	As soon	— as.
19. <i>Tamdiu</i>	— <i>quamdiu,</i>	As long	— as.
20. <i>Ut</i>	— <i>sic,</i>	As	— so.

Ne is frequently omitted with the first word or clause, and must be supplied when *an* stands with the second; as,

21. *Rectè an perpěram,* (Whether) right or wrong.

General Rules for Accentuation.

1. Words of two syllables have the accent on the first or penult; as, *pă'-ter, mû'-sa, au'-rum*.

2. Words of more than two syllables, when the penult is long, have the accent on the penult; when the penult is short, they have the accent on the antepenult; as, *a-mĭ'-cus, dom'-i-nus*.

3. When the enclitics, *que, ve, ne*, are added to a word the two words are considered as one, and it is accented accordingly; as, *pă'-ter, pă'-ter'-que; dom'-i-nus, dom-i-nus'.ve*.

General Rules for the Quantity of Syllables.

1. A vowel before another vowel, is short; as, *via, Dĕus*.

2. A vowel before two consonants, or a double consonant, is long by position; as, *arma, fallo, axis*.

3. A vowel before a mute and a liquid, (*l, r,*) is common, *i. e.* either long or short; as, *volŭcris*, or *volŭcris*.

4. A diphthong is always long; as, *aurum, Cæsar*.

Note. In this work when the quantity of the penult, in words of more than two syllables, is determined by any of these rules, it is not marked, otherwise it is marked.

Explanation of References.

The references at the foot of each page, to which a section mark (§) is prefixed, are to the sections and their subdivisions in the Grammar, and are intended chiefly to explain the construction.

In those references which have no section mark prefixed, the first number directs to the same number in the preceding Introduction, and the second, to the example under that number. Thus for example, in p. 53, § 38, 8; the number 38 refers to Introduction 38, (p. 22,) which shows how the relative in the beginning of a sentence is to be translated; and the number 8 refers to example 8, *A quo consilio*, &c., showing that the relative *quâ* is here to be translated "this," and *Quâ de causâ*, "for this cause." These references are intended to explain particular phrases and idioms, and to give an example of the mode of translating them.

The references made by figures are to the notes on the text, commencing p. 207, where it will be observed that all the notes belonging to a page are contained in one paragraph, at the beginning of which is the number of the page to which the notes refer.

N. B. In the text the reference letter stands *after*, and the reference figure stands *before* the word or words to which they respectively belong.

C. JULII CÆSARIS COMMENTARII

DE BELLO GALLICO.

BOOK I.

GENERAL ARGUMENT.

I. General description of Gaul—Chap. 1. II. The war with the Helvetii—Chap. 2–29. III. War with Ariovistus—Chap. 30–54.

1. GALLIA est omnis divisa in partes tres, ¹quarum ^a unam incolunt Belgæ, aliam Aquitani, tertiam, ²qui ipsorum lingua Celtæ, ^b nostrâ Galli, ^b appellantur. Hi omnes linguâ, ^c institutis, ^c legibus ⁴inter se ^d differunt. ⁵Gallos ab Aquitanis Garumna flumen, a Belgis Matrona et Sequana dividit. Horum ^a omnium fortissimi sunt Belgæ, propterea quod a ⁶cultu atque humanitate Provinciæ longissimè absunt, ⁷minimèque ad eos mercatores sæpe commēant, atque ea, quæ ad effeminandos ^e animos pertinent, important; proximique sunt Germanis, ^f qui trans Rhenum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt: quâ ^g de causâ Helvetii quoque reliquos Gallos virtute ^e præcedunt, quod ferè quotidianis præliis ^h cum Germanis contendunt, cum aut suis ⁱ finibus ⁸eos prohibent, aut ⁹ipsi in ¹⁰eorum finibus bellum gerunt. ¹¹Eorum una pars, quam Gallos ^k obtinere dictum est, initium capit a flumine Rhodano; continetur Garumnâ flumine, ^h Oceano, finibus Belgarum; attingit etiam ab Sequanis et Helvetiis flumen Rhenum; ¹²vergit ad septentriones.

^a § 107, R. X.

^b § 103, R. V.

^c § 128, R.

^d § 28, Obs. 5.

^e § 147, R. LXII, & ^h § 129, R.

112, 3.

^f § 111, R.

^g 38, 8.

ⁱ 31, 3.

^k § 145, R. LVIII.

Belgæ ¹ ab extrēmīs Galliæ finibus oriuntur; pertīnent ad inferiōrem partem fluminis Rhēni; ² spectant in septentriōnes et orientem solem. Aquitania a Garumnā flumine ad Pyrenæos montes, et eam partem Oceāni, quæ est ³ ad Hispaniam, pertinet; spectat inter occāsum solis et septentriōnes.

2. Apud Helvetios longè nobilissimus et ditissimus fuit Orgetōrix. Is, Marco Messālā et Marco Pisōne ⁴ Consulibus, ^a regni cupiditate ^b inductus, conjurationem nobilitatis fecit, et ^c civitati ^e persuāsit, ut de finibus suis cum omnibus copiis exirent: ^d perfacile ^e esse cum virtute omnibus præstarent, ^f totius Galliæ imperio ^g potiri. Id hoc facilius eis ^m ⁷ persuāsit, quod undique loci ^h naturā ^b Helvetii continentur: unā ex parte flumine Rheno, ^b latissimo ^b atque altissimo, qui agrum Helvetium a Germānis dividit: alterā ex parte, monte ^b Jurā altissimo, ^b qui est inter Sequānos et Helvetios; tertiā, lacu Lemanno, ^b et flumine ⁱ Rhodāno, qui Provinciam nostram ab Helvetiis dividit. His rebus fiebat, ^k ut et minùs latè vagarentur, ^l et minùs facillè finitimis ^m bellum inferre possent: ¹ quā de causā homines bellandi ⁿ cupidi magno dolore ^b afficiebantur. ⁹ Pro multitudīne autem hominum, et pro gloriā ¹⁰ belli atque fortitudinis, angustos se fines habere ^o arbitrabantur, ¹¹ qui in longitudinem millia ^p passuum ducenta et quadraginta, in latitudinem centum et octoginta patēbant.

3. ¹² His rebus ^b adducti, et auctoritate Orgetorigis permoti, constituērunt ^q ea, quæ ad ¹³ proficiscendum ^r pertinerent, ^s comparāre; ^t jumentorum et ¹⁴ carrorum quàm maximum ^u numerum coēmēre; ¹⁵ sementes quàm maximas ^v facere, ut in itinere copia frumenti suppetēret; ^v cum proxi-

^a 110, 3.^h 24.^p § 24, 5.^b § 129, R.ⁱ § 149, R.^q 54.^c 63.^k 51.^r § 147, Obs. 4.^d § 140, 1, 3d.^l § 140, 1, 4th.^s § 141, Obs. 8.^e § 98, Obs. 6.^m § 123, R.^t § 144, R. LVII.^f § 140, Obs. 3.ⁿ § 147, Obs. 2.^u § 134, Obs. 6, 3d.^g § 121, R. XXVI.^o 96, 1.^v § 140, 1, 2d.

mis civitatibus pacem et amicitiam confirmare. Ad eas res conficiendas ^a biennium sibi satis esse ^b duxerunt; ¹ in tertium annum profectiōnem lege confirmant. Ad eas res conficiendas ^a Orgetorix deligitur. Is sibi ^c legatiōnem ad civitates suscepit. In eo itinere persuadet Castico, ^d Catamantalēdis filio, ^e Sequāno, cujus pater regnum in Sequānis multos annos ^f obtinuērat, et a senātu Populi Romāni amicus ^g appellātus erat, ut regnum in civitate suā ² occupāret, ^h quod pater antē habuērat; itemque Dumnorigi ^d Æduo, fratri ^c Divitiaci, qui eo tempore ⁱ ³ principātum in civitate obtinēbat, ^k ac maxime plebi ^l acceptus erat, ut idem ^m conarētur ^h persuadet, eique ^c filiam suam in matrimonium dat. ⁴ Perfacile ⁿ factu ^o esse, ^b illis ^d probat, conata ^m perficere, propterea quod ipse suæ civitatis imperium obtenturus esset: non esse dubium, quin ^p ⁵ totius Galliæ plurimum Helvetii possent: se ^q suis copiis ^r suoque exercitu illis ^c regna conciliaturum, confirmat. Hac oratione adducti, ⁶ inter se fidem et iurandum dant, et, regno occupato, per tres potentissimos ac firmissimos ⁷ populos totius Galliæ ^s sese ^q potiri posse ⁸ sperant.

4. ⁹ Ea res ut est Helvetiis ^t per ¹⁰ indicium enunciata, moribus ^r suis Orgetorigem ex ¹¹ vinculis causam dicere coegerunt: ¹² damnatum pœnam ^u sequi oportebat, ut igni cremaretur. Die ⁱ constituta causæ dictiōnis, Orgetorix ad iudicium omnem suam ¹³ familiam, ¹⁴ ad hominum ^v millia decem, undique coegit; et omnes clientes, obæratosque suos, quorum magnum numerum habebat, eodem conduxit: per eos, ne causam diceret, ^x se eripuit. Cum civitas, ob eam

^a 112, 7.ⁱ § 131, R. XL.^r § 129, R.^b 94, 3.^k § 44, II. 2.^s § 121, R. XXVI.^c § 123, R.^l § 111, R.

Exc. 2.

^d 63.^m 19, 4.^t § 126, R. III^e § 97, R.ⁿ § 98, Obs. 6.^u § 113, Exc. III.^f § 131, R. XLI.^o 114, 2.^v § 140, 1. 4th.^g § 103, R. V.^p § 140, 3.^w § 24, 5.^h § 140, 1, 3d.^q § 145, R. LVIII.^x § 140, 1, 2d.

rem incitāta, armis jus suum exsequi conarētur,^a multitudinemque hominū ex agris¹ magistrātus cogērent,^a Orgetōrix mortuus est: neque abest suspicio, ut^c Helvetii arbitrantur, ²quin^b ipse sibi^d mortem conscivērit.

5. Post ejus mortem nihilo min⁹ Helvetii id, quod constituerant, facere conantur, ut e finibus suis exeant.^e Ubi jam se^f ad eam rem parātos^g esse arbitrāti sunt, oppida sua omnia, numēro³ ad duodēcim, vicos ad quadringentos, reliqua privāta aedificia incendunt; frumentum omne, prāter quod^h secum portatūri erant, combūrun^t; ut, domumⁱ reditiōnis spe^k sublātā, paratiōres ad omnia pericūla subeunda^l essent:^m ⁴trium mensium molita⁵ cibaria sibi^d quemque domoⁱ efferre jubent. Persuādent Raurācis,^d et Tulingis, et Latobrigis, finitimis, uti, eōdem⁶ usi consilio,ⁿ oppidis suis vicisque exustis,^o unā cum iis proficiscantur:⁷ Boiosque, qui trans Rhenum incoluerant, et in agrum Noricum transierant Noreiamque oppugnārant, receptos^o ad se, socios^p sibi^d adsciscunt.

6. Erant omnino itinera duo, quibus itineribus^q domo exire possent:^t unum^r per Sequānos, angustum et difficile, inter montem Juram et flumen Rhodānum,⁸ vix quā singuli^s carri ducerentur;^t mons autem altissimus impendebat, ut facile perpauci prohibere possent:^u altērum per⁹ Provinciam nostram, multo facilius atque expeditius¹⁰ propterea quod Helvetiōrum inter fines, et Allobrōgum, qui nuper pacati erant, Rhodānus fluit, isque nonnullis locis^v ¹¹vado transitur. (Extrēmum oppidum Allobrōgum est, proximumque Helvetiōrum finibus,^w Genēva. Ex eo oppido pōns ad

^a § 140, Obs. 4. &

§ 44, II. 2.

^b § 140, 3.

^c § 140, Obs. 1.

^d § 123, R.

^e § 140, 1, 3d.

^f § 145, R. LVIII.

^g § 103, Obs. 2.

^h 37, 2. *na*

ⁱ § 130, 4.

^k § 146, LX. & 109.

^l 112, 3.

^m § 140, 1, 2d.

ⁿ § 121, R. XXVI.

^o 104, 1, & 2.

^p § 97, Exp.

^q 37, 6.

^r 19, Sup. *iter*.

^s 26, 2.

^t § 141, Obs. 7, &

§ 139, 2.

^u § 140, 1, 1st.

^v § 136, Obs. 5.

^w § 111. R.

Helvetios pertinet. Allobrogibus sese vel persuasuros,^a (quod nondum ¹ bono animo^b in Populum Romanum viderentur,^c) existimabant; vel vi coacturos,^a ut per suos fines eos ire paterentur.^d Omnibus rebus ad profectionem comparatis,^e ² diem dicunt, quâ die^f ad ripam Rhodani omnes conveniant:^g is dies erat ³ ante diem quintum Kalendas Aprilis. ⁴ Lucio Pisone, Aulo Gabinio Consulibus.^h }

7. Cæsariⁱ cum id nuntiatum esset,^k eos per Provinciam nostram iter facere conari, maturat⁵ ab urbe proficisci, et, quàm maximis^l potest itineribus, in ⁶ Galliam ulteriorem contendit, et ad Genèvam pervenit: ⁷ Provinciae^m toti quàm maximum^l militum numerum imperat (erat omnino in Galliâ ulteriøre legio una); pontem, qui erat ⁸ ad Genèvam, jubet rescindi.ⁿ Ubi de ejus adventu Helvetii ⁹ certiōres facti sunt, legatos ad eum mittunt, nobilissimos civitatis,^o cujus legationis Nameius et Verudoctius principem locum obtinebant,^p qui dicērent,^g ¹⁰ “sibi^q esse^r in animo, sine ullo maleficio iter per Provinciam facere, propterea quod aliud iter haberent^c nullum: rogare,^s ut ejus¹¹ voluntate id sibi facere liceat.”^t Cæsar, quod memoriâ tenēbat, Lucium Cassium Consulem occisum, exercitumque ejus ab Helvetiis pulsum, et ¹² sub jugum missum, ¹³ concedendum^u non putabat: neque homines inimico animo,^b datâ facultate per Provinciam itinēris faciendi,^v temperaturos ab injuriâ et maleficio existimabat. Tamen, ut spatium intercedere posset,^d dum milites, quos imperaverat, convenirent, legatis respondit, “diem se ad deliberandum sumtūrum; si quid vellent,^x ¹⁴ ante diem Idus Aprilis reverterentur.”^y

^a 100, 1.^b § 106, R. VII.^c § 141, Obs. 7.^d § 140, 1, 2d.^e 104, 1.^f § 131, R. XL.^g § 141, R. II.^h 110, 2.ⁱ § 126, R. III.^k 51, 2.^l § 134, Obs. 6, 3d.^m § 123, R. & 5, 1.ⁿ 90, 4.^o § 107, R. X. Exp.^p § 102, R. I.^q § 112, R. II.^r 51, 5.^s 94, 4.^t § 140, 1, 3d.^u 113, Obs. & 8.^v 112, 1.^w § 141, Obs. 8.^x § 140, 2.^y 78, 3.

8. Interea eâ legiōne, quam secum habēbat, militibusque, qui ex Provinciâ convenērant, a lacu Lemannō, ¹ qui in flumen Rhodānum influit, ² ad montem Juram, qui fines Sequanōrum ab Helvetiis dividit, ³ millia ^a passuum decem novem murum, in altitudinem pedum ^b sedēcim, fossamque perdūcit. Eo opēre perfecto, ^c præsidia dispōnit, ⁴ castella commūnit, quo facilius, si ⁵ se invīto transire conarentur, ^d prohibēre possit. ^e Ubi ea dies, quam constituērat cum legātis, venit, et legāti ad eum revertērunt, ⁶ negat, se ^f more ^g et exemplo ^h Popūli Romāni posse iter ulli ^h per Provinciam dare; et, si vim ⁱ facere conentur, ^d prohibitūrum ^k ostendit. Helvetii, eâ spe ^l dejecti, ⁷ navibus ^g junctis ratibusque ^g compluribus factis, alii vadis ^g Rhodāni, ⁸ quā minīma altitudo fluminis erat, nonnunquam interdū, sæpius noctu, si ⁹ perumpere possent, ^d conāti, opēris munitiōne ^g et militum concursu ^m et telis repulsi, hoc conātu ⁿ destitērunt.

9. Relinquebātur una per Sequānos via, quā, ^g Sequānis ^o invītis, propter angustias ire non potērant. His ^h cū suā ^p sponte persuadere non possent, ^q legātos ad Dumnorīgem Æduum mittunt, ut eo ¹⁰ deprecatore ^o a Sequānis impetrarent. ^r Dumnōrix ¹¹ gratiā ^g et largitiōne apud Sequānos plurimum potērat, et Helvetiis ^s erat amīcus, quod ex eā civitate Orgetorīgis filiam, ¹² in matrimonium duxerat; et, cupiditate ^g regni adductus, ¹³ novis rebus ^t studēbat, et quā plurimas ^u civitates suo sibi ^v beneficio habere obstrictas volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit, et a Sequānis impētrat, ut per fines suos ire Helvetios patiantur; obsidesque uti inter sese

^a § 131, R. XLII. &

§ 24, 5.

^b § 106, R. VI.

^c 104, 1, & 109.

^d § 140, 2.

^e § 140, 1.

^f § 145, R. LVIII.

^g § 129, R.

^h § 123, R.

ⁱ § 15, 12.

^k § 47, Note 1. and

100, 1, and 94, 2.

^l § 136, R. LII.

^m § 149, R.

ⁿ § 136, Obs. 5, (ab.)

^o 110, 5.

^p 30, 2.

^q § 140, Obs. 4.

^r § 140, 1, 3d.

^s § 111, R.

^t § 112, R. V.

^u § 134, Obs. 6, 3d.

^v § 126, R. III.

dent, perficit: ¹ Sequāni, ² ne itinēre Helvetios prohibeant; ^a Helvetii, ut sine maleficio et injuriā transeant.^a

10. ³ Cæsāri renunciātur ^b Helvetiis ^c esse in anīmo, per agrum Sequanōrum et Æduōrum iter in Santōnum fines facēre, qui non longē a Tolosatium finibus absunt, quæ civitas est in Provinciā. Id si fiēret, ^d ⁴ intelligēbat magno cum Provinciæ periculō futurum, ^e ut homīnes bellicōsos, Popūli Romāni inimīcos, ^f locis ^g patentibus maximēque frumentariis finitimos habēret. ^h Ob eas causas ei munitiōni, ⁱ quam fecerat, Titum Labiēnum legātum præfēcit: ipse in Italiam magnis itineribus contendit, duasque ibi legiōnes conscribit, et tres, quæ circum Aquileiam hiemābant, ex hibernis educit; et, quā ⁵ proximum iter in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpes erat, cum his quinque legionibus ire contendit. Ibi Centrōnes, et Graiocēli, et Caturiges, locis superioribus occupatis, ^k itinēre ^l exercitum prohibēre conantur. Compluribus his praeliis pulsus, ^k ab Ocēlo, ⁶ quod est ceteriōris Provinciæ extrēmum, in fines Vocontiōrum ulteriōris Provinciæ die septimo ^m pervēnit; inde in Allobrogum fines: ab Allobrogibus in Segusiānos exercitum ducit. Hi sunt extra Provinciam trans Rhodānum primi.ⁿ

11. Helvetii jam per angustias et fines Sequanōrum suas copias transduxerant, et in Æduōrum fines pervenerant, eorumque agros populabantur. Ædui, cū, se ^o suāque ^p ab iis defendere non possent, ^q legatos ad Cæsārem mittunt ^r rogātum ^r auxilium: “ita se ^s omni tempore ^m de Popūlo Romāno meritos esse, ut pāne in conspectu exercitūs nostri agri vastari, libēri eōrum in servitūtem abdūci, oppida ex-

^a § 140, 1, 2d.

^b 51, 2.

^c § 112, R. II.

^d § 140, 2.

^e § 47, Note 1.

^f § 97, R.

^g § 111, R.

^h 100, Obs. 14.

ⁱ § 123, R.

^k 104, 2.

^l § 136, Obs. 5, (in.)

^m § 131, R. XL.

ⁿ 19, (populi.)

^o 31.

^p 19, (negotia.)

^q § 140, Obs. 4.

^r 114, 1.

^s § 145, R. LVIII. &

94, 4.

pugnâri non debuërint.”^a Eödem tempöre Ædui Ambarri,¹ necessarii^b et consanguinei Æduörum, Cæsärem certiörem faciunt, sese,^c depopulâtis agris,^d non facilè ab oppïdis vim hostium prohibère: item Allobröges, qui trans Rhodänum vicos possessionesque habëbant, fugâ se ad Cæsärem recipiunt, et demonstrant, ²sibi^e præter agri solum nihil^c esse reliqui.^f Quibus^g rebus^h adductus Cæsar, non expectandum^c sibiⁱ statuit, dum, omnïbus fortunis^d sociörum consuntis, in Santönos Helvetii pervenirent.

12. ³Flumen^k est Arar, quod per fines Æduörum et Sequanörum in Rhodänum influit, ⁴incredibïli lenitâte,^h ita ut ocülis,^h ⁵in utram partem fluat,¹ judicâri non possit.^a ⁶Id Helvetii ratibus^h ac lINTRIBUS^h junctis transibant. Ubi per exploratöres Cæsar certior^m factus est, tres jam copiârûm partesⁿ Helvetios^c id flumenⁿ transduxisse,^o quartam verò partem^c citra flumen Arârim reliquam^m esse; ⁷de tertiâ vigiliâ cum legionibus tribus e castris profectus, ad eam partem pervenit, quæ nondum flumen^p transierat. Eos^s impeditos et inopinantes aggressus, magnam eörum partem concidit: reliqui fugæ^q sese mandârunt atque ⁹in proximas sylvas abdidērunt. Is pagus appellabatur Tigurinus: ^knam omnis civitas Helvetia in quatuor pagos divisa est. Hic pagus unus, cüm domo^r exisset,^s patrum noströrum memoriâ,^t Lucium Cassium Consulem interfecerat, et ejus exercitum sub jugum miserat. Ita, sive^u casu,^h sive consilio Deörum immortalium, quæ^v pars civitatis Helvetiæ insignem calamitatem Populo^q Romäno intulerat, ea ¹⁰princeps^w pœnas persolvit. Quâ^g in re Cæsar non solum publicas, sed etiam

^a § 140, 1, 1st.^b § 97, R.^c § 145, R. LVIII.^d 109, 2.^e § 112, R. II.^f § 106, R. VI.^g 38.^h § 129, R.¹ § 147, & 113.^k § 103, R. V.¹ § 140, 5.^m § 103, Obs. 2.ⁿ 119, 1.^o 98, 2.^p § 136, R. LII.^q § 123, R.^r § 130, 4.^s § 140, Obs. 4.^t § 136, Obs. 5, (in.)^u 124, 6.^v 43, & 37, 2d. 4.^w § 98, Obs. 10.

privātas injurias ultus est, quòd ejus socëri Lucii Pisōnis^a avum, Lucium Pisōnem legātum,^a Tigurīni eòdem prælio,^b quo^b Cassium, ¹ interfecērānt.

13. Hoc prælio facto, reliquas copias Helvetiōrum ut²consequi posset,^c pontem in Arāre faciendum^d curat atque ita exercitum transducit. Helvetii, repentīno ejus adventu^e commōti, cūm id, quod ipsi diēbus^f viginti ægerrimè confecērānt, ut flumen transirent,^g uno illum die^f fecisse intelligērent,^h legātos ad eum mittunt: cujusⁱ legatiōnis Divico princeps fuit, qui bello^b ⁴Cassiāno dux Helvetiōrum fuērat. Is⁵ita cum Cæsāre agit: “ Si pacem Popūlus Romānus cum Helvetiis faceret,^k in eam partem itūros¹ atque ibi futūros¹ Helvetios,^m ubi eos Cæsar constituisset^s atque esseⁿ voluisset: ^g sin bello^e persēqui perseverāret,^k reminiscerētur^o et⁶vetēris incommōdi^p Popūli Romāni et pristīnæ virtūtis^p Helvetiōrum. Quòd improvīsò unum pagum adortus esset,^g cūm ii, qui flumen transīssent,^g suis¹ auxilium ferre non possent,^h ne ob eam rem aut suæ magno opēre virtūti⁷tribuēret^o aut^r ipsos despicēret: se^m ita a patrīb^{us} majoribusque suis didicisse, ut magis virtūte,^e quàm dolo^s aut insidiis, niterentur.^t ⁸Quare ne committēret,^o ut is locus, ubi constitisent,^g ex calamitāte Popūli Romāni et interneciōne exercitūs nomen capēret,^t aut^r memoriam prodēret.”

14. ⁹His Cæsar ita respondit: “ Eo sibi^u minus^m dubitatiōnis^v dari, quòd eas res, quas legāti Helvetii commemorāssent,^g memoriā tenēret: ^w atque eo^x gravius ferre, quò^x minus merito^e Popūli Romāni accidissent; ¹⁰qui^y si alicujus

^a § 97, R.^b § 136, Obs. 5, (in.)^c § 140, 1, 2d.^d 108, 4.^e § 129, R.^f § 131, R. XLI.^g § 141, Obs. 8.^h § 140, Obs. 4.ⁱ 38.^k § 140, 2.¹ § 47, 4, Note 1.² § 145, R. LVIII.^m 90.^o § 140, 1, 3d, & Obs. 5.^p § 108, R. XIV. & 7, 1.^q § 123, R. & 19.^r § 149, R.^s § 120, Obs. 1.^t § 140, 1, 3d.^u § 126, R. III.^v § 106, R. VIII.^w § 140, 6.^x 22, 4, or 44, 7.^y 39.

injuriae sibi ^a conscius fuisset, ^b ¹ non fuisse ^c difficile ^d cavere, ² sed eo deceptum, ^e quod neque commissum a se intelligeret, ^f quare timeret; ^f neque sine causa ³ timendum ^g putaret. ⁴ Quod si veteris contumeliae ^h oblivisci vellet; ⁵ num ⁱ etiam recentium injuriarum, quod eo ^k invito iter per Provinciam per vim tentassent, ^f quod Aeduos, quod Ambarros, quod Allobrogas vexassent, ^f memoriam deponere posse? Quod suam victoriam tam insolenter gloriarentur, ^f quodque tam diu se impune tulisse injurias admirarentur, ^f eodem ⁶ pertinere: ^c consuesse enim Deos ^l immortales, quo gravius homines ex commutatione rerum doleant, ^m quos pro scelere eorum ulcisci velint, ⁿ his ^o ⁷ secundiore interdum res et diuturniorem impunitatem concedere. ^p ⁸ Cum ea ita sint, ^q tamen, si obsides ab iis sibi ^r dentur, ^b uti ea, quae polliceantur, ⁿ facturos intelligat, ^s et si Aeduis ^t de injuriis, quas ipsis ^o sociisque eorum intulerint, ⁿ item si Allobrogibus ^t satisfaciant, ^b sese ⁱ cum iis pacem esse facturum." Divico respondit: "Ita Helvetios a majoribus ^u suis institutos esse, uti obsides accipere, non dare, consuierint: ^m ejus rei Populum Romanum ⁱ esse ⁹ testem." Hoc responso dato, discessit.

15. Postero die ^v castra ex eo loco movent: idem facit Cæsar; equitatumque omnem, ad numerum quatuor millium, quem ex omni Provinciâ et Aeduis atque eorum sociis coactum ^w habebat, praemittit, qui videant, ^x quas in partes hostes iter faciant. ^y Qui, ^z ¹⁰ cupidius ^{aa} novissimum agmen

^a § 111, R.

^b § 140, 2.

^c § 51, 5.

^d § 98, Obs. 6.

^e § 47, 6.

^f § 140, 6.

^g 113, 8, (sibi.)

^h § 108, R. XIV. &

7, 1.

ⁱ 56, 3.

^k 110, 5.

^l § 145, R. LVIII.

^m § 140, 1.

ⁿ § 141, Obs. 8.

^o § 123, R.

^p § 144, R. LVII.

^q § 140, Obs. 4, &

74, 1.

^r § 126, R. III.

^s § 140, 1, 2.

^t § 112, R. III.

^u § 120, Obs. 2.

^v § 131, R. XL.

^w § 146, R. LIX.

^x § 141, R. II.

^y § 140, 5.

^z 39, 5.

^{aa} 22, 3.

insecūti, aliēno loco cum equitātu Helvetiōrum praelium committunt; et pauci de nostris cadunt. Quo praelio sublāti Helvetii, quod quingentis^a equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum propulserant, audaciūsub sistere, nonnunquam ex¹ novissīmo agmīne praelio^a nostros^b lacessere, cōpērunt. Cæsar suos^b a praelio continēbat, ac² satis habēbat in præsēntia hostem rapīnis,^c pabulationibus,^c populationibusque, prohibere. Ita dies^d circiter quindēcim iter fecerunt, uti inter novissimum hostium agmen et³ nostrum primum^e non amplius⁴ quinīs^f aut senis millibus^g passuum interesset.

16. Intērim quotidie Cæsar Æduos^h frumentum,^h quod essentⁱ publicē polliciti, flagitare:^k nam propter⁶ frigōra, quōd Gallia⁷ sub septentrionibus, ut antē dictum est, posita est, non modō frumenta in agris matūra non erant, sed ne pabūli quidem¹ satis magna copia suppetēbat: eo autem⁸ frumento,^m quod flumīne^a Arāre navibus^a subvexerat, propterea uti minūs potērat, quōd iter ab Arāre Helvetii avertērant, a quibus discedere nolēbat. Diem ex die ducere^k Ædui; ⁹conferri,ⁿ comportari, adesse dicere.^k Ubi¹⁰ se diutiūs duci^o intellexit, et diem instāre,^o quo die^p frumentum militibus metiri oportēret; ^qconvocātis eōrum principibus, quorum magnam copiam in castris habēbat, in his Divitiāco^r et Lisco, ¹¹qui summo magistrātu^s præerat (quem Vergobretum appellant Ædui, qui creātur annuus,^t et vitæ necisque in suos habet potestātem,) graviter eos accūsāt, quōd, cū neque emi,^u neque ex agris sumi posset,^v tam necessario tempore, tam propinquis hostibus, ab iis non sublevētur;^w præsertim cū magnā ex parte eōrum preci-

^a § 129, R.^b 19, (*militibus*.)^c § 136, Obs. 5, (*ab*.)^d § 131, R. XLI.^e 19, (*agmen*.)^f 24, 11, & 23, 1.^g § 120, R.^h 121, R.ⁱ § 141, Obs. 8.^k § 144, Obs. 6.^l 121, Note 2.^m § 121, R. XXVI.ⁿ § 144, R. LVII.^o 96, 6.^p 37, Note 1, 6.^q § 113, Exc. III.^r § 97, R.^s § 112, R. I.^t § 93, Obs. 10.^u 87.^v § 140, Obs. 4.^w § 141, Obs. 7.

bus^a adductus bellum suscepērit: ^b multo^c etiam gravius, quòd sit destitūtus,^d queritur.

17. Tum demum Liscus, oratione^a Cæsaris adductus, quod^e antea ¹ tacuerat, proponit: “Esse nonnullos, quorum auctoritas apud plebem ² plurimum valeat; ^d qui ³ privati plus possint, quam ipsi magistratus. Hos seditiōsā atque imprōbā oratione^a multitudinem deterrere, ne frumentum confērant,^f quod pręstare debeant.^g Si jam principatum Gallię obtinere non possint,^h Gallōrum, quām Romanōrum imperia perferre, satiūs esse; neque dubitare debere, quin, si Helvetios superaverint^h Romāni, unā cum reliquā Galliā Œduis ⁱ libertatem sint erepturi.^k Ab iisdem nostra consilia, quęque in castris gerantur,^l hostibus ^m enuciari: hos a se coerceri non posse. Quin etiam, quòd ⁴ necessariò rem coactus Cæsari ⁱ enuciarit,^l intelligere sese, quanto id cum pericūlo fecerit,ⁿ et ob eam causam, quām diu potuerit,^l tacuisse.”

18. Cæsar hac oratione^a Lisci Dumnorigem, Divitiaci fratrem,^o ⁵ designari sentiebat: sed, quòd ⁶ pluribus^p presentibus eas res jactari nolēbat, celeriter concilium dimittit, Liscum retinet: querit ex ⁷ solo ea, quę in conventu dixerat. Dicit liberius atque audacius. Eādem secretò ab aliis querit; repērit esse vera. “Ipsū esse Dumnorigem, summā audaciā,^q magnā apud plebem propter liberalitatem gratiā,^q cupidum rerum ^r novarum: complures annos^s portoria, reliquęque omnia Œduōrum vectigalia, parvo pretio ⁸ redempta^t habere, propterea quòd, illo licente,^p contra liceri audeat^l

^a § 129, R.

^b § 140, 2.

^o § 97, R.

^b § 140, Obs. 4, & 74.

ⁱ § 123, R.

^p § 146, R. LX. & 9

^c § 132, Obs. 6.

^k § 45, 1, & § 140, 3.

^q § 107, R. VII. & 6, 1

^d § 141, Obs. 7.

^l § 140, 6.

^r § 107, R. IX.

^e 37, 2.

^m § 126, R. III.

^s § 131, R. XLI.

^f § 140, 1, 3d, & 77.

ⁿ § 140, 5, & 74, 2d.

^t § 146, Obs. 1.

^g § 141, Obs. 8.

nemo. His rebus^a et suam rem familiārem auxisse,^b et^c facultates ad largiendum magnas comparasse :^b magnum numērum equitatus suo sumtu^c semper alere^d et circum se habere :^d neque solum domi,^e sed etiam apud finitimas civitates largiter posse : atque hujus potentiae causā matrem in Biturigibus, homini^f illic nobilissimo,^g ac potentissimo, ² collocasse :^b ipsum ex Helvetiis uxorem habere :^d sororem ex matre et propinquas suas nuptum^h in alias civitates collocasse :^b favere et ³ cupere Helvetiisⁱ propter eam affinitatem : odisse etiam suo nomine^a Cæsarem et Romanos, quod eorum adventu^a potentia ejus diminuta,^k et Divitiacus frater in antiquum locum gratiae atque honoris sit restitutus.^k ⁴Si quid accideret^l Romanis,^m summam in spem per Helvetios regni obtinendiⁿ venire ; imperio^o Populi Romani non modò de regno, sed etiam de eā, quam habeat,^k gratiā desperare.^d Reperiēbat etiam ⁵ inquirendo^p Cæsar, quod praelium equestre adversum paucis ante diebus^q esset factum, initium ejus fugae factum a Dumnorige atque ejus equitibus ” (nam ⁶ equitatu,^r quem auxilio^s Cæsari^s Ædui miserant, Dumnorix præerat), “ eorum fugā reliquum esse equitatum perterritum.”

19. Quibus^t rebus cognitis, cum ad has suspiciones⁷ certissimae res accederent,^u quod per fines Sequanorum Helvetios transduxisset,^k quod obsides inter eos dandos curasset,^k quod ea omnia non modò⁸ injussu suo^v et civitatis, sed etiam inscientibus ipsis fecisset,^k quod a magistrātu Æduorum accusaretur : satis esse causae^w arbitrabatur, quare in eum aut ipse animadverteret,^x aut civitatem animadvertere juberet.^x

^a § 129, R.^b 98, 2, & 94, 1, 2d.^c § 133, R.^d 96, 2, & 94, 1, 2d.^e § 130, 4.^f § 123, R.^g 24, 1.^h § 148, Obs. 2.ⁱ § 112, R. V.^k § 140, 6.^l § 140, 2.^m § 112, R. IV.ⁿ 112, 5.^o § 136, Obs. 5. (*sub*)^p § 147, Obs. 5.^q § 131, R. XL.^r § 112, R. I.^s § 114, R.^t 38, 3.^u § 140, Obs. 4.^v 29, 1.^w § 135, R. XLVI.^x § 140, 5.

His omnibus rebus ^a unum repugnābat, quòd Divitiāci fratris summum in Populum Romānum studium, summam in se ¹ voluntātem, egregiam fidem, justitiam, temperantiam cognovērat: nam, ne ^b ejus supplicio ^c Divitiāci animum offenderet, ^d verebātur. Itaque priusquā quicquam conarētur, ^e Divitiācum ad se vocārī ^f jubet, et, quotidianis interpretibus remōtis, per Caium Valerium Procillum, principem Galliæ provinciæ, familiārem ^g suum, cui ^h summam omnium rerum fidem habēbat, cum eo colloquitur: simul ² commonefacit, quæ ipso præsente in concilio Gallōrum de Dumnorīge sint ¹ dicta, et ³ ostendit, quæ separātīm quisque de eo apud se dixerit, ⁱ petit, atque hortātur, ut sine ejus offensiōne animi vel ^k ipse de eo, ⁴ causā cognītā, statuāt, ¹ vel civitātem statuere jubeat. ¹

20. Divitiācus multis cum lacrymis, Cæsārem complexus, obsecrāre cœpit, ⁵ ne quid gravius ^m in fratrem statuēret: ¹ scire se, illa esse vera, nec quenquam ex eo plus, quā se, dolōris ⁿ capere, propterea quòd, cū ⁶ ipse gratiā plurimum domi atque in reliquā Galliā, ⁷ ille minimum propter adolescentiam posset, per se crevisset; quibus ^o opibus ^p ac nervis, non solū ad minuendam ^q gratiam, sed pæne ad perniciem suam uterētur: sese tamen et amōre ⁸ fraterno et existimatiōne vulgi commovēri. Quòd si quid ⁷ ei ^r a Cæsāre gravius ^m accidisset, ^s cū ⁶ ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum tenēret, nēmīnem existimatūrum, ^t non suā voluntāte factum; quā ex re futurum, ^u ut totius Galliæ animi a se averterentur." Hæc cū pluribus verbis flens a Cæsāre petēret, ^v Cæsar ejus dextram prendit; consolātus

^a § 112, R. V.^b § 140, Obs. 6.^c § 129, R.^d § 140, 1.^e § 140, 4.^f 90, 4.^g § 97, R.^h § 123, R.ⁱ § 140, 5.^k 124, 3.^l § 140, 1, 3d^m 22.ⁿ § 106, R. VIII.^o 38.^p § 121, R. XX. VI.^q 112, 7.^r § 112, R. IV.^s § 140, 2, & 80, 2.^t 100, 2.^u 51.^v 74, 1st, 3

rogat, finem orandi faciat: ^a tanti ^b ejus apud se gratiam, esse ostendit, uti et reipublicæ injuriam et suum dolorem ejus voluntati ac precibus condonet. ^c Dumnorigem ad se vocat; fratrem ¹ adhibet; quæ in eo reprehendat, ^d ostendit; quæ ipse intelligat, ^d quæ civitas queratur, ^d proponit; monet, ut in reliquum tempus omnes suspiciones vitet; ^e præterita ^f se ² Divitiaco ^g fratri condonare dicit. Dumnorigi ^g ³ custodes ponit, ut, quæ agat, ^d quibuscum loquatur, ^d scire possit. ^h

21. Eodem die ab exploratoribus certior factus, hostes sub monte ⁴ consedissee ¹ millia ^k passuum ab ipsius castris octo; qualis esset ^d natura montis et qualis in circuitu ascensus, qui cognoscere, ¹ misit. Renunciatum est, ⁵ facilem esse. ^m De tertiâ ⁶ vigiliâ Titum Labienum, ⁷ legatum pro ⁸ prætore, cum duabus legionibus, ⁹ et iis ducibus, qui iter cognoverant, summum jugum montis ascendere jubet; quid sui consilii sit, ^d ostendit. Ipse de quartâ vigiliâ eodem itinere, quo hostes ierant, ad eos contendit, equitatumque omnem ante se mittit. Publius Considius, qui rei militaris ⁿ peritissimus habebatur, et in exercitu Lucii Sullæ, et postea ¹⁰ in Marci Crassi fuerat, cum exploratoribus præmittitur.

22. ¹¹ Primâ luce, ^o cum summus ^p mons a Tito Labiëno teneretur, ^q ¹² ipse ab hostium castris non longius mille et quingentis passibus abesset, ^q neque, ut postea ex captivis compèrit, aut ipsius adventus, aut Labiëni, cognitus esset; ^q Considius, ¹³ equo ^r admissio, ad eum accurrit: dicit, montem, quem a Labiëno occupari voluerit, ab hostibus teneri; ^s id se a Gallicis armis ^t atque insignibus cognovisse. ^u Cæ-

^a § 140, 1, 3d, &

Obs. 5.

^b § 106, R. VII. or
§ 122, R. XXVIII.

^c § 140, 1, 1st.

^d § 140, 5, & 74, 9.

^e § 140, 1, 3d.

^f 19.

^g § 123, R.

^h § 140, 1. 2d.

ⁱ 98, 2.

^k § 132, R. XLII.

^l § 141, R. II. Obs.

2, 4th.

^m 96, 6.

ⁿ § 107, R. IX

^o § 131, R. XL.

^p § 98, Obs. 9, & 17, 2.

^q § 140, Obs. 4.

^r § 146, R. LX.

^s 96, 6, & 94, 1, 2d.

^t § 129, Obs. 2.

^u 98, 2, & 94, 1, 2d.

sar suas copias in proximum collem subducit,^a aciem instruit.^a Labiēnus, ut erat ei^b praeceptum^c a Cæsare ne praelium committeret,^d nisi ipsius copiae prope hostium castra^e visae essent,^f ut undique uno tempore in hostes impetus fieret,^g monte occupato nostros expectabat praelioque abstinēbat. ¹ Multo denique die per exploratores Cæsar cognovit, et montem a suis teneri,^h et Helvetios castra movisse,ⁱ et Considium, timore perterritum, quod non vidisset,^f ² pro viso sibi renunciasse.ⁱ Eo die, ³ quo^k consuērat intervallo, hostes sequitur, et millia passuum tria, ab eorum castris castra ponit.

23. Postridie ejus diei,¹ quod omnino biduum supererat, cum ⁴ exercitu frumentum metiri oporteret,^m et quod a Bibracte, oppido Æduorum longè maximo et copiosissimo, non amplius millibusⁿ passuum octodécim aberat, ⁵ rei^o frumentariae prospiciendum^p existimavit, iter ab Helvetiis avertit, ac Bibracte^q ire contendit. Ea res per fugitivos Lucii Æmilii, ⁶ decurionis equitum Gallorum, hostibus^b nuntiatur. Helvetii, seu,^r quod timore perterritos Romanos ⁷ discedere a se existimarent,^s eo magis, quod pridie, superioribus locis occupatis,^u praelium non commovissent;^s sive eo, quod re^t frumentaria intercludi posse ⁸ confiderent;^s commutato^u consilio atque itinere converso,^u nostros a novissimo agmine insēqui ac lacessere cœperunt.

24. Postquam id ⁹ animum advertit, copias suas Cæsar in proximum collem subducit,^a equitatumque, ¹⁰ qui sustineret^v hostium impetum, misit. Ipse interim in colle medio^w

^a § 44, I. 3.

^b § 126. R. III.

^c 51.

^d § 140, 1, 3d, & 121, 3.

^e § 136, Obs. 5. (*ad.*)

^f § 141, Obs. 8.

^g § 140, 1, 2d.

^h 96, 6.

ⁱ 98, 2.

^k 37, 2d, 4, & Note 1.

^l § 135, R. XLVI.

^m § 140, Obs. 4. &

§ 113, Exc. III.

ⁿ § 120, R. & 6. 3.

^o § 112, R. V.

^p 113.

^q § 130, 2.

^r 124, 6.

^s § 140. Obs. 2.

^t § 136, Obs. 5, (*ab.*)

^u 104, 1.

^v § 141, Obs. 2, 4th

^w § 98, Obs. 9, & 17

triplicem aciem instruxit legiōnum quatuor veteranārum, ita, uti supra se in summo jugo duas legiōnes, quas in ¹ Galliā citeriōre proximē conscripsērat, et omnia auxilia collocāret; ac totum montem hominibus ^a ² complēri,^b et interea sarcīnas in unum locum conferri,^b et ³ eum ab his, qui in superioriōre acie constitērant, munīri^b jussit. Helvetii, cum omnibus suis carris secūti, impedimenta in unum locum contulērunt: ipsi, ⁴ confertissimā acie,^c rejecto ^d nostro equitātu, phalange factā,^d ⁵ sub primam nostram aciem successērunt.

25. Cæsar, primum ⁶ suo, deinde omnium ex conspectu remōtis ^d equis, ut, æquāto omnium ⁷ periculō, spem fugæ tollēret, cohortātus suos, prælum commisit. Milites, e loco superioriōre pilis missis,^d facilē hostium phalangem perfregērunt. Eā disjectā,^e gladiis^f destitutis in eos impetum fecērunt. Gallis ⁸ magno ad pugnam erat ⁹ impedimento,^g quod, pluribus eōrum ⁸ scutis^e uno ictu pilōrum transfixis et colligātis, cū ferrum se inflexisset,ⁱ neque evellēre, neque, sinistrā impeditā,^e satis ⁹ commōdē pugnāre poterant; multi ut, diu jactāto brachio, præoptārent ^k scutum manu^l emittēre, et ¹⁰ nudo corpore^f pugnāre. Tandem vulneribus defessi, et ¹¹ pedem referre, et quod mons suberat circiter mille passuum, eò se recipēre cōpērunt. Capto monte^e et succedentibus nostris,^e Boii et Tulingi, qui hominum millibus^f circiter quindēcim ¹² agmen hostium claudēbant, et novissimis ^g præsidio erant, ex itinēre nostros latere^m aperto aggressi, circumvenēre: et id conspicāti Helvetii, qui in montem sese receperant, rursus instāre et prælum redintegrāre cōpērunt. Romāni conversa signa ¹³ bipartitō intulērunt: prima, ac secunda acies, ut victis ac summōtis resisteret,ⁿ tertia, ut venientes exciperet.ⁿ

^a § 126, R. V.

^b 94, 3.

^c § 129, R.

^d 104, 1.

^e 109.

^f § 129, R.

^g § 114, R. & 8, 1.

^h 51, 1.

ⁱ § 140, Obs. 4.

^k § 140, 1, 1st. (*ita.*)

^l § 136, R. LII.

^m § 136, Obs. 5, (*ab*)

ⁿ § 140, 1, 2d.

26. Ita ¹ ancipiti praelio ^a diu atque acriter pugnatum est.^h Diutius cum nostrorum impetus sustinere non possent,^c ² alteri ^d se, ut cœperant, in montem receperunt; alteri ^d ad impedimenta et carros suos se contulerunt. Nam hoc toto praelio,^e cum ab ³ horâ septimâ ad vesp̄um pugnatum sit,^c ⁴ aversum hostem videre nemo potuit. ⁵ Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta pugnatum est, propterea quod pro vallo carros objecerant, et e loco superiori in nostros ^f venientes tela conjiciēbant,^g et nonnulli, inter carros rotasque, ⁶ mat̄aras ac tragūlas subjiciēbant ^g nostrosque vulnerābant.^g Diu cum esset pugnatum, impedimentis ^h castrisque nostri potiti sunt. Ibi Orgetorigis filia, atque unus e filiis ⁱ captus est. Ex eo praelio circiter millia hominum centum et triginta superfuērunt, eaque totâ noctē ^e continent̄er iērunt: nullam partem noctis itinere intermisso, in fines Lingonum die quarto ^k pervenērunt, cum, et ^l propter vulnera militum, et propter sepulturam occisorum,^f nostri, triduum ^e morati, eos sequi non potuissent.^c Cæsar ad Lingonas lit̄eras nunciosque misit, ne eos frumento, neve aliâ re juvarent: ^m ⁷ qui si juvissent, ⁿ ⁸ se eodem loco, quo Helvetios, habiturum. Ipse, triduo intermisso, cum omnibus copiis eos sequi cœpit.

27. Helvetii omnium rerum inopiâ adducti, legatos de deditiōe ad eum miserunt. ⁹ Qui, ^o cum eum in itinere convenissent,^c seque ad pedes projecissent, suppliciterque locuti flentes pacem petissent, atque eos ^p in eo loco, quo tum essent,^q suum adventum expectare ^r jussisset, paruērunt. Eò postquam Cæsar pervēnit, obsides, arma, servos, qui ad eos perfugissent,^s poposcit. Dum ea conquiruntur, et conferun-

^a § 129, R.^b 65, 5.^c § 140, Obs. 4.^d 27, Obs. 10.^e § 131, R. XLI. &

Exp.

^f 19, (*militēs.*)^g § 44, II, 2.^h § 121, R. XXVI.ⁱ § 107, Obs. 8.^k § 131, R. XL.^l 124, 1.^m § 140, 1, 3d.ⁿ § 140, 2:^o 39, 5.^p § 145, R. LVIII.^q § 141, Obs. 8.^r 94, 3.^s § 141, R. I.

tur, nocte intermissâ, circiter hominum millia sex ejus pagi, qui Verbigēnus^a appellatur sive timore perterriti, ne, armis traditis, supplicio afficerentur,^b sive spe salutis inducti, quod, in tantâ multitudīne dedititiōrum, suam fugam^c aut¹ occultari,^d aut² omnino ignorari posse existimarent,^e ³ primâ nocte ex castris Helvetiōrum egressi, ad Rhenum finesque Germanōrum contendērunt.

28. Quod² ubi Cæsar rescit, ⁴ quorum per fines ierant, his,^h uti conquirerent¹ et reducerent, si sibi purgati^d esse vellent,^k imperavit: reductos¹ in hostium numero⁵ habuit: reliquos omnes, obsidibus, armis, perfugis traditis, in deditiōnem^e accēpit. Helvetios, Tulingos, Latobrigos in fines suos, unde erant profecti, reverti^m jussit; et quod, omnibus fructibus amissis, domiⁿ nihil erat, quo famem tolerarent,^o Allobrogibus^h imperavit, ut iis^p frumenti copiam facerent:ⁱ ⁶ ipsos^c oppida vicosque, quos incendērant, restituere jussit. Id eâ maximè ratiōne^q fecit, quod noluit, eum locum,^c unde Helvetii discesserant, ⁷ vacare; ^m ne propter bonitatem agrorum Germani, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, e suis finibus in Helvetiōrum fines transirent,^b et finitimi^a Galliæ provinciæ^r Allobrogibusque essent. ⁸ Boios, petentibus Æduis,^h quod egregiâ virtute^s erant cogniti, ut in finibus suis collocarent,ⁱ concessit: quibus^h illi agros dederunt, quosque postea in parem juris libertatisque conditionem, atque^t ipsi erant, receperunt.

29. In castris Helvetiōrum ⁹ tabulæ repertæ sunt, ¹⁰ literis Græcis confectæ et ad Cæsarem relatæ, quibus^u in tabulis nominatim ¹¹ ratio confecta erat, qui numerus domo exisset^v

^a § 103, R. V.^h 63.^p § 123, R.^b § 140, 1.ⁱ § 140, 1, 3d.^q § 129, R.^c § 145, R. LVIII.^k § 140, 2.^r § 111, R.^d 87, 6.^l 19, (eos.)^s § 106, R. VII.^e § 141, Obs. 7.^m 94, 3.^t § 149, Obs. 6.^f 17, 1.ⁿ § 130, 4.^u 37. Note 1. 6.^g 38, 4.^o § 141, R. I.^v § 140, 5.

eōrum, qui arma ferre possent:^a et item separātīm puēri, senes, mulieresque. Quarum^b omnium rerum summa erat.¹ capītum Helvetiōrum millia^c ducenta et sexaginta tria, Tulingōrum millia triginta sex, Latobrigōrum quatuordēcim, Rauracōrum viginti tria, Boiōrum triginta duo: ex his, qui arma ferre possent,^a ad millia nonaginta duo. Summa omnium^d fuērunt ad millia trecenta et sexaginta octo. Eōrum, qui domum rediērunt,² censu^e habito, ut Cæsar imperaverāt, repertus est numērus millium centum et decem.

30. Bello^e Helvetiōrum confecto, totius fere Galliæ legātī, princīpes civitātum, ad Cæsārem^a gratulātum^f convenērunt: intelligēre sese,^g tametsi,⁴ pro veteribus Helvetiōrum injuriis Popūli Romāni, ab iis pēnas bello repetisset,^h tamen eam rem^g non minūs ex usu terræ Galliæ, quā Popūli Romāni accidisse: propterea quōd eo consilio, florentissimis rebus, domos suas Helvetii reliquissent, uti toti Galliæⁱ bellum inferrent,^k imperiōque potirentur,^k locumque domicilio^l ex magnā copiā deligērent,^k quem ex omni Galliā opportunissimum ac fructuosissimum iudicāssent,^a reliquasque civitatē stipendiarias habērent.” Petiērunt, “utī sibi^m concilium totius Galliæ in diem certam indicēre, idque Cæsāris voluntāte facēre, licēret:ⁿ sese^g habēre quasdam res, quas ex commūni consensu ab eo petēre vellent.” Eā re permissā, diem concilio^l constituērunt, et jurejurando,^o ne^p quis enunciāret,ⁿ nisi quibus^q commūni consilio mandātum esset, inter se sanxērunt.

31. Eo concilio dimisso, iidem princīpes civitātum, qui antē fuērunt ad Cæsārem, revertērunt, petieruntque, utī sibi secrēto de suā^r omniumque salūte cum eo agēre licēret.ⁿ

^a § 141, Obs. 3.

^b 38.

^c § 24, 5.

^d 19.

^e 109, 2.

^f 114,

^g § 145, R. LVIII.

^h § 140, 3.

ⁱ § 123, R.

^k § 140, 1. 2d.

^l § 114, R. &

Obs. 4, (sibi.)

^m § 113, R.

ⁿ § 140, 1, 3d.

^o § 141, Obs. 8.

^p 121.

^q § 126, R. III.

^r 29, 1.

Eâ re impetrâtâ,^a sese^b omnes flentes Cæsari^c ad pedes projecērunt:ⁱ ¹ non minùs se^d id contendēre et laborāre, ne ea, quæ dixissent,^e enunciarentur,^f quàm uti ea, quæ vellent,^g impetrārent,^f propterea quòd, si enunciātum esset,^g summum in cruciātum se ventūros vidērent.”^h Locūtus est pro his Divitiācus Æduus:ⁱ “Galliæ totius factiōnes^d esse duas:² harum alterius principātum tenēre Æduos,^d alterius Arvernos. ³ Hi cū tantopēre de potentātu inter se multos annos contendērent,^k factum esse^l uti ab Arvernīs Sequanisq̃ue Germāni mercēde arcesserentur.^m ⁴ Horum primò circīter millia^d quindēcim Rhenumⁿ transisse: posteaquam agros, et cultū, et ⁵ copias Gallōrum homīnes feri ac barbāri adamāssent,^h transductos plures:^d nunc esse in Galliā ad centum et viginti millium numērum: cum his Æduos^d eorumque clientes semel atque itērum armis contendisse;^o magnam calamitātem pulsos accepisse,^o omnem nobilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum amisisse.^o Quibus^p prœliis calamitatibusque fractos, qui et suā virtūte, et Popūli Romāni hospitio atque amicitia, plurimum antè in Galliā potuissent,^h coactos esse Sequānis obsīdes dare, nobilissimos civitātis,^q et jurejurando civitātem obstringēre, sese neque obsīdes repetitūros,^r neque auxilium a Popūlo Romānò imploratūros,^r ⁶ neque recusatūros,^r quo minùs perpetuo sub illōrum ditiōne atque imperio essent.^s ⁷ Unum se esse ex omni civitatē Æduōrum, qui addūci^t non potuērit,^h ut jurāret,^u aut libēros suos obsīdes daret.^u Ob eam rem se^d ex civitatē profugisse,^o et Romam^v ad senātum venisse, auxilium^w postulātum, quòd solus neque jurejurando^x neque

^a 109.ⁱ 94, 4.^r 100, 2.^b 31, 1.^k § 140, Obs. 4.^s § 140, 3.^c § 110, Obs. 1, & 2.^l 51, 4.^t 87.^d § 145, R. LVIII.^m § 140, 1, 4th.^u § 140, 1, 3d^e § 141, Obs. 8.ⁿ § 136, R. LII.^v § 130, 2.^f § 140, 1, 2d.^o 98, 2.^w 114, 1.^g § 140, 2.^p 38, 9.^x § 129, R.^h § 140, 6.^q § 107, R. X. & Exp.

obsidibus^a teneretur.^b Sed pejùs victoribus Sequānis,^c quàm Æduis^c victis, accidisse:^d propterea quòd Ariovistus, rex Germanōrum, in eōrum finibus consedisset,^b tertiamque partem agri Sequāni, qui esset^e optimus totius Galliæ, occupavisset,^b et nunc de alterâ parte tertiâ Sequānos decedēre jubēret;^b propterea quòd, paucis mensibus^f antè, Harūdum millia hominū viginti quatuor ad eum venissent;^b ¹ quibus^g locus ac sedes pararentur.^e ² Futūrum^h esse paucis annis^f uti omnes ex Galliæ finibus pellerentur,ⁱ atque omnes Germāni Rhenum transirent:ⁱ ³ neque enim conferendum^k esse Gallicum cum Germanōrum agro, neque hanc consuetudinē victus cum illâ comparandam.^k Ariovistum autem, ⁴ ut semel Gallōrum copias prælio vicērit,^e quod prælium^l factum sit^b ad Magetobriam, superbè et crudeliter imperāre, obsides nobilissimi cujusque liberos poscēre,^e et in eos omnia exempla cruciatusque edēre, si qua res non ad nutum aut ad voluntātem ejus facta sit:^m hominem esse barbārum, iracundum, temerarium: non posse ejus imperiaⁿ diutius sustinēri. ⁶ Nisi si quid in Cæsare Populōque Romāno sit auxilii,^o omnibus Gallis^p idem esse faciendum, quod Helvetii fecērint,^e ⁷ ut domo emigrent,ⁱ aliud domicilium, alias sedes, remōtas a Germānis, petant,ⁱ fortunamque, quæcumque accīdat,^e experiantur.ⁱ “Hæc si enunciāta Ariovisto sint,^m non dubitāre, quin de omnibus obsidibus, qui apud eum sint,^e gravissimum supplicium sumat.^q Cæsarem vel auctoritatē^a suā^r atque exercitū, vel recenti victoriā, vel nomīne Populi Romāni deterrēre posse, ne major multitudo Germanōrum Rhenum transducātur,^s Galliamque omnem ab Ariovisti injuriā posse defendēre.”

^a § 129, R.^b § 140, 6, & 74.^c § 113, R. &^d 98, 2.^e § 141, Obs. 7.^f § 131 R. XL.^g § 126, R. III.^h 51, 5.ⁱ § 140, 1, 4th.^k 108.^l 37, Note 1, 6.^m § 140, 2, & 74, 1st.ⁿ § 145, R. LVIII.^o § 106, R. VIII.^p § 147, R. LXI.^q § 140, 3.^r 29, 1.^s § 140, 1.

32. Hâc oratiōe ab Divitiâco ¹habîtâ, omnes, qui adërant, magno fletu auxilium a Cæsäre petëre cœpërunt. Animadvertit Cæsar, unos ^a ex omnibus Sequānos ^b nihil eārum rerum facëre, ^c quas cetëri facërent; ^d sed tristes, capite ^e demissò, terram intuëri. Ejus rei causa quæ esset, ^f mirātus, ^g ex ipsis quæsivit. Nihil Sequāni respondëre, ^h sed in eādem tristitiâ taciti ⁱ permanëre. Cùm ab iis sæpius quærëret, ^k neque ullam omnino vocem ² exprimëre posset, ^k idem Divitiâcus Æduus respondit: ³ “Hoc esse miseriōrem gravioremque fortūnam Sequanōrum, ⁴ præ ^l reliquōrum, quòd soli ne in occulto quidem queri, neque auxilium imploräre audërent, ^d absentisque Ariovisti crudelitatem, velut si coram adesset ^m horrërent: ^d propterea quòd reliquis ⁿ tamen ^o fugæ facultas darëtur; Sequānis ^o vero, qui intra fines suos Ariovistum recepissent, ^d quorum oppida omnia in potestâte ejus essent, ⁶ omnes cruciātus essent perferendi.”

33. His rebus cognitis, Cæsar Gallōrum anīmos verbis ^e confirmāvit, pollicitusque est, ⁷ sibi ^a eam rem curæ futūram: magnam se habëre spem, et beneficio ^e suo et auctoritâte adductum Ariovistum finem injuriis factūrum. ^f Hâc oratiōe habîtâ, concilium dimisit; et ⁸ secundum ea multæ res eum hortabantur, quare sibi ^o eam rem ^b cogitandam ^p et suscipiendam putāret; ^f in primis quòd ⁸ Æduos, fratres consanguineosque sæpenumëro ab Senātu appellātos, in servitūte atque in ditiōne vidëbat Germanōrum tenëri, ^c eorumque obsides esse apud Ariovistum ac Sequānos intelligëbat: quod ^t in tanto imperio Popūli Romāni turpissimum ^u sibi ^v

^a 16, 4.ⁱ § 98, Obs. 10.^p 108.^b § 145, R. LVIII.^k § 140, Obs. 4.^q § 114, R. & 8.^c 96, 2.^l § 136, Obs. 6.^r 100, 2.^d § 141, Obs. 8.^m § 140, 2.^s § 140, Obs. 2.^e § 129, R.ⁿ § 126, R. III. & 19.^t 37, Note 3.^f § 140, 5.^o § 126, R. XXXIII.^u § 103, Obs. 2.^g 106, 1.

& Obs. 3.

^v § 111, R.^h § 144, Obs. 6.

et reipublicæ esse arbitrabatur. Paulatim autem Germānos consuescere Rhenum transire, et in Galliam magnam eorum multitudinem venire, Populo Romāno periculōsum vidēbat: neque sibi^a homīnes feros ac barbāros temperatūros^b existimābat, quin, cū omnem Galliam occupāssent,^c ut antē Cimbri Teutonīque fecissent,^d in Provinciam exirent,^e atque inde in Italiam contendērent;^e præsertim cū Sequānos a Provinciā nostrā Rhodānus dividēret.^f Quibus^g rebus^h quāⁱ maturīmēⁱ occurrendum putābat.^h Ipse autem Ariovistus tantos sibi spirītus, tantam arrogantiam sumsērat, ut ferendus non videretur.^k

34. Quamobrem² placuit ei, ut ad Ariovistum legātos mitteret,^l qui ab eo postulārent,^m uti aliquem locum medium utriusque colloquio dicēret:ⁿ velle sese de reipublicā³ et summis utriusque rebus cum eo agere. Ei legatiōni^o Ariovistus respondit: ⁴ Si quid ipsi^p a Cæsāre opus esset, sese ad eum ventūrum fuisse;^q si quid⁵ ille se^r velit, illum^s ad se venire oportere. Præterea se neque sine exercitū in eas partes Galliæ venire audere, quas Cæsar possidēret;^t neque exercitū⁶ sine magno commeātu atque emolimento in unum locum contrahere posse: sibi autem mirum vidēri,^u ⁷ quid in suā Galliā, quam bello vicisset,^v aut Cæsāri,^w aut omnīno Populo Romāno^x negotii^x esset.”

35. His responsis ad Cæsārem relātis, itērum ad eum Cæsar legātos cum his mandātis mittit: “Quoniam tanto suo^y Populīque Romāni beneficio affectus (cū in consulātu suo rex atque amīcus a Senātu appellātus esset), hanc sibi

^a 31, Note.^b 100, 1.^c § 140, Obs. 4.^d § 141, Obs. 8.^e § 140, 3.^f § 140, Obs. 3.^g 38.^h § 147, & 113, (sibi)ⁱ § 134, Obs. 6, 3d.^k § 140, 1, 1st. 70.^l § 140, 1, 4th.^m § 141, R. II. Obs.

2, 4th.

ⁿ § 140, 1, 3d.^o 63.^p § 111.^q 100, 5.^r § 136, Obs. 5. (a.)^s § 113, Exc. III.^t § 140, 6.^u 70, & Obs.^v § 141, Obs. 7.^w § 112, R. II.^x § 107, R. VIII.^y 29, 1.^z § 112, R. IV.

Populōque Romāno ¹gratiam referret,^a ut in colloquium venire invitātus gravarētur,^b ²neque ^cde commūni re ³dicensibi ^det cognoscendum putāret;^b hęc ^eesse, quę ab eo postulāret:^f primū, ne ⁴quam homīnum multitudīnem ampliūs trans Rhenum in Galliam transducēret:^g deinde obsīdes, quos habēret^f ab Æduis, redderet,^g Sequanisque permittēret,^g ut, quos illi habērent,^f voluntāte ejus reddere illis liceret;^g neve Æduos ⁵injuriā lacessēret,^g neve his sociisve eōrum bellum inferret:^g si id ita fecisset,^h sibi ⁱPopulōque Romāno perpetuam gratiam^e atque amicitiam cum eo futuram:^k si non impetrāret,^h sese ^e(quoniam Marco Messālā, Marco Pisōne Consulibus, Senātus censuisset,^a uti quicumque Galliam provinciam^l obtinēret,^m ⁶quod commōdoⁿ reipublicę facere posset,^f Æduos ceterosque amīcos Popūli Romāni defendēret),^g sese Æduōrum injurias non neglectūrum.”^k

36. Ad hęc Ariovistus respondit: “Jus esse belli, ut, qui^o vicissent,^m iis,^p quos vicissent,^f quemadmodum vellent,^q imperārent:^g ⁷item Popūlum Romānum^e victis^p non ad alterius pręscriptum, sed ad suum arbitrium, imperāre consueſse.^r Si ipse Popūlo Romāno non pręscribērēt,^h quemadmodum suo ^sjure uterētur;^q non ⁸oportere sese a Popūlo Romāno in suo jure impediri. Æduos^e sibi,^t quoniam belli fortunam tentāssent^a et armis congressi ac superāti essent,^a stipendiarios esse factos. Magnam Cæsārem^e injuriam facere, qui suo adventu vectigalia sibi deteriora faceret.^u Æduis^v se obsīdes redditūrum non esse, neque iis,^v neque eōrum sociis^v injuriā bellum illatūrum, si in eo manērent,^h quod convenisset,^f stipendiumque quotannis pendērent: si

^a § 140, 6.^b § 140, 2.^p § 112, R. V.^b § 140, 1.ⁱ § 112, R. II.^q § 140, 5.^c § 93, 1.^k § 100, 2.^r 98, 6.^d § 147, & 113, 5.^l § 97, R.^s 31, Note.^e § 145, R. LVIII.^m § 141, R. I.^t § 111, R.^f § 141, R. VI.ⁿ § 129, R.^u § 141, R. III.^g § 140, 1, 3d.^o 37, 3^v § 123, R.

id non fecissent,¹ longè iis^a fraternum nomen Popūli Romāni abfutūrum. ²Quod^b sibi Cæsar denunciāret, se Æduōrum injurias non neglectūrum; nemīnem^c secum sine suā^d perniciē contendisse.^e Cūm vellet,^f congregederētur;^g intellectūrum, quid invicti Germāni, exercitatissīmi in armis, qui ³inter annos quatuordēcim tectum non subīssent,^h ⁴virtūte possent.”ⁱ

37. Hæc eōdem tempore Cæsari^k mandāta referebantur, et legāti ab Æduis et a Trevīris veniēbant: ⁵Ædui^l questum,^m quòd Harūdes, qui nuper in Galliam transportāti essent,ⁿ fines eōrum popularentur,^h sese ne obsidibus quidem datis pacem Ariovisti redimēre potuisse: ⁶Trevīri^l autem, pagos centum Suevōrum ad ripas Rhēni consedisse, qui Rhenum transīre conarentur;^h iis^a præesse Nasuam et Cīmerium fratres: Quibusⁿ rebus Cæsar vehementer commōtus, maturandum^c sibi^o existimāvit, ⁷ne, si nova manus Suevōrum cum veteribus copiis Ariovisti sese conjunxisset,^p minùs facilè resisti posset.^q Itaque ⁸re frumentariā, quā^r celerrimè potuit, comparātā,^s magnis itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

38. Cūm ⁹tridui viam^v processisset,^f nunciātum est ei,^k Ariovistum^c cum suis omnibus copiis ad occupandum^t Ventsionem, quod est oppidum maximum Sequanōrum,¹⁰ contendēre,^u triduūque viam^v a suis finibus processisse.^e Id ne accidēret,^q magno opēre sibi^o præcavendum^c Cæsar existimābat: namque omnium rerum, quæ ad bellum usui^w erant, ¹¹summa erat in eo oppīdo facultas; idque naturā loci sic muniebātur, ut magnam ¹²ad ducendum bellum daret^x fac-

^a § 112, R. I.ⁱ § 140, 5.^r § 134, Obs. 6, 3d.^b 38, Note. 11.^k § 126, R. III.^s § 104, 1.^c § 145, R. LVIII.^l § 101, Obs. 4.^t 112, 7.^d 31, Note.^m § 148, 1.^u 96, 2.^e 98, 2.ⁿ 38.^v § 132, R. XLII.^f § 140, Obs. 4.^o 113.^w § 114, R. & Obs. 4.^g § 140, 6.^p § 140, 2.^x § 140, 1, 1st.^h § 141, Obs. 7.^q § 140, 1, 2d.

ultatem, propterea quòd flumen Dubis ¹ ut circūno circumductum, pæne totum oppidum cingit: reliquum spatium, quod est ² non amplius pedum ^a sexcentòrum, quà flumen intermittit, mons ³ continet magnà altitudīne, ^b ita ut radices ejus montis ex utrâque parte ripæ fluminis contingant.^c ⁴ Hunc ^d murus circumdatus arcem ^d efficit et cum oppido conjungit. Huc Cæsar magnis nocturnis diurnisque itineribus contendit,^e occupatōque oppido, ibi præsidium collocat.^e

39. Dum paucos dies ad Vesontiōnem, rei frumentariæ com meatūsque causâ, morâtur, ⁵ ex percunctatiōne nostrorum vocibusque Gallorum ac mercatorum, quī ingenti magnitudīne ^b corpōrum Germānos, incredibili virtūte ^b atque exercitatiōne in armis esse prædicābant,^f sæpenumēro sese,⁵ cum eis congressos,^h ne ⁶ vultum quidem atque aciem oculorum ferre potuisse,^b tantus subitò timor omnem exercitum occupāvit, ut non mediocriter omnium mentes animosque perturbāret.^c Hic ⁱ primū ortus est a ⁷ Tribūnis militum, præfectis reliquisque, qui, ex urbe amicitiae causâ Cæsarem secūti, non magnum in re militari usum habēbant: ⁸ quorum ^k alius,¹ aliā ^m causâ illatâ, quam ⁸ sibi ⁿ ad proficiscendum necessariam esse dicērent,^o petēbant, ut ejus voluntate discedere liceret: ^p nonnulli, pudore adducti, ut timoris suspiciōnem vitarent,^q remanēbant. Hi neque ⁹ vultum fingere, neque interdum lacrymas tenere poterant: abditi in tabernaculis, aut suum ^r fatum querebantur,^f aut cum familiaribus suis ^r commūne pericūlum miserabantur.^f Vulgò totis castris testamenta obsignabantur.^f Horum vocibus ac timore paulatim etiam ii,^s quī magnum in castris usum habēbant, milites ^s centurionesque, quique equitatu præerant, pertur-

^a § 106, R. VI. Obs.^s § 145, R. LVIII.ⁿ § 111, R.3. (*spatio.*)^h 98, 2.^o § 141, Obs. 7.^b § 106, R. VII. & 6, 1.ⁱ 19, (*timor.*)^p § 140, 1, 3d.^c § 140, 1, 1st.^k § 107, R. X.^q § 140, 1, 2d.^d § 116, Obs. 1.^l § 102, Obs. 5.^r 30, 2.^e § 44, I, 3.^m 25, 1, and^s § 97, R.^f § 44, II. 1.

§ 98, Obs. 11.

babantur. ¹ Qui ^a se ex his minùs timidos existimari ^b volēbant, non se hostem vereri, ^c sed angustias itinēris et magnitudinem silvārum, quæ intercederent ^d inter ipsos atque Ariovistum, aut rem frumentariam, ^e ut ^e satis commōdè supportari posset, timere ^c dicēbant. Nonnulli etiam Cæsari renunciābant, cū castra movēri ac signa ferri jussisset, ^f non fore ² dicto audientes milites, nec propter timōrem signa latūros.

40. Hæc cū animadvertisset, ³ convocato ^g consilio, omniumque ordinum ad id consilium adhibitis ^h centurionibus, vehementer eos incusavit; “primū, quod, aut quam in partem, aut quo consilio ducerentur, ^h ⁴ sibi ⁱ quærendum aut cogitandum putarent. ^d Ariovistum, se ^k consule, cupidissimè Populi Romāni amicitiam appetisse; ¹ cur hunc tam temere quisquam ab officio discessurum judicaret? ^d ⁵ Sibi ^m quidem persuaderi, cognitis suis ⁶ postulatis atque æquitate conditionum perspectā, eum neque suam, ⁿ neque Populi Romāni gratiam repudiatūrum. Quod si, furōre atque amentia impulsus, bellum intulisset, ^o quid tandem vererentur? ^d aut cur de ⁷ suā virtute, aut de ipsius diligentia, desperarent? ^d ⁸ Factum ejus hostis pericūlum patrum nostrōrum memoriā, cū, Cimbris et Teutōnis a Caio Mario pulsus, non minorem laudem exercitus, quā ipse imperator, meritus videbatur; ^p factum etiam nuper in Italiā ⁹ servili tumultu, quos ^q tamen aliquid ^r usus ac disciplina, quam a nobis accepissent, sublevarent. ^d Ex quo judicari posset, ^d quantum haberet ^h in se boni constantia; propterea quod, quos ^s aliquamdiu inermos sine causā timuissent, hos postea armatos

^a 37, (ii.)

^b 94, 3.

^c 96, 1.

^d § 140, 6.

^e 121, 7, and

§ 140, Obs. 6.

^f 80, 1.

^g 104, 1.

^h § 140, 5.

ⁱ 113.

^k 110, 2.

^l 98, 2.

^m § 126, R. III.

ⁿ § 29, 1.

^o § 140, 2.

^p § 141, Obs. 5. 1st.

^q § 99, Obs. 2.

^r § 116, Obs. 3.

^s 43.

ac victōres superāssent. Denique hos^a esse eosdem, quibus-
cum sæpenumēro Helvetii congressi, non solū in ¹ suis, sed
etiam in illōrum finibus, plerumque superārunt,^b qui tamen
pares esse nostro exercitū^c non potuerunt. Si ² quos adver-
sum prælum et fuga Gallōrum commoveret,^d hos, si quæ-
rerent,^d reperire posse, diuturnitate belli defatigātis Gallis,^e
Ariovistum,^a cū multos menses^f castris se ac paludibus
tenuisset, ³ neque sui potestatem fecisset, desperantes jam
de pugnā et dispersos subitō adortum, magis ⁴ ratione^g et
consilio, quā virtute,^g vicisse. Cui^h rationiⁱ contra homi-
nes barbāros atque imperitos locus fuisset, hāc, ne ipsum^a
quidem sperāre, nostros exercitus^a capi posse. ⁵ Qui^k suum^l
timōrem in rei frumentariæ simulatiōnem angustiasque itin-
erum conferrent,^b facere arroganter, cū aut de officio im-
peratōris desperāre, aut præscribere viderentur.^m Hæc sibiⁿ
esse curæ;ⁿ frumentum Sequānos,^a Leucos, Lingōnas sub-
ministrāre;^o jamque esse in agris frumenta matūra: de
itinere ipsos^a brevi tempore judicatūros.^p ⁶ Quod^q non
fore dicto audientes milites,^a neque^r signa latūri dicantur,^b
nihil^r se eā re commoveri: ⁷ scire enim, quibuscumque ex-
ercitus dicto audiens non fuerit,^b aut, malē re^e gestā, fortū-
nam defuisse; aut, aliquo facinore^e comperto, avaritiam
esse conjunctam. Suam innocentiam perpetuā vitā, felici-
tatem Helvetiōrum bello, esse perspectam.^s ⁸ Itaque se,^a
quod in longiorem diem collatūrus esset,^t repræsentatūrum,^p
et proximā nocte de quartā vigiliā castra motūrum, ut quā
primū intelligere posset,^u utrū^v apud eos pudor atque
officium, an timor valeret.^w Quod si præterea nemo sequatur,^x

^a § 145, R. LVIII.ⁱ § 110, R. XV.^r § 116, Obs. 3.^b § 140, 6.^k 37, (eos.)^s 98, 6.^c § 111, R.^l 30, 2.^t § 79, 8.^d § 140, 2.^m § 140, Obs. 4.^u § 140, 1, 2d.^e 109, 2.ⁿ § 114, R.^v 124, 14.^f § 131, R. XLI.^o 94, 3. & 96, Exc. II.^w § 140, 5.^g § 129, R.^p 100, 2.^x § 140, 2, & 77 5.^h 33.^q 33, Note. 11.^y § 39, 1.

tamen se cum solâ decimâ legiōne itūrum, de quâ non dubitāret;^a sibi que eam ¹prætoriam cohortem ^bfutūram.” Huic legiōni ^cCæsar et indulserat præcipuè, et propter virtutem ²confidēbat maxīmè.

41. Hâc oratiōne habîtâ, mirum in modum conversæ^d sunt omnium mentes, summâque alacritas et cupiditas belli gerendi^e innâta^d est, ³princepsque ^fdecima legio, per tribunos^e militum, ei gratias egit, quòd de se optimum iudicium fecisset; ^fseque esse ad bellum gerendum paratissimam confirmāvit. Deinde reliquæ legiōnes, per tribunos^e militum et primorum ordinum centuriōnes, ⁴egērunt, uti Cæsari^h satisfacērent: ⁱse neque unquam dubitāsse,^k neque timuisse, neque de summâ belli suum ¹iudicium, sed imperatoris^m esse, existimavisse.^k Eōrum ⁵satisfactiōne acceptâ, et itinēre ⁶exquisito per Divitiācum,^g quòd ex aliis eiⁿ maximam fidem habēbat, ut millium amplius quinquaginta circuitu locis apertis exercitum ducēret,ⁱ de quartâ vigiliâ, ut dixērat, profectus est. Septimo die, cū iter non intermittēret,^o ab exploratoribus^e certior factus est, Ariovisti copias a nostris^p millibus^q passuum quatuor et viginti abesse.

42. Cognito Cæsaris adventu, Ariovistus legatos ad eum mittit: ⁷quod^r antea de colloquio postulāset,^s id per se fieri licēre, quoniam propius accessisset: ^aseque id sine periculo facere posse existimāre. Non respuit conditionem Cæsar: jamque eum ad sanitatem reverti arbitrabatur, cū id, quod antea petenti denegāset,^t ultro polliceretur; ^omagnamque in spem veniēbat, pro suis¹ tantis Populi que Romani in eum beneficiis, cognitis suis¹ postulātis, ⁸fore,^u uti pertinaciâ de-

^a § 141, Obs. 7.

^b § 114, Obs. 2.

^c § 112, R. V.

^d § 44, III, Note.

^e 112, 5.

^f § 98, Obs. 10.

^g § 126, Obs. 2.

^h § 112, R. III.

ⁱ § 140, 1, 2d.

^k 98, 2.

^l 29, 1.

^m § 108, R. XII.

ⁿ § 123, R.

^o § 140, Obs. 4.

^p 19; (*copiis*.)

^q § 132, R. XLII.

^r 43.

^s § 140, 6.

^t § 141, Obs. 8.

^u § 145, Obs. 6, &

100, 14.

sistēret. Dies colloquio dictus est, ex eo die quintus. Interim, cū sæpe ultro citrōque legāti inter eos mitterentur,^a Ariovistus postulāvit, ¹ne quem peditem ad colloquium Cæsar adducēret: ^b verēri^c, ne ^d per insidias ab eo circumveniretur: uterque cum equitatu veniret: ^b aliā ratiōne se non esse ventūrum. Cæsar, quod neque colloquium^e interpositā causā ² tolli^f volēbat, neque salutem suam Gallōrum equitatu^g committere audēbat, ³ commodissimum^h esse statuit, ⁴ omnibus equisⁱ Gallis equitibus^k detractis, eò legionarios milites legiōnis decimæ, cui quā maxime confidēbat, imponere,^l ut præsidium quā amicissimum, ⁵ si quid opus facto esset, haberet.^m Quodⁿ cū fieret,^a non irridiculè quidam ex militibus^o decimæ legiōnis dixit: “plus, quā pollicitus esset,^p Cæsarem ei facere; pollicitum, se in cohortis prætorie loco decimam legiōnem habitūrum, ⁶ nunc ad equum rescribere.”

43. Planities erat magna, et in eā tumulus terrēnus satis grandis. Hic locus æquo ferè spatio^q ab castris utrisque abērat. Eò, ut erat dictum, ad colloquium venērunt. Legiōnem Cæsar, quam equis^r devexerat, passibus^q ducentis ab eo tumulo constituit. Item equites Ariovisti pari intervallo^q constitērunt. Ariovistus, ⁷ ex equis ut colloquerentur^b et, præter se, denos^s ut ad colloquium adducērent,^b postulāvit. ⁸ Ubi eò ventum est,^t Cæsar, initio oratiōnis, sua Senatusque in eum beneficia commemorāvit, “quod rex appellātus esset a Senātu, quod munera amplissima missa: quamⁿ rem et paucis^u contigisse,^v et pro magnis hominum officiis consuēsse tribui” docēbat: “illum, cū neque aditum,

^a § 140, Obs. 4.^b § 98, Obs. 6.^p § 141, Obs. 8.^b § 140, 1, 3d.¹ 109.^q § 132, R. XLII.^c 94, 4.^k § 126, R. III.^r § 129, R.^d § 140, Obs. 6, & 121, 6.¹ § 144. R. LVII. Note.^s § 24, 11, & 26, I.^e § 145, R. LVIII.^m § 140, 1, 2d.^t 67, Note. 5.^f 96, Exc. II. 11.ⁿ 38.^u 19, & § 112, R. IV.^g § 123, R.^o § 107, Obs. 8.^v 98, 2.

neque causam postulandi justam habēret, beneficio ac liberalitāte suā ac Senātus ea præmia consecūtum." Docēbat etiam, "quām vetēres, quāmq̃ue justæ causæ ¹necessitudinis ipsis ^a cum Æduis intercedērent, ^b quæ Senātûs consulta, quoties, quāmq̃ue honorifīca in eos facta essent: ^b ut omni tempore totius Galliæ principātum Ædúi tenuissent, ^c prius etiam quām nostram amicitiam appetissent: ^d Popūli Romāni hanc ^e esse consuetudīnem, ut socios ^f atque amīcos non modò ²sui nihil deperdere, ^f sed gratiā, dignitāte, honōre ³auctiōres velit ^g esse: quod vero ad amicitiam Popūli Romāni attulissent, id iis ^b erīpi, quis pati possset?" ^g Postulāvit deinde eādem, quæ legātis in mandātis dedērat, "ne aut Æduis, aut eōrum sociis bellum inferret; ^c obsīdes redderet: si nullam partem Germanōrum domum ⁱ remittēre posset, ^k at ne ⁴quos ampliūs Rhenum transīre paterētur." ^c

44. Ariovistus ad postulāta Cæsāris pauca respondit; de suis virtutibus multa prædicāvit: "Transīsse ¹Rhenum ^msese, non suā sponte, sed ⁵rogātum ⁿ et arcessitum ⁿ a Gallis; non sine magnā spe, magnisque præmiis, domum propinquosque reliquisse; ¹sedes habēre ^o in Galliā, ab ipsis concessas; ⁿ obsīdes ipsōrum voluntāte datos; stipendium capere ^o jure belli, quod victōres victis ^p imponēre consuērint; non sese ^o Gallis, sed Gallos ^e sibi bellum intulisse; omnes Galliæ civitātes ad se oppugnandum venisse, ¹ac contra se castra habuisse; eas omnes copias a se uno prælio fusas ac superātas esse; si itērum experīri velint, ^k itērum parātum sese decertāre; si pace ^q uti velint, inīquum esse, de stipendio recusāre, quod suā voluntāte ad id tempus pependērint.

^a § 112, R. IV.

^b § 140, 5.

^c § 140, 1, 3d.

^d § 140, 4,

^e § 145, R. LVIII.

^f 90.

^g § 140, 6.

^h § 126, R. III.

ⁱ § 130, 4.

^k § 140, 2.

^l 98, 2.

^m § 136, R. LII.

ⁿ 101, 4.

^o 96, 2.

^p § 123, R. & 19.

^q § 121, R. XXVI.

Amicitiam Popŭli Romāni sibi^a ornamento^a et præsidio, non detrimento, esse oportēre, idque se eā spe petisse. Si per Popŭlum Romānum stipendium remittātur,^b et dedititii subtrahantur,^b non minŭs libenter sese recusatŭrum Popŭli Romāni amicitiam, quā appetiērit.^c ¹ Quod multitudīnemi Germanōrum in Galliā transdūcat,^d id se sui muniendi,^e non Galliæ impugnandæ^e causā facēre; ejus rei testimonium^f esse,^g quod, nisi rogātus, non venīrit,^c et quod bellum non intulērit,^c ² sed defendērit.^c Se priŭs in Galliā venisse, quā Popŭlum Romānum.^h Nunquam ante hoc tempus exercitum Popŭli Romāni Galliæ provinciæ fines^w egressum. ³ Quid sibi vellet?^c Cur in suas possessiōnes venīret?^c Provinciam suam ⁴ hanc esse Galliā, sicut illam nostram. Ut ipsiⁱ concēdi non oportēret, si in nostros fines impētum facēret,^b sic item nos esse inīquos, ⁵ qui in suo jure se interpellarēmus.^k ⁶ Quod ¹ fratres^f a Senātu Æduos appellātos dicēret,^c non se tam barbārum,^m neque tam imperitum^m esse rerum,ⁿ ut non sciret,^o neque bello Allobiōgum proximo Æduos Romānis^p auxilium tulisse, neque ipsos in his contentiōnibus, quas Ædúi secum et cum Sequānis habuissent,^q auxilio^r Popŭli Romāni usos esse. Debēre se suspicāri, simulatā Cæsārem amicitia, quod exercitum in Galliā habeat,^c sui opprimendi^c causā habēre. Qui^s nisi decēdat^b atque exercitum dedūcat^b ex his regionibus, sese illum non pro amīco, sed pro hoste habitūrum: quod si eum interfecērit,^b multis ⁷ sese nobilibus^t principibusque Popŭli Romāni gratum esse factūrum; id se ab ipsis per eōrum nuntios compertum^u habēre, quorum omnium gratiam atque ami-

^a § 114, R.^b § 140, 2.^c § 140, 6.^d § 141, Obs. 7.^e 112, 5.^f § 103, R. V.^g 51.^h § 120, Obs. 2, 1st.ⁱ § 113, R.^k § 141, R. III.^l 38, 11, Note.^m § 103, Obs. 2.ⁿ § 107, R. IX.^o § 140, 1, 1st.^p § 123, R.^q § 141, Obs. 7.^r § 121, R. XXVI.^s 39.^t § 111, R.^u § 146, Obs. 1^w Sup. trans.

citiam ejus morte redimere posset. Quod si decessisset,^a ac liberam possessionem Galliae sibi^b tradidisset, magno se illum praemio remuneraturum, et, quaecumque^c bella geri vellet,^d sine ullo ejus labore et periculo confecturum."

45. Multa ab Cæsare¹ in eam sententiam dicta sunt, quare negotio desistere non posset,^e et "neque suam,^f neque Populi Romani consuetudinem^g pati, uti optimè meritos socios desereret:^h neque se judicare, Galliam potius esse² Ariovisti,ⁱ quam Populi Romani.¹ Bello superatos esse Arvernos et Rutēnos ab Q. Fabio Maximo, quibus^k Populus Romanus ignovisset,^l neque in provinciam redegisset;¹ neque stipendium imposuisset. Quod si antiquissimum³ quodque tempus^g spectari oporteret,^a Populi Romani justissimum^m esse in Galliā imperium: si judicium^g Senātus observari oporteret,^a liberam^m debere esse Galliam, quam bello victam suis legibusⁿ uti⁴ voluisset."¹

46. Dum hæc in colloquio geruntur, Cæsari^o nunciatum est, equites^g Ariovisti⁵ propius tumulum accedere,^p et ad nostros adequitare,^p lapides telaque in nostros conjicere. Cæsar loquendi finem facit^q seque ad suos recipit,^q suisque^k imperavit, ne quod omnino telum in hostes rejicerent.^h Nam, etsi sine ullo periculo legiōnis delectæ cum equitatu prælium^g fore videbat, tamen committendum^r non putabat, ut, pulsus hostibus, dici posset,^a eos^g ab se⁶ per fidem in colloquio circumventos. Posteaquam in⁷ vulgus militum elatum est,⁸ quā arrogantia in colloquio Ariovistus usus, omni Galliā Romanis interdixisset,^e impetumque in nostros ejus equites fecissent^e eaque res colloquium ut diremisset:^e multo major alacritas studiumque pugnandi majus exercitui⁹ injectum est.

^a § 140, 2.

^b § 123, R.

^c § 99, Obs. 7.

^d § 140, 6.

^e § 140, 5.

^f 29, 1.

^g § 145, R. LVIII.

^h § 140, 1, 3d.

ⁱ § 108, R. XII.

^k § 112, R. V.

^l § 141, Obs. 7.

^m § 103, Obs. 2.

ⁿ § 121, R. XXVI.

^o § 126, R. III.

^p 96, 2.

^q § 44, I. 3.

^r 113, and 7.

^s § 140, 1, 1st.

47. Biduo post Ariovistus ad Cæsārem legātos mittit,^a velle^b se de his rebus, quæ inter eos agi cœptæ,¹ neque perfectæ essent,^c agere cum eo: uti aut itērum colloquio diem constituēret;^d aut, si id minùs vellet,^e ex suis aliquem ad se mittēret.^d Colloquendi Cæsāri^f causa visa non est; et eo magis, quòd pridie ejus diēi^g Germāni retinēri non potērant,² quin^h in nostrosⁱ tela conjicērent. Legātum ex suisⁱ sese magno cum pericūlo ad eum missūrum, et hominibus feris objectūrum, existimābat. Commodissimum visum est, Caium Valerium Procillum, Caii Valerii Cabūri filium,¹ summā virtūte^k et humanitāte adolescentem¹ (cujus pater a Caio Valerio Flacco civitatē^m donātus erat), et propter fidem et propter linguæ Gallicæ scientiam, quā multā jam Ariovistus longinquā consuetudinēⁿ utebātur, et quòd in eo³ peccandi Germānis^o causa non esset,^p ad eum mittēre, et Marcum Mettium, qui hospitio Ariovisti usus erat. His^q mandāvit, ut, quæ dicēret^r Ariovistus, cognoscērent^d et ad se referrent.^d Quos^s cū apud se in castris Ariovistus conspexisset,^t exercitū suo præsente, conclamāvit: "Quid ad se venīrent?^c An^u 4 speculandi causā?" Conantes dicere prohibuit et in catēnas conjēcit.

48. Eōdem die castra promōvit, et millibus^v passuum sex a Cæsāris castris sub monte consēdit. Postridie ejus diēi^g præter castra Cæsāris suas copias transduxit, et millibus^v passuum duōbus ultra eum castra fecit, eo consilio,ⁿ uti frumento commeatūque, qui ex Sequānis et Æduis supportarētur,^r Cæsārem intercludēret.^e Ex eo die dies continuos

^a 94, 1, 2d, & 4.^b 96, 2.^c § 140, 6.^d § 140, 1, 3d.^e § 140, 2.^f 70.^g § 135, R. XLVI.^h § 140, 3, & 78, 7,

Note.

ⁱ 19.^k § 106, R. VII.¹ § 97, R.^m § 126, R. V.ⁿ § 129, R.^o § 112, R. II.^p § 141, Obs. 7.^q § 123, R.^r § 141, Obs. 8.^s 38.^t § 140, Obs. 4.^u 56, 3d.^v § 142, R. XLII.

quinque Cæsar pro castris suas copias produxit, et aciem instructam habuit, ut, si vellet^a Ariovistus prælio contendere¹ ei^b potestas non deesset.^c Ariovistus his omnibus diēbus^d exercitum castris continuit; equestri prælio quotidie contendit. Genus hoc^e erat pugnae, quo se Germāni exercuerant. Equitum millia erant sex: totidem numero^f pedites velocissimi ac fortissimi; ² quos ex omni copiā singuli singulos,^g suae salutis causā, delegerant. Cum his in praeliis versabantur, ad hos se equites recipiebant: hi, si quid erat durius,^h concurrēbant: si qui,ⁱ graviore vulnere accepto, equo decidērat, circumstībant: ³ si quod erat longius prodeundum,^k aut celerius recipiendum,^k tanta erat horum exercitatione celeritas, ut, jubis^l equorum sublevāti, ⁴ cursum adæquarent.^m

49. Ubi eumⁿ castris se tenere Cæsar intellexit, ne diutius commeātu prohiberetur,^c ultra eum locum,^o quo in loco^p Germāni consederant, circiter passus^p sexcentos ab eis, castris^q idoneum locum delēgit, acicque triplici instructā, ad eum locum venit. Primam et secundam aciem in armis esse,^r tertiam castra munire jussit. Hic locus ab hoste circiter passus^p sexcentos, ut dictum est, abērat. Eo circiter hominum numero sexdecim millia expedita cum omni equitatu Ariovistus misit, ⁶ quae^s copiae nostros perterrērent^t et munitione prohiberent. Nihilō secius Cæsar, ut antè constituerat, duas acies hostem propulsare,^r tertiam opus perficere jussit. Munitis castris, duas ibi legiones reliquit et partem auxiliōrum: quatuor reliquas in castra majōra reduxit.

^a § 140, 2.^h 22.^o 37, 7, Note. 1.^b § 112, R. II.ⁱ § 35.^p § 136, R. XLVIII.^c § 140, 1, 2d.^k 113, 2.^q § 111, R.^d § 131, R. XLI.^l § 129, R.^r 90, 4.^e § 103, R. V.^m § 140, 1, 1st.^s 40, 4.^f § 123, R. XXXIV.ⁿ § 145, R. LVIII.^t § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.^g 26.

50. Proximo die,^a ¹ instituto^b suo, Cæsar e castris utrisque copias suas eduxit; paulumque ² a majoribus progressus, aciem instruxit, hostibusque^c pugnandi potestatem fecit. Ubi ne tum quidem eos prodire^d intellexit, circiter meridiem exercitum in castra reduxit. Tum demum Ariovistus partem suarum copiarum, quæ castra minora oppugnaret,^e misit: acriter utrinque usque ad vespærum pugnatum est. Solis occasu suas copias Ariovistus, multis et illatis et acceptis vulneribus,^f in castra reduxit. Cum ex captivis quæreret^g Cæsar, quam ob rem Ariovistus prælio non decertaret,^h hanc reperiēbat causam, quod apud Germānos ea consuetudo esset,ⁱ ut matres familiæ eorum ³ sortibus et vaticinationibus declararent,^k utrū prælium committi ⁴ ex usu esset,^h nec ne: eas ita dicere, ⁵ “Non esse^l fas, Germānos superare, si ante novam lunam prælio contendissent.”^m

51. Postridie ejus diēi Cæsar præsidioⁿ utrisque castris, quod^o satis esse visum est, reliquit; ⁶ omnes alarios in conspectu hostium ⁷ pro castris minoribus constituit, quod minus multitudīne militum legionariōrum pro hostium numero valēbat, ut ⁸ ad speciem alariis uteretur.^p Ipse, triplici instructa acie, usque ad castra hostium accessit. Tum demum necessariō Germāni suas copias castris eduxerunt, ⁹ generatimque constituērunt paribusque intervallis Harūdes, Marcomānos, Triboccos, Vangiōnes, Nemētes, Sedusios, Suēvos, omnemque aciem suam^q ¹⁰ rhedis^b et carris circumdedērunt, ne qua spes in fugā relinqueretur.^p ¹¹ Eō muliēres imposuērunt, quæ in prælium proficiscentes milites passis crinibus flentes implorābant, ne se in servirūtem Romānis traderent.^r

^a § 131, R. XL.^b § 129, R.^c § 123, R. & 63, 5.^d § 96, 2.^e § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.^f 109, 2.^g § 140, Obs. 4.^h § 140, 5.ⁱ § 141, Obs. 7.^k § 140, 1, 1st.^l 51.^m § 140, 2.ⁿ § 114, R.^o 37, 2 (*id.*)^p § 140, 1, 2d.^q § 30, 2.^r § 140, 1, 3d, &

121, 2.

52. Cæsar ¹ singulis^a legionibus^b singulos legatos et quastorem præfecit, uti eos testes suæ quisque virtutis haberet.^c Ipse a dextro cornu, quod eam partem ² minimè firmam hostium esse animum adverterat, prælium commisit. Ita nostri acriter in hostes, signo dato, impetum fecerunt, itaque hostes repente celeriterque procurrerunt, ut spatium pila in hostes conjiciendi^d non daretur.^e Rejectis pilis,^e cominus gladiis pugnatum est: at Germani, celeriter ex consuetudine suâ ³ phalange^e factâ, impetus gladiorum excepērunt. Reperti sunt complures^f nostri milites, qui in phalangas insilirent,^g et scuta manibus revellerent,^g et desuper vulnerarent.^g Cùm hostium acies a sinistro cornu pulsa atque in fugam conversa esset, a dextro cornu vehementer multitudi-^hne^h suorum nostram aciem premēbant. Id cùm animadvertisset^c Publius Crassus adolescens, qui equitatu^k præerat, quod ⁴ expeditior erat, quàm hi qui inter aciem versabantur, tertiam aciem laborantibus nostris^l subsidio^l misit.

53. Ita prælium restitutum est, atque omnes hostes terga vertērunt, ⁵ neque prius fugere destiterunt, quàm ad flumen Rhenum millia^m passuum ex eo loco circiter quinquaginta pervenerint.ⁿ Ibi perpauci aut, viribus^o confisi, transnatâre contendērunt, aut, lincibus inventis, sibi^b salutem repererunt. ⁶ In his fuit Ariovistus, qui, naviculam deligatam ad ripam nactus,^p eâ profūgit: reliquos omnes consecuti equites nostri interfecerunt. Duæ fuērunt Ariovisti uxores, una^q Sueva natione, quam ab domo secum eduxerat; altera Norica, regis Vociōnis soror,^q quam in Galliâ ⁷ duxerat, a fratre missam: utræque in eâ fugâ periērunt. ⁸ Duæ filiæ^r harum, altera^r occisa, altera^r capta est. Caius Valerius Procillus,

^a 26.^b § 123, R.^c § 140, 1, 2d.^d 112, 1.^e 109, &

§ 146, R. LX.

^f 17.^g § 141, Obs. 1.^h § 129, R.ⁱ § 140, Obs. 4.^k § 112, R. I.^l § 114, R.^m § 136, R. XLVIIIⁿ § 140, 4.^o § 112, R. V.^p 105, 1.^q § 97, R.^r § 97, Obs. 5.

cū a custodibus in fugā trinis catēnis ^a vinctus traherētur, ^b ¹ in ipsum Cæsārem, hostes equitātu ^a persequentem, incidit. Quæ ^c quidem res Cæsāri ^d non minōrem, quā ipsa victoria, ^e voluptātem attūlit; quòd homīnem honestissimum provinciæ Galliæ, suum familiārem ^f et hospitem, ereptum e manibus hostium, sibi ^g restitūtum vidēbat, neque ejus calamitāte ^a de tantā voluptāte et gratulatiōne quicquam fortūna deminuērat. Is, se præsente, ^h de se ter sortibus ^a consultum ⁱ dicēbat, utrū ^k igni statim necarētur, ^l an in aliud tempus reservarētur: sortium ² beneficio ^a se esse ^m incolūmem. Item Marcus Mettius repertus, et ad eum reductus est.

54. Hoc prælio trans Rhenum nunciāto, Suevi, qui ad ripas Rheni venērant, domum ⁿ reverti cœpērunt: quos Ubii, qui ³ proximi ^o Rhenum incōlunt, perterritos insecūti, magnum ex his numērum occidērunt. Cæsar, unā æstāte ^p duobus maxīnis bellis confectis, maturius paulo, quā tempus anni postulābat, in hiberna in Sequānos exercitum deduxit: hibernis ^d Labiēnum præposuit: ipse ⁴ in citeriōrem Galliam ⁶ ad conventus agendos ^q profectus est.

^a § 129, R.^ε § 126, R. III.^m 96. 2.^b § 140, Obs. 4.^h 110, 5.ⁿ § 130, 4.^c 38, 2.ⁱ § 47, 6, & 98, 2.^o § 136, Obs. 5. (*ad.*)^d § 123, R.^k § 124, 14.^p § 131, R. XLI.^e § 120, Obs. 1.^l § 140, 5.^q 112, 7.^f § 97, R.

BOOK II.

GENERAL ARGUMENT.

- I. Confederacy of the Belgæ. Cæsar's war with them—Chap. 1–14.
 II. War with the Nervii—Chap. 15–28. III. War with the Aduatici—Chap. 29–33. IV. Expedition of Publius Crassus into Armorica—Chap. 34. V. Transactions subsequent to the reduction of the Belgæ—Chap. 35.

1. ¹ CUM esset Cæsar in citeriøre Galliâ in hibernis, ita uti supra demonstravimus, ² crebri ad eum rumôres afferebantur, literisque itém Labiëni certior fiēbat, omnes Belgas, quam ^a tertiam esse Galliæ partem ³ dixerāmus, contra Populum Romānum conjurāre, ^b obsidesque inter se dare: ^b ⁴ conjurandi has esse causas: primū, quòd vererentur, ^d ne, ^c omni pacatâ Galliâ, ad eos exercitus noster adduceretur: ^e deinde, quòd ab nonnullis Gallis sollicitarentur, ^d ⁵ partim qui, ut Germanos diutius in Galliâ versari noluērant, ita Populi Romāni exercitum hiemāre atque inveterascere in Galliâ molestè ferēbant; ⁶ partim qui mobilitate et levitate animi novis ⁷ imperiis ^f studēbant: ⁸ ab nonnullis etiam, quòd in Galliâ a potentioribus ^g atque his ⁹ qui ad ^h conducendos homines facultates habēbant, vulgò regna occupabantur, qui minùs facillè ¹⁰ eam rem in imperio nostro consēqui potērant.

2. Iis nuntiis literisque commōtus, Cæsar duas legiōnes in citeriøre Galliâ novas conscripsit, et, ¹¹ in itā æstātē, in interiōrem Galliam qui deducēret, ⁱ Quintum Pedium legatum misit. Ipse, cū primū pabuli copia esse incipēret, ad exercitum venit: ¹² dat negotium Senonibus reliquisque Gallis, qui finitimi Belgis ^k erant, uti ea, quæ apud eos gerantur, ^d ¹³ cognoscant, ^l seque de his rebus certiōrem faciant. ^l

^a § 99, Obs. 4.

^b 96, 2.

^c § 140, Obs. 6.

^d § 141, Obs. 7.

^e § 141, Obs. 8.

^f § 112, R. V.

^g 19, (*hominibus*.)

^h 112, 7.

ⁱ § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.

^k § 111, R.

^l § 140, 1, 3d.

Hi constanter omnes nunciavērunt, manus cogi, exercitum in unum locum condūci. Tum vero dubitandum non existimāvit, ¹ quin ad eos proficiscerētur.^a Re frumentariā provīsā, castra movet, diebusque circiter quindēcim ad fines Belgārum pervēnit.

3. Eò cūm de improvīso ²celeriusque omnium opiniōne^b venisset, Remi, qui proximī Galliæ ex Belgis^c sunt, ad eum legātos, Iccium et Antebrogium, primos civitātis,^d misērunt, qui dicērent,^e se suāque omnia in fidem atque in potestātem Popūli Romāni permittēre:^f ³neque^g se cum Belgis reliquis consensisse, neque contra Popūlum Romānum omnino conjurāsse: paratosque esse et obsīdes dare, et imperāta^h facere, et oppīdis recipere, et frumento ceterisque rebus juvare: reliquos omnes Belgas in armis esse: Germanosque, qui cis Rhenum incolunt, sese cum his conjunxisse; tantumque esse eōrum omnium⁴furōrem, ut ne Suessiōnes quidem, fratres consanguineosque suos, qui eōdem jureⁱ et eisdem legībus utantur,^k unum imperium unumque magistrātum cum ipsis habeant,^k deterrere potuerint,¹ quin cum his consentirent.^m

4. Cūm ab ⁵his quæreret, quæ civitātes, ⁶quantæque in armis essent,ⁿ et quid in bello possent, sic reperiēbat: plerosque Belgas esse ortos ab Germānis: Rhenumque antiquitus transductos, propter loci fertilitātem ibi consedissee, Gallosque, qui ea loca incolērent, expulisse; solosque esse, qui, patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omni Galliā vexatā, Teutōnos Cimbrosque intra fines suos ingrēdi prohibuerint.^o Quā ex re fieri, uti eārum rerum memoriā magnam sibi auctoritatem, magnosque spirītus in re militāri sumērent.^p De numero eōrum ⁷omnia se habere explorata,^q Remi dicēbant;

^a § 140, 3.^g 124, 5.

78, 7, Note.

^b § 120, R.^h 19, (*negotia*.)ⁿ § 140, 5.^c § 107, Obs. 8.ⁱ § 121, R. XXVI.^o § 141, Obs. 7.^d § 107, R. X. Exp.^k § 141, R. IV.^p § 140, 1, 4th.^e § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.^l § 140, 1, 1st.^q § 146, Obs. 1^f § 145, Obs. 3.^m § 140, 3, &

propterea quòd propinquitatibus affinitatibusque conjuncti, quantam quisque multitudinem in communi Belgarum concilio ad id bellum pollicitus sit,^a cognoverint.^b Plurimum inter eos Bellovacos et virtute,^c et auctoritate,^c et hominum numero,^c valere: hos posse conficere armata millia centum: pollicitos ex eo numero electa millia sexaginta, totiusque belli imperium sibi^d postulare. Suessiones suos esse finitimos, latissimos feracissimosque agros possidere. Apud eos fuisse regem nostram etiam memoriâ¹ Divitiacum, totius Galliae potentissimum, qui cum^e magnae partis harum regionum, tum^e etiam Britanniae, imperium obtinuêrit: ^b nunc esse regem Galbam: ad hunc, propter justitiam prudentiamque, ² totius belli summam omnium voluntate deferri: oppida habere numero^c duodecim, polliceri millia armata quinquaginta: totidem^f Nervios, qui maxime feri inter ipsos habeantur^b ³ longissimèque absint: ^b quindècim millia Atrebatè: Ambianos decem millia: Morinos viginti quinque millia: Menapios novem millia: Calètos decem millia: Velocasses et Veromandos totidem: Aduatucos viginti novem millia, Condrusos, Eburones, Cæræsos, Pæmānos, qui⁴ uno nomine Germāni appellantur,^g arbitrari ad quadraginta millia.

5. Cæsar, Remos cohortatus⁵ liberaliterque oratione prosecutus, omnem senatum,^h ad se convenire, principumque liberos obsidesⁱ ad se adduci jussit. Quæ^k omnia ab his^l diligenter⁶ ad diem facta sunt. Ipse, Divitiacum Æduum⁷ magno opere cohortatus, docet, quanto opere rei publicæ communisque salutis intersit,^a manus hostium distinèri,^m ne⁸ cum tantâ multitudine uno tempore confligendum sit.ⁿ Id fieri posse, si suas copias Ædúi in fines Bellovacorum intro-

^a § 140, 5.^f 19, (*militēs.*)^k 38.^b § 140, 6.^g § 141, Obs. 5, 2d.^l § 126, Obs. 2.^c § 128, R. XXXIV.^h 90, 4.^m 94, 3.^d § 123, R.ⁱ § 97, R.ⁿ § 140, 1, 2d.^e 124, 8.

duxerint,^a et eorum agros populāri cœperint.^a His mandātis, eum ab se dimittit. Postquā omnes Belgārum copias, in unum locum coactas, ad se venīre^b vidit, neque jam longē abesse ab his, quos miserat, exploratoribus,^c et ab Remis cognōvit, flumen^d Axōnam, quod est in extrēmīs Remōrum finibus, exercitum^d transducere maturāvit, atque ibi castra posuit. ¹Quæ^e res et latus unum castrorum ripis fluminis muniēbat, et post eum quæ^f essent tuta ab hostibus reddēbat, et, commeātus ab Remis reliquisque civitatibus ut sine pericūlo ad eum portāri posset,^g efficiēbat. In eo fluminis pons erat. Ibi præsidium ponit, et in altērā parte fluminis Quintum Titurium Sabīnum legātum cum sex ²cohortibus relīquit: castra in altitudinem pedum duodēcim vallo,^h fossāque ³duodeviginti pedum,ⁱ munire jubet.

6. Ab his castris oppidum Remōrum, nomīne^k Bibrax, abērat millia passuum octo. Id ex itinere magno impētū^h Belgæ oppugnāre cœperunt. Ægrē eo die^l sustentātum est.^m ⁴Gallōrum eādē atqueⁿ Belgārum oppugnatio est hæc. Ubi, circumjectā multitudīne homīnum totis mēnibus^o undīque lapīdes in murum jaci cœpti sunt, murusque defensoribus^p nudātus est, testudīne factā portas^q succēdunt murumque subruunt. ⁵Quod tum facilē fiēbat. Nam, cū tanta multitudo lapīdes ac tela conijcerent, ⁶in muro consistendi potestas erat nulli.^r Cū finem oppugnandi nox fecisset, Iccius, Remus, summā nobilitateⁱ et gratiā inter suos, qui tum oppīdo ⁷præerat, unus ex his qui legāti de pace ad Cæsārem venērant, nuncios ad eum mittit,^s nisi subsidium sibi^o submittātur, sese diutius sustinēre non posse.

7. Eō⁸ de mediā nocte Cæsar, iisdem ducibus usus qui nuncii ab Iccio venērant, Numīdas et Cretas sagittarios, et

a 79.	g § 140, 1, 3d.	n § 149, Obs. 6.
b 89, 3.	h § 129, R.	o § 126, R. III.
c § 136, Obs. 5, (ab.)	i § 106, R. VII.	p § 126, R. V.
d 119, 1.	k § 128, R.	q § 112, Obs. 4.
e 38, 2.	l § 131, R. XLI.	r § 112, R. II.
f § 99, Obs. 1 4th, (loca) ^m 66.		s 94, 4.

funditōres Baleāres, subsidio ^a oppidānis mittit: quorum adventu et Remis, ^b cum spe defensiōnis, studium propugnandi accessit, et hostībus ^c eādē de causā spes potiundi ^d oppīdi discessit. Itāque, paulisper apud oppīdum morāti, ^e agrōsque Remōrum depopulāti, ^e omnībus vicis ædificiisque, ^f quos ^f adīre potērant, incēnsis, ad castra Cæsāris omnībus copiis contendērunt, ² et ab ^g millībus ^h passuum minūs duōbus castra posuērunt; quæ castra, ut fumo atque ignībus significabātur, ampliūs millībus ^h passuum octo in latitudīnem patēbant.

8. Cæsar primò, et propter multitudīnem hostium, et propter eximiam opiniōem virtūtis, ³ prælio supersedēre statuit; quotidie tamen equestrībus præliis, quid hostis virtūte posset, et quid nostri audērent, ⁴ sollicitationībus periclitabātur. Ubi nostros non esse inferiōres intellexit, loco ⁱ pro castris, ad aciem instruendam natūrā opportūno atque idoneo (quod is collis, ubi castra posita erant, paulūlum ex planitie edītus, tantum ^k adversus in latitudīnem patēbat, quantum loci ^l acies instructa occupāre potērat, atque ⁵ ex utrāque parte latēris dejectus habēbat, ⁶ et, frontem lenīter fastigātus, paulātim ad planitiem redībat), ab utrōque latēre ejus collis transversam fossam obduxit circīter passuum ⁿ quadringentōrum; et ⁷ ad extrēmas fossas castella constituit, ibique ⁸ tormenta collocāvit, ne, cū aciem instruxisset, hostes, ⁹ quòd tantum multitudīne potērant, ab laterībus pugnantes ^p suos circumvenīre possent. ⁹ Hoc facto, duābus legiōnībus, ^r quas proximè conscripsērat, in castris relictis, ut, ¹⁰ si quā opus esset, subsidio ^a duci possent, ⁹ reliquas sex legiōnes pro castris in acie constituit. Hostes item suas copias ex castris eductas instruxērunt.

^a § 114, R. & Obs. 1.

§ 136, R. LII.

^m § 128, Exc.

^b § 112, R. IV.

^e § 132, Obs. 5.

ⁿ § 106, R. VII.

^c § 136, Obs. 5, (ab.)

^h § 120, R. & 6, 3.

^o 17, 2.

^d 112, 5.

^l § 136, Obs. 5, (in)

^p 101, 1.

^e 105, 1.

^k 44, 5.

^q § 140, 1, 2d.

^f § 99, Obs. 6, &

¹ § 106, R. VIII.

^r 109, 2.

9. ¹ Palus erat non magna inter nostrum ^a atque hostium exercitum. Hanc si nostri transirent, hostes ² expectabant; nostri autem, si ab illis initium transeundi fieret, ut impeditos ^c aggrederentur, ^b parati in armis erant. Intērim praelio equestri inter duas acies contendebatur. ^d Ubi neutri transeundi initium faciunt, ³ secundiore equitum praelio nostris, ^e Cæsar suos in castra reduxit. Hostes protinus ex eo loco ad flumen Axōnam contendērunt, quod esse post nostra castra ⁴ demonstratum est. Ibi vadis ^f repertis, partem suarum copiarum transducere conati sunt, eo consilio, ut, si possent, ⁵ castellum, cui ^h præerat Quintus Titurius legatus, expugnarent, pontemque interscindērent; ¹ ⁶ si minùs potuissent, ⁵ agros Remōrum popularentur, ¹ qui magno nobis ^k usui ad bellum gerendum erant, commeatūque nostros prohibērent.

10. Cæsar, certior factus ab Titurio, omnem equitatum, et levis armaturæ ¹ Numidas, funditores ^m sagittariosque, pontem transducit, atque ad eos contendit. Acrīter in eo loco pugnatum est. ^d Hostes ⁶ impeditos nostri in flumine aggressi, magnum eorum numerum occidērunt. Per eorum corpōra reliquos, audacissimè transire conantes, multitudīne telōrum repulērunt; primos, qui transierant, equitatu circumventos interfecērunt. Hostes, ubi et de expugnando ⁿ oppido, et de flumine transeundo, ⁿ spem se fefellisse intellexērunt, neque nostros in locum iniquiorem progrēdi pugnandi causā vidērunt, atque ipsos res frumentaria deficere cœpit, concilio convocato ^f constituērunt, optimum esse, domum ^o suam quemque reverti, ut, ⁷ quorum in fines primūm Romāni exercitum introduxissent, ^p ad eos defendendos undique convenirent, ^q et potiùs in suis, quàm in aliēnis finibus, decertarent, ^q ⁸ et domesticis copiis ^r rei frumentariæ uterentur. ^q

^a 29, 1.^s § 140, 2.ⁿ 112, 8.^b § 140, 1, 2d.^h § 112, R. I.^o § 130, 4.^c 19, (eos.)¹ § 140, 1, 1st.^p § 141, Obs. 8.^d 65.^k § 114, R.^q § 140, 1, 4th.^e § 111, & 19.¹ § 106, R. VII.^r § 121, R. XXVI.^f 109.^m 119, 1.

Ad eam sententiam, cum reliquis causis, ¹ hæc quoque ratio eos deduxit, quòd Divitiacum atque Æduos finibus Bellocorū appropinquare ^a cognovērāt. ² His ^b persuaderi, ut diutius morarentur, ^c neque suis auxilium ferrent, non potērat.

11. Eâ re constitutâ, secundâ vigiliâ ^d magno cum strepitu ac tumultu castris ^e egressi, ³ nullo certo ordine neque imperio, ⁴ cùm sibi ^f quisque primum itinēris locum petēret, et domum ³ pervenire properāret, fecērunt, ut consimilis fugæ profectio viderētur. ^c Hæc re ^h statim, Cæsar, per speculatores cognitâ, ⁵ insidias veritus, quòd, quâ de causâ discederent, ⁱ nondum perspexerat, exercitum equitatumque castris ^e continuit. Primâ luce, ^d confirmatâ re ^h ab exploratoribus, omnem equitatum, qui novissimum agmen morarētur, ^k præmisit. His ^f Quintum Pedium et Lucium Aurunculeium Cottam legatos præfecit. Titum Labienum legatum cum legionibus tribus subsēqui jussit. Hi, novissimos adorti, et multa millia ^l passuum prosecuti, magnam multitudinem eorum fugientium conciderunt, ⁶ cùm ab extrēmo agmine, ad quos ^m ventum erat, ⁿ consistērent, ^o fortiterque impetum nostrorum militum sustinērent; ^o prioresque (quòd abesse a periculo viderentur, neque ullâ necessitate neque imperio continerentur), exaudito clamore, ^h perturbatis ordinibus, ^h omnes in fugâ sibi præsidium ponērent. ^o Ita sine ullo periculo, ⁷ tantam ^q eorum multitudinem nostri interfecerunt, quantum fuit diēi spatium: sub occasumque solis destiterunt, seque in castrâ, ut erat imperatum, recepērunt.

12. Postridie ejus diēi Cæsar, priusquàm se hostes ex terrore ac fugâ recipērent, ^r in fines Suessionum, qui proximi Remis erant, exercitum duxit, et, magno itinēre ^h confecto, ad oppidum Noviodunum contendit. Id ex itinēre oppug-

^a § 96, 2.

^s § 126, 4.

ⁿ § 67, 5, Note.

^b § 126, R. III.

^h 109.

^o § 140, Obs. 4.

^c § 140, 1, 3d.

ⁱ § 140, 5.

^p § 141, Obs. 7.

^d § 131, R. XL.

^k § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.

^q 44, 3.

^e § 136, Obs. 5.

^l § 131, R. XLI.

^r § 140, 4.

^f § 123, R.

^m § 99, Exc. 1.

nāre conātus, quōd ¹ vacuum ab defensoribus esse audiēbat propter latitudinem fossæ murique altitudinem, paucis defendentibus, expugnāre non potuit. Castris munītis, ² vineas agēre, quæque ad oppugnandum usui^a erant, comparāre cœpit. Intērim omnis ex fugā Suessiōnum multitūdo in oppidum proximā nocte convēnit. Celerīter vineis^b ad oppidum actis, ³ aggēre jacto, ⁴ turribusque constitūtis, magnitudīne^c opērum, quæ neque vidērant antē Galli neque audiērant, et celeritātē Romanōrum permōti, legātos ad Cæsārem de deditiōne mittunt, et, ⁵ petentibus Remis^b ut conservarentur,^d ⁶ impētrant.

13. Cæsar, obsidibus^b acceptis, primis^c civitātis atque ipsius^f Galbæ regis duōbus filiis, armisque^b omnibus ex oppido tradītis, in deditiōnem Suessiōnes accēpit, exercitumque in Bellovācos duxit. Qui^g cū se suāque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent,^h atque ab eo oppido Cæsār cum exercitū circīter millia passuum quinque abesset, omnes ⁷ majōres natu, ex oppido egressi, manus ad Cæsārem tendēre, et voce significāre cœperunt, sese in ejus fidem ac potestātem venīre,ⁱ neque contra Popūlum Romānum armis contendēre. Item, cū ad oppidum accessisset,^h castrāque ibi ponēret, puēri mulieresque ex muro ⁸ passis manibus,^b suo more,^c pacem ab Romānis^k petiērunt.

14. Pro his Divitiācus (nam post discessum Belgārum, dimissis Æduōrum copiis,^h ad eum revertērat) ⁹ facit verba: Bellovācos¹ omni tempore in¹⁰ fide atque amicitia civitātis Æduæ fuisse: ^m impulsos a suis principibus, qui dicērent,ⁿ Æduos, a Cæsāre in servitūtem redactos, omnes indignitates contumeliasque perferre,ⁱ et ab Æduis defecisse^m et Popūlo Romāno bellum intulisse.^m Qui^o hujus consilii

^a § 114, Obs. 4. (ei.) ^f 32.

^k § 124, Obs. 2.

^b 109, 2.

^g 39, 6.

^l § 145, R. LVIII.

^c § 129, R.

^h § 140, Obs. 4. &

^m 98, 2.

^d § 140, 1, 34.

74, 8.

ⁿ § 140, 6.

^e § 97, R. & 19.

ⁱ 96, 2.

^o 37, 1st. (eos.)

principes fuissent, quòd intelligērent quantam calamitatem civitatī intulissent,^a in Britanniam profugisse.^b Petēre¹ non solum Bellovācos,^c sed etiam pro his Æduos,^c ut suā clementiā ac mansuetudinē in eos utātur.^d Quod^e si fecerit, Æduōrum auctoritatem apud omnes Belgas amplificatūrum; quorum auxiliis atque opibus, si qua bella incidērint,^f sustentāre consuērint.^g

15. Cæsar, honōris^h Divitiāci^h atque Æduōrum causā, sese eos in fidem receptūrum,ⁱ et conservatūrum, dixit: sed, quòd erat civitas magnā inter Belgas auctoritatē,^k atque hominū multitudinē^k præstābat, sexcentos obsides poposcit. His traditis, omnibusque armis ex oppido collatis, ab eo loco in fines Ambianōrum pervēnit, qui se^l suāque omnia sine morā dedidērunt. Eōrum fines Nervii attingēbant: quorum de naturā moribusque Cæsar cū² quæreret, sic reperiēbat: “Nullum aditum esse ad eos mercatoribus:^m ³nihil pati vini, reliquarumque rerum ad luxuriam pertinentium, inferri,ⁿ quòd his rebus^o relanguescere animos et remitti virtutem existimarent:³ esse homines feros, magnæque virtutis:^p ⁴increpitare atque incusare reliquos Belgas, qui se Populo Romano dedidissent,^q patriamque virtutem projecissent:^q ⁵confirmare, sese neque legatos missuros,ⁱ neque ullam⁶ conditionem pacis accepturos.”¹

16. Cū per eōrum fines triduum iter fecisset, inveniēbat ex captivis, Sabim flumen ab castris suis non ampliùs millia^r passuum decem abesse: trans id flumen omnes Nervios consedissee,^b adventumque ibi Romanōrum⁷ expectare, unā cum Atrebatibus et Veromanduis, finitimis suis (nam his^s utrisque persuaserant, uti eandem belli fortunam experirentur):⁸ expectari etiam ab his Aduatucōrum copias, at-

^a § 140, 5.^g § 141, Obs. 7.ⁿ 90, 4.^b 98, 2.^h § 106, Obs. 2.^o § 129, R.^c § 145, R. LVIII.ⁱ 100, 2.^p § 106, R. VII.^d § 140, 1, 3d.^k § 128, R.^q § 141, R. III.^e 37, Note. 3, & 38.^l 31, 5, Note.^r § 132, R.^f § 45, III. 2.^m § 112, R. II.^s 63, 3.

que esse in itinere: ¹ mulieres, quique ^a per ætatem ad pugnam inutiles viderentur, ^b in eum locum coniecisse, quò propter paludes exercitui ^c aditus non esset.

17. His rebus cognitis, exploratores centurionesque præmittit, qui locum idoneum castris deligant. ^d Cùmque ex deditiis Belgis reliquisque Gallis complures, Cæsarem secuti, unà iter facerent; ^e quidam ex his, ut postea ex captivis cognitum est, ² eorum diorum ^f consuetudine ³ itineris ^g nostri exercitus perspecta, nocte ad Nervios pervenerunt, atque iis ^h demonstrarunt, inter singulas ⁱ legiones impedimentorum magnum numerum intercedere, ³ neque esse quicquam negotii, ^k cùm prima legio in castra venisset, ¹ reliquæque legiones magnum spatium ^m abessent, hanc sub sarcinis adoriri: ⁿ ⁴ quâ pulsâ, ^f impedimentisque direptis, ^f futurum, ut reliquæ contrâ consistere non auderent. ^o Adjuvabat ^p etiam eorum consilium qui rem deferébant, quò Nervii antiquitus, cùm equitatu ^q nihil ^r possent (neque enim ad hoc tempus ^s ei rei student, sed, quicquid ^s possunt, pedestribus ^t valent copiis), quò facilius finitimorum equitatum, si prædandi causâ ad eos venisset, ^t impedirent, ^u teneris arboribus ^f ⁷ incisis atque inflexis, ⁸ crebris in latitudinem ramis ^t et rubis sentibusque interjectis effecerant, ut instar ^v muri hæ sepes munimenta præberent; quò non modò ^w intrari, sed ne perspicì quidem posset. His rebus cùm iter agnitionis nostri impedirètur, non omittendum sibi consilium Nervii æstimaverunt.

18. ⁹ Loci natūra erat hæc, quem ^x locum nostri castris delegerant. Collis, ab summo æqualiter declivis, ad flumen Sabim, quod suprâ nominavimus, vergēbat. Ab eo flumine pari

^a 37, 1st.

^b § 141, Obs. 7.

^c § 112, R. II.

^d § 141, Obs. 2. 4th.

^e § 44, II.

^f 109, 2.

^g § 106, Obs. 2.

^h 63.

ⁱ 26, 5.

^k § 106. R. VIII.

^l 80, 3.

^m § 132, R. XLII.

ⁿ § 144, R. LVI.

^o § 140, 1, 4th.

^p 51.

^q § 129, R.

^r § 116, Obs. 3.

^s 37, 8, Note. 2. & r.

^t § 140, 2.

^u § 140, 1.

^v § 136, Obs. 5. (ad)

^w § 134, Obs. 5.

^x 37, 6, Note. 1

acclivitâte cõllis nascebâtur, adversus huic^a et contrarius, passus^b circîter ducentos¹ infîmâ apertus, ab superiõre parte silvestris, ut non facilè introrsus perspîci posset.^c Intra eas silvas hostes in occulto^d sese continēbant: in aperto loco, ²secundum flumen, paucæ statiõnes equitum videbantur. Fluminis erat altitudo pedum circîter trium.^e

19. Cæsar, equitatu præmisso, subsequebâtur omnibus copiis: ^fsed ratio ordoque agmînis ³aliter se habēbat, ac ^gBelgæ ad Nervios detulērant. Nam, quòd ad hostes appropinquābat, consuetudîne suâ Cæsar sex legiõnes ⁴expeditas ducēbat: post eas totius exercîtûs impedimenta collocārat: inde duæ legiõnes, quæ proximè conscriptæ erant, totum agmen claudēbant, præsiðiõque^h impedimentis^h erant. Equites nostri, cum funditoribus sagittariisque flumèn transgressi, cum hostium equitatu prælîum commisērunt. Cùm se illi ⁵identidem in silvas ad suos recipērent,ⁱ ac rursus ex silvâ in nostros impetum facērent,ⁱ neque^k nostri longiùs, quàm ⁶quem^l ad finem porrecta ac loca aperta pertinēbant, cedentes insēqui audērent:ⁱ intērim legiõnes sex, quæ primæ^m venērant, opère dimenso, castra munire cœpērunt. Ubi prima impedimenta nostri exercîtus ab his, qui in silvis abditi latēbant, visa sunt (⁷quod tempus inter eos committendi prælîi convenērat), ita, ut intra silvas aciem ordinesque constituērant, atque ipsi sese confirmavērant, subitò omnibus copiis^f provolavērunt impetumque in nostras equites fecērunt. His facilè pulsus ac proturbâtis, incredibîli celeritâte ad flumen decucurrērunt, ut pæne uno tempore et ad silvas, et in flumîne, et jam ⁸in manibus nostris hostes viderentur.^c Eâdem autem celeritâte ⁹adverso colle ad nostra castra, atque eos,ⁿ qui in opère occupati erant, contendērunt.

^a § 111, R.^f § 132, Obs. 5, (*cum*)^k § 93, 1, (*and not.*)^b § 132, R. XLII.^g § 149, Obs. 6^l 37, 2d, 5, Note. 1.^c § 140, 1, 1st, (*ita.*)^h § 114, R.^m 98, Obs. 10.^d § 90, 6.ⁱ § 140, Obs. 4, &ⁿ § 149, R. & Exp.^e § 132, Obs. 3.

74, 3.

20. Cæsari^a omnia uno tempore erant agenda: ^b ¹ vexillum proponendum, ^b quod erat insigne, cum ad arma concurrere oporteret: signum tubæ dandum: ^b ab opere revocandi ^b milites: ² qui paulo longius ^c aggereis petendi causâ processerant, arcessendi: ^b acies instruenda, ^b milites cohortandi, ^b signum dandum: ^b quarum ^d rerum magnam partem temporis brevitas, et ³ successus et incursus hostium impediēbat. His difficultatibus^e duæ res ⁴ erant subsidio,^f scientia atque usus militum, quod, superioribus præliis exercitati, quid fieri oporteret,^g non minus commode ipsi sibi ^b præscribere, quam ab aliis doceri poterant; et quod ab opere ⁵ singulisqueⁱ legionibus^e singulos^l legatos Cæsar discedere, nisi munitis castris, vetuerat. Hi, propter propinquitatem et celeritatem hostium, ⁶ nihil jam Cæsaris imperium spectabant, sed ⁷ per se, quæ ⁸ videbantur, administrabant.

21. Cæsar, necessariis rebus imperatis, ad cohortandos milites, ⁹ quam^k in partem fors obtulit, decurrit, et ad legiōnem decimam devēnit. Milites non longiore oratione^l cohortatus, quam uti suæ pristinae virtutis memoriam retinerent,^m neuⁿ ¹⁰ perturbarentur^m animo, hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinerent; ^m quod non longius hostes abērant, quam quò telum adjici posset,^o praelii committendi signum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandi causâ profectus, pugnantibus^p occurrit. Temporis tanta fuit ¹¹ exiguitas, hostiumque tam paratus ad dimicandum animus, ut non modò ad insignia accommodanda,^q sed etiam ad galeas induendas^q scutisque tegumenta detrahenda tempus defuerit.^r Quam quisque in partem ab opere casu devēnit, quæque prima signa conspexit, ad hæc constitit, ne, in quærendo suos, pugnandi tempus dimitteret.^s

^a § 126, Obs. 3.^g § 140, 5.ⁿ § 93, 1, (and not,)^b 108, 2.^h 63.^o § 140, 5.^c § 120, Obs. 5.^l 26, 5.^p § 112, R. IV. & 19.^d 38.^k 37, 2d, 5. Note. 1.^q 112, 7.^e § 136, Obs. 5, (in.)^l § 129, R.^r § 140, 1, 1st.^f § 114, Obs. 4. nostris. ^m § 140, 1, 3d.^s § 140, 1, 2d.

22. Instructo exercĭtu, magis ut loci natūra, ¹ dejectusque collis, et ² necessitas temporis, quàm ut rei militāris ratio atque ordo postulābat, cūm diversis locis ^a legiōnes, aliæ aliā in parte, ^b hostībus resistērent, sepibusque ^c densissimis, ut antè demonstravimus, interjectis ³ prospectus impedirētur: ^d neque ^e certa subsidia collocāri, neque quid in quāque parte opus esset providēri, neque ab uno omnia imperia administrāri poterant. Itāque, ⁴ in tantā rerum iniquitāte, fortunæ quòque eventus varii sequebantur.

23. Legiōnis nonæ, et decimæ milĭtes, ut ⁵ in sinistrā parte acie constitērant, pilis emissis, ^f cursu ac lassitudine ^c ⁶ examinātos, vulneribusque confectos, Atrebātes (⁷ nam his ea pars obvenērat), celerĭter ex loco superiōre in flumen compulserunt; et, transire conantes insecūti gladiis, ^c magnam partem eōrum impedītam interfecerunt. Ipsi transire flumen ^g non dubitaverunt; et, in locum inīquum progressi, rursus regressos ac resistentes hostes, redintegrāto praelio, ^h ⁸ in fugam dederunt. Item aliā in parte ⁹ diversæ duæ legiōnes, undecima et octāva, profligātis Veromanduis, quibuscum erant congressi, ex loco superiōre in ipsis ⁱ fluminis ripis praeliabantur. ¹⁰ At tum, totis ferè a fronte, et ab sinistrā parte, nudātis castris, ^h cūm in dextro cornu legio duodecima, et non magno ab eā intervallo septima constitisset, ^d omnes Nervii confertissimo agmine, ^c duce Boduognāto, ^k qui summam imperii tenēbat, ad eum locum contendērunt: quorum pars aperto latere legiōnes circumvenire, pars ¹¹ summum ^l castrōrum locum petere, cœpit.

24. Eōdem tempore equĭtes nostri, ¹² levisque armaturæ ^m pedĭtes, qui cum iis unā fuērant, ¹³ quos ⁿ primo hostium impetu ^c pulsos dixeram, cūm se in castra recipērent, ^d ¹⁴ adver-

^a § 136, Obs. 5, (in.) ^f 104, 1.

¹ 17, 2.

^b § 98, Obs. 11, & 25. ^g § 136, R. LII.

^m § 106, R. VII.

^c § 129, R.

^h 109, 2.

ⁿ § 145, Obs. 2, &

^d § 140, Obs. 4.

ⁱ 32, 6.

91, 4.

^e 124, 5.

^k 110, 1.

sis hostibus occurrēbant, ac rursus aliam in partem fugam petēbant: et ¹calōnes, qui ab ²decumānā portā, ac summo jugo collis, nostros ^avictōres flumen transisse ^bconspexerant, prædandi causā egressi, cū respexissent et hostes in nostris castris ³versari ^cvidissent, ⁴præcipites ^dfugæ sese mandābant. Simul eōrum, qui cū impedimentis veniēbant, clamor fremitusque oriebātur, aliique aliam ^ein partem perterriti ferebantur.^f Quibus ^gomnibus rebus permōti equites Treviri, quorum inter Gallos virtutis opinio est singulāris, qui auxilii causā ab civitate missi ad Cæsarem venērant, cū multitudīne ^hhostium castra ^anostra compleri,^c legiōnes ^apremi ^cet pæne circumventas tenēri, calōnes,^a equites, funditōres, Numīdas, ⁵diversos dissipatosque, in omnes partes fugere ^cvidissent,ⁱ desperātis nostris rebus, domum contendērunt: Romānos ^apulsos ^bsuperatosque, castris ^kimpedimentisque eōrum hostes potitos,^b civitāti renunciavērunt.

25. Cæsar, ab decimæ legiōnis cohortatiōne ad dextrum cornu profectus, ubi suos ^a⁶urgēri,^c signisque in unum locum collātis duodecimæ legiōnis confertos milites ^asibi ^mip-sos¹ ad pugnam esse impedimento; ^mquartæ cohortis omnibus centurionibus occisis, signiferōque interfecto, signo amisso, reliquarum cohortium omnibus ferè centurionibus aut vulnerātis aut occisis, in his ⁷primopilo, Publio Sextio Baculo,ⁿ fortissimo viro,ⁿ multis gravibusque vulneribus ⁸confecto, ut jam se sustinēre non posset; ^oreliquos^a esse tardiōres, et nonnullos ab novissimis desertos ^pprælio ^qexcedere ac tela vitare; hostes ^aneque ⁹a fronte ex inferiōre loco ¹⁰subeuntes intermittēre,^c et ab utroque latere instāre; ^cet rem^a esse^c in angusto vidit, neque ullum esse^c subsidium, quod submitti posset: ^sscuto ab novissimis uni militi^r de-

^a § 145. R. LVIII.^g 38. § 129, Rⁿ § 97, R.^b 98, 2.^h § 126. R. V.^o § 140, 1, 1st. (*ita.*)^c 96, 2.ⁱ § 140, Obs. 4.^p 101, 4.^d § 98, Obs. 10^k § 121, R. XXVI^q § 136. R. LII^e § 98, Obs. 11, & 25.^l 33, 1.^r § 126, R. III. & 5, 1^f 116, 3^m § 114, R[•] § 141, R. I

tracto (quò ipse eò sine scuto venērat), in primam aciem processit, centurionibusque nominatim appellātis,^a reliquos cohortātus milītes, ¹ signa inferre et manipūlos laxāre^b jussit, quò faciliūs gladiis^c uti possent.^d ² Cujus adventu spe illātā militibus,^e ac redintegrāto anīmo, cūm ³ pro se quisque,^f in conspectu imperatōris, et jam in extrēmīs suis rebus, opēram navāre cupērent,^g paulum hostium impētus tardātus est.

26. Cæsar cūm septimam legiōnem,^h quæ juxta constitērat, item urgēriⁱ ab hoste vidisset, tribūnos^k milītum monuit, ut paulatim sese ⁴ legiōnes conjungērent, et conversa signa in hostes inferrent. Quo facto, cūm alius^f alii subsidium ferrent,^g neque timērent ⁵ ne^l aversi ab hoste circumvenirentur, audaciūs resistēre ac fortiūs pugnāre cōpērunt. Intērim milītes legiōnum duārum, quæ in novissīmo agmīne præsidio^m impedimentis fuērant, prælio nunciāto, cursu incitāto, in summo colle ab hostibus conspiciebantur. Et Titus Labiēnus, castris^c hostium potītus, et ex loco superiōre, quæ res in nostris castris gererentur,ⁿ conspicātus, decimam legiōnem subsidio^m nostris misit. Qui,^o cūm ex equitum et calōnum fugā, quo in loco res esset,ⁿ quantōque in pericūlo et castra, et legiōnes, et imperatōr ⁶ versarētur,^p cognovissent,^g ⁷ nihil ad celeritatem sibi relinqui fecerunt.

27. Horū adventu tanta rerum commutatio facta est, ut nostri, etiam qui vulneribus confecti procubuissent,^q scutis^r innixi, prælium redintegrārent;^s tum calōnes, perterritos hostes conspiciātī, etiam inermes armātis^r occurrērent; equites vero, ut turpitudīnem fugæ virtūte delērent,^t ⁸ omnibus in locis pugnæ se legionariis militibus præferrent. At hostes, etiam in extrēmā spe salutis, tantam virtutem ⁹ præstit-

^a 104, 1.^g § 140, Obs. 4.^o 39, 2.^b 90, 4, (eos.)^h § 145, R. LVIII.^p § 102, Obs. 1.^c § 120, R. XXVI. & 7, 5.ⁱ 96, 2.^q § 141, Obs. 3.^k 63, 3.^r § 112, R. IV.^d § 140, 1.^l § 140, Obs. 6.^s § 140, 1, 1st.^e § 126, R. III.^m § 114, R.^t § 140, 1, 2d.^f § 98. Ex. 4 (illi.)ⁿ § 140, 5.

ērunt, ut, cū primi eōrum cecidissent, proximī jacentibus insistērent, atque ex eōrum corporibus pugnārent: his dejectis, et coacervātis cadaveribus, ¹ qui ^a superessent, ^b ² uti ex tumulo, tela in nostros conjiçerent, ^c et pila intercepta remittērent: ^c ut non nequicquā tantæ virtutis ^d homīnes judicāri debēret ^e ausos esse ^f transire latissimum flumen, ^g ascendere altissimas ripas, subire iniquissimum locum: ^g quæ facilia ex difficillimis animi magnitudo ^h redegerat.

28. Hoc prælio facto, ^h et ⁴ prope ad interneciōnem gente ac nomīne Nerviorum redacto, ^h majōres natu, quos ⁱ unā cum puēris mulieribusque in ⁵ æstuaria ac palūdes collectos ^f dixerāmus, hāc pugnā nunciātā, ^h cū victoribus ⁶ nihil ^k impedītum, ^l victis nihil ^k tutum ^l arbitrarentur, omnium, qui supererant, consensu legātos ad Cæsarem misērunt seque ei deditērunt; et, in commemorandā ^m civitātis calamitāte, ex sexcentis ad tres senatōres, ex homīnum millibus sexaginta vix ad quingentos, qui arma ferre possent, ⁿ sese redactos esse ^f dixerunt. ⁷ Quos Cæsar, ut in misēros ac supplices usus ^o misericordiā viderētur, ^e diligentissimè conservāvit, suisque finibus atque oppīdis uti jussit, et finitimis ^p imperāvit, ut ab injuriā et maleficio se suosque prohibērent. ^q

29. Aduatūci, de quibus suprā scripsimus, cū omnibus copiis auxilio ^r Nervii venīrent, hāc pugnā ^h nunciātā, ex itinēre domum revertērunt; cunctis oppīdis castellisque desertis sua omnia in unum oppīdum, egregiè naturā munītum, contulērunt. Quod ^s cū ex omnibus in circuitu partibus ⁸ altissimas rupes despectusque habēret, unā ex parte leniter acclivis aditus, in latitudīnem ⁹ non ampliūs ducentorum pedum, relinquebātur: quem ^s locum duplici altissimo muro muniērant; tum magni pondēris ^d saxa et præacūtas trabes

^a 37, (ii.)

^e § 136, R. LII.

ⁿ § 141, Obs. 7.

^b § 140, Obs. 8.

^h 109, 2.

^o § 145, Obs. 3.

^c § 140, 1, 1st.

ⁱ § 145, Obs. 2.

^p 63, 3.

^d § 106, R. VII.

^k § 145, R. LVIII. (esse)

^q § 140, 1, 3d.

^e § 140, 1, 2d.

^l § 103, R.

^r § 114, R.

^f 98, 2, & 94, 1, 2d.

^m 112, 8.

^s 38, 1, (oppīdum.)

in muro collocârant. Ipsi erant ex Cimbris Teutonisque prog-
nâti; qui, cùm iter in provinciam nostram atque Italiam fa-
cèrent, ¹ iis impedimentis, ^a quæ secum agere ac portare non
poterant, citra flumen Rhenum depositis custodiæ ^a ex suis
ac præsidio ^a sex millia hominum reliquerunt. Hi, post eor-
um obitum, multos annos ^b a finitimis exagitati, ² cùm aliàs
bellum inferrent, aliàs illatum defenderent, consensu eorum
omnium pace factâ, hunc sibi ^a domicilio ^a locum delegê-
runt.

30. Ac primo adventu ^c exercitus nostri crebras ex oppido
excursiones faciēbant, parvulisque præliis ^d cum nostris con-
tendēbant: postea, vallo ³ pedum ^e duodēcim, in circuitu
quindēcim millium, ^e crebrisque castellis ^d circummuniti, op-
pido ^f sese continēbant. Ubi, ⁴ vineis actis, ^g aggere exstructo,
turrim ^h procul constitui vidērunt, primùm irridere ⁱ ex muro,
atque increpitare ⁱ vocibus, ^d ⁵ quò tanta machinatio ab ^k tanto
spatio institueretur ^l ? quibusnam manibus, ^d aut quibus viri-
bus, præsertim homines tantulæ staturæ ^e (nam plerumque
hominibus Gallis, ^a ⁶ præ magnitudine corporum suorum, bre-
vitas nostra contemptui est), tanti oneris ^e turrim ^h in muros
sese collocare confiderent ? ¹

31. Ubi verò ⁷ moveri, et appropinquare mœnibus ^m vidē-
runt, novâ atque inusitatâ specie ^d commoti, legatos ad Cæ-
sarem de pace miserunt, qui, ⁸ ad hunc modum locuti: “Non
se existimare ⁿ Romanos sine ope divinâ bellum gerere, ⁿ qui
⁹ tantæ altitudinis ^e machinationes tantâ celeritate promo-
vere, ¹⁰ et ex propinquitâte pugnare, possent: se ^o suâque
omnia eorum potestati permittere,” dixerunt. ¹¹ “Unum
petere ⁿ ac deprecari: si fortè, pro suâ clementiâ ac mansue-
tudine, quam ipsi ab aliis audirent, ^p statuisset, Aduatucos

^a § 114, R.

^b § 131, R. XLI.

^c § 131, R. XL.

^d § 129, R.

^e § 106, R. VII.

^f § 136, Obs. 5.

^g 109, 2.

^h § 15, 3.

ⁱ § 144, Obs. 6.

^k § 132, Obs. 5.

^l § 140, 5.

^m § 112, R. IV.

ⁿ 96, 2.

^o 31.

^p § 141, Obs. 7.

esse conservandos, ne se armis despoliaret: ^a sibi omnes ferè finitimos ^b esse inimicos, ^c ac suæ virtuti ^d invidere; a quibus se defendere, traditis armis, ^e non possent. ^f ¹ Sibi ^d præstare, si in eum casum deducerentur, ^g quamvis fortunam a Populo Romāno pati, quàm ab his ^h per cruciatum interfici, inter quos dominari consuissent.”^f

32. Ad hæc Cæsar respondit: “Se magis consuetudine ⁱ suâ, quàm merito ^l eorum, civitatem conservaturum, ^k si ² prius, quàm murum aries attigisset, ^l se dedidissent: ^l sed deditiōnis nullam esse conditionem, ^b nisi armis traditis: se ^b id, quod ³ in Nervii fecisset, ^m facturum, ^k finitimisque imperaturum, ^k ne quam deditiōis ⁿ Populi Romāni injuriam inferrent.”^a Re nunciatâ ad suos, “quæ imperarentur, facere”^o dixerunt. Armorum magnâ multitudīne ^e de muro in fossam, quæ erat ante oppidum, jactâ, sic ut propè summam ⁴ muri aggerisque altitudinem acervi armorum adæquarent; et tamen circiter parte ^e tertiâ, ut postea perspectum est, celatâ atque in oppido retentâ, portis ^e patefactis, eo die pace ^p sunt usi.

33. ⁵ Sub vespèrum Cæsar portas claudi ^q militesque ex oppido exire ^q jussit, ne quam noctu oppidani ab militibus injuriam accipèrent. Illi, antè inīto, ut intellectum est, consilio, ^e quòd, deditiōne ^e factâ, nostros præsidia deducturos, ^k aut denique indiligentiùs servaturos, ^k crediderant, partim cum his, quæ retinuerant et celaverant, armis, partim scutis ex cortice factis aut viminibus intextis, quæ subito (ut temporis exiguitas postulabat), pellibus ^s induxerant, ⁶ tertiâ vigiliâ, ^t quâ minimè arduus ad nostras munitiōnes ascensus videbatur, omnibus copiis ^u repentè ex oppido eruptiōnem fecerunt. Celeriter, ut antè Cæsar imperarat, ⁷ ignibus ^l

^a § 140, 1, 3d.^b § 126, Obs. 2.^p § 121, R. XXVI^b § 145, R. LVIII.^l § 129, R.^q 90, 4.^c § 103, Obs. 2.^k 100, 2.^r § 140, 1, 2d, &^d § 112, R. IV.^l 80, 1, & 2.

121, 3.

^e 109, 2.^m § 140, 6.^s § 125, R.^f § 141, Obs. 7,ⁿ § 123, R.^t § 131, R. XL.^g § 140, 2.^o 94, 3.^u § 136, Obs. 5, cum.

significatiōne factâ, ex proximis castellis eò concursus est,^a pugnatumque^a ab hostibus¹ ita acriter, ut^b a viris fortibus, in extrēmâ spe salutis, iniquo loco, contra eos, qui ex vallo turribusque tela jacērent,^c pugnari debuit,^d cū in unâ virtute omnis spes salutis consistēret.^e Occisis² ad hominum millibus^f quatuor, reliqui in oppidum rejecti sunt. Postridie ejus diēi, refractis portis,^f cū jam defendēret^e nemo, atque intromissis militibus nostris,³ sectionem ejus oppidi universam Cæsar vendidit. Ab his, qui emērant,⁴ capitum numerus ad eum relatus est millium quinquaginta trium.

34. Eodem tempore⁵ a Publio Crasso, quem cum legione unâ miserat ad Venetos, Unellos, Osismios, Curiosolitas, Sesuvios, Aulercos, Rhedōnes, quæ sunt mariūm civitates⁶ Oceanumque attingunt, certior factus est, omnes eas civitates in ditionem potestatemque Populi Romani esse redactas.^h

35. His rebus^f gestis, omni Galliâ^f pacatâ, tanta hujus belli ad barbâros opinio perlata est, uti ab his nationibus, quæ trans Rhenum incolērent,ⁱ mitterentur^k legati ad Cæsarem, quæ se¹ obsides datūras,^m imperata factūras, pollicerentur:¹ quasⁿ legationes Cæsar, quod in Italiam Illyricumque properabat, in ita proximâ æstate^o ad se reverti jussit. Ipse in Carnutes, Andes, Turonesque, quæ^p civitates propinquæ his locis^q erant, ubi bellum gesserat, legionibus^r in hiberna deductis, in Italiam profectus est, ob easque res, ex literis Cæsaris, ⁷dies^r quindēcim supplicatio decreta est, quod^s ante id tempus accidit nulli.^t

^a 67, 1.^b § 140, Obs. 1.^c § 141, Obs. 3.^d § 113, Obs. 1, & 88, 7.^e § 140, Obs. 4.^f 109, 2.^g § 131, R. XL.^h 98, 6.ⁱ § 141, Obs. 3.^k § 140, 1, 1st.^l § 145, R. LVIII.^m 100, 2.ⁿ 38.^o § 146, Obs. 9.^p 37, 4, & Note. 1.^q § 111, R.^r § 131, R. XLI.^s 37, Note. 3, 9.^t § 112, R. IV. & 19.

BOOK III.

GENERAL ARGUMENT.

- I. War with the Nantuates, Veragri, and Seduni—Chap. 1-6.
 II. War with the Veneti—Chap. 7-16. III. War with the Unelli—
 Chap. 17-19. IV. Expedition of Crassus into Aquitania—Chap.
 20-27. V. Expedition of Cæsar against the Morini and Menapii—
 Chap. 28-29.

1. Cum in Italiam proficisceretur Cæsar, Servium Galbam cum legiōne duodecimâ, et parte equitatus, in Nantuâtes, Verâgros, Sedunosque misit, qui ab finibus Allobrögum, et lacu Lemanno, et flumine Rhodâno, ad summas^a Alpes pertinent. Causa mittendi fuit, quod iter^b per Alpes, ¹quo, magno cum periculo ²magnisque cum portoriis, mercatores ire consuebant, patefieri^c volebat. Huic^d permisit, si opus esse arbitraretur, uti in eis locis legionem hiemandi causâ collocaret.^e Galba, secundis aliquot præliis^f factis, castellisque compluribus eorum expugnatis, missis ad eum undique legatis,^f obsidibusque datis, et pace factâ, constituit, cohortes duas in Nantuatibus collocare, et ipse^g cum reliquis ejus legionis cohortibus in vico Veragrörum, qui appellatur Octodurus,^h hiemare: quiⁱ vicus, positus in valle, non magnâ adjectâ planitie, altissimis montibus undique continetur. Cum^hhic in duas partes flumine divideretur, alteram¹ partem ejus vici Gallis^k concessit, alteram,¹ vacuum ab illis relictam, cohortibus ad hiemandum attribuit. ⁴Eum locum vallo fossaque munivit.

2. Cum dies hibernorum complures transissent, frumentumque eò comportari^c jussisset, subito per exploratores certior factus est, ex eâ parte vici, quam Gallis concesserat, omnes^b noctu discessisse,^m montesque, qui impenderent, a

^a 17, 2.

^b § 145. R. LVIII.

^c 94, 3.

^d 63.

^e § 140, 1, 3d.

^f 109, 2.

^g 32, 3, (constituit.)

^h § 103, R.

¹ § 38, 2.

^k § 123, R.

¹ 27, 10, Obs.

^m 98, 2.

maximâ multitudîne Sedunorum et Veragrorum tenêri.^a Id aliquot de causis accidêrat, ut subitò Galli belli renovandi^b legionisque opprimendæ^c consilium capêrent :^c primùm, quòd legiõnem, ¹ neque eam plenissimam, detractis cohortibus duâbus, et compluribus^d ² singillatim, qui commeatus petendi causâ missi erant, absentibus, propter paucitatem despiciebant: tum etiam, quòd, propter iniquitatem loci, cum ipsi ex montibus in vallem ³ decurrerent,^e et tela conjicerent,^e ⁴ ne primum quidem posse impetum sustinere^f existimabant. ⁵ Accedebat, quòd suos ab se liberos^g abstractos^h obsidum nomine dolêbant: et Romanos^g non solum itinerum causâ, sed etiam perpetuæ possessionis, culmina Alpium occupare conari, et ea loca finitimæ provinciæ adjungere, ⁶ sibiⁱ persuasum habebant.

3, His nuntiis acceptis, Galba, cum neque opus hibernorum, munitionesque plenè essent perfectæ, ⁷ neque de frumento reliquòque commeatu satis esset provisum,^k quòd, deditione factâ, obsidibusque acceptis, ⁸ nihil de bello timendum existimaverat, consilio celeriter convocato, sententias exquirere cœpit. Quo^l in consilio, cum tantum repentini periculi præter opinionem accidisset, ac jam omnia ferè superiora loca multitudîne^m armatorum complèta conspicerentur, ⁹ neque subsidio^o veniri, neque commeatus supportari interclûsis itineribus^p possent, prope jam desperatâ salutē,^p nonnullæ hujusmodi sententiæ dicebantur, ut, impedimentis^p relictis, eruptione factâ, iisdem itineribus,^q quibus^q eò pervenissent, ad salutem contendèrent.ⁿ ¹⁰ Majori tamen parti^r placuit, hoc^p reservato ad extrêmum^s consilio, intèrim rei eventum experiri et^t castra defendere.

^a 96, 2.^g § 145, R. LVIII.^o § 136, Obs. 5. cum.^b 112, 5.^h 98, 2.^p 109, 2.^c § 140, 1, 4th.ⁱ § 126, R. III.^q § 129, R.^d 19, (militibus.)^k 65.^r § 113, R.^e § 140, Obs. 3, & § 45, II. 1.^l 38.^s 19, (casum.)^f 97, 7.^m § 126, R. V.^t § 149, R.ⁿ § 140, 1, 1st.

4. Brevi spatio interjecto, vix ut his rebus,^a quas constituissent,^b ¹ collocandis ^c atque administrandis ^c tempus darètur,^d hostes ex omnibus partibus, signo dato, decurrere,^e lapides ² gæsæque in vallum conicere:^e nostri primo ³ integris viribus fortiter repugnare,^e neque ullum ⁴ frustra telum ex loco superiore mittere^e: ut ^f quæque pars castrorum nudata defensoribus ^g premi videbatur, eò occurrere,^e et auxilium ferre:^e ⁵ sed hòc superari,^e quòd diuturnitate pugnae hostes defessi praelio^h excedebant, alii integris viribus succedebant: quarum rerum a nostris propter ⁶ paucitatem fieri nihil poterat; ac ⁷ non modò ⁱ defesso ^k ex pugna excedendi, sed ne saucio ^k quidem ejus loci, ubi constitèrat, relinqueretur,^l ac sui recipiendi,^l facultas dabatur.

5. Cùm jam ampliùs horis^m sex continenter pugnaretur, ac non solùm vires, sed etiam tela, nostrisⁿ deficerent,^o atque hostes acriùs instarent, languidioribusque nostris^p vallum scindere, et fossas complere, cœpissent,^o resque esset^o jam ⁸ ad extrēmum perducta casum, Publius Sextius Baculus, primi pili centurio ⁹ quem^q Nervico praelio compluribus confectum vulneribus diximus, et item Caius Volusenus, tribunus militum, vir et consilii^r magni et virtutis, ad Galbam accurrunt, atque unam esse spem salutis docent, si eruptione facta, extrēmum auxilium experirentur. Itaque,¹⁰ convocatis centurionibus, celeriter milites certiōres facit, paulisper intermittērent ^s praelium, ac tantummòdo tela missa exciperent,^s seque ex labore reficerent; pòst, dato signo, ex castris erumpērent,^s atque omnem spem salutis in virtute ponērent.^s

6. Quod jussi sunt, faciunt; ac, subito¹¹ omnibus portis eruptione facta, neque cognoscendi, quid fieret, neque sui¹

^a § 114, R, (*sibi*.)^g § 126, R. V.ⁿ § 112, R. V.^b § 141, Obs. 8.^h § 136, R. LII.^o § 140, Obs. 4.^c 112, 6.ⁱ § 134, Obs. 5.^p 19, & 110.^d § 140, 1, 1st, (*ita*.)^k 19, & § 126, R. III.^q 91, 4.^e § 144, Obs. 6.^l 112, 5.^r § 106, R. VII.^f § 140, Obs. 1.^m § 120, R.^s § 140, Obs. 5.

colligendi, hostibus^a facultatem relinquunt. Ita commutata fortunā,^b eos, qui in spem potiundorum^c castrorum venerant, undique circumventos interficiunt, et, ¹ex hominum millibus amplius^d triginta, quem^e numerum barbarorum ad castra venisse constabat,² plus^d tertiā parte interfectā, reliquos perterritos in fugam conjiciunt, ac ne in locis quidem superioribus consistere patiuntur. Sic, omnibus hostium copiis^b ³fusis, armisque exutis, se in castra munitionesque suas recipiunt. Quo^f praelio facto, quod saepius fortunam tentare Galba nolēbat, atque ⁴alio^g sese in hiberna consilio venisse^h meminērat, aliis^g occurrisse^h rebus vidērat, maxime frumenti commeatusque inopiā permotus, postero dieⁱ omnibus ejus vici aedificiis^b incensis, in Provinciam reverti contendit; ac, nullo hoste prohibente, aut iter demorante, incolūmem legiōnem in Nantuātes, inde in Allobrogas, perduxit, ibique hiemavit.

8. His rebus^b gestis, cum^h omnibus de causis Cæsar pacatam Galliam existimāret, superatis Belgis,^b expulsis Germanis, victis in Alpibus Sedūnis, atque ita, initā hieme,^b in Illyricum profectus esset, quod eas quoque nationes^k adire, et regiones cognoscere, volēbat, subitum bellum in Galliā coortum est. Ejus belli hæc fuit causa. Publius Crassus adolescens cum legiōne septimā proximus^l mare¹ Oceānum in Andibus hiemarat. Is, quod in his locis inopia frumenti erat,⁷præfectos tribunosque militum complures in finitimas civitates, frumenti commeatusque petendi^c causā, dimisit: quo in numero erat Titus Terrasidius, missus in Esubios; Marcus Trebius Gallus in Curiosolitas; Quintus Velanius, cum Tito Silio, in Venetos.

8. Hujus est civitatis longè amplissima auctoritas omnis oræ^m maritimæ regionum earum; quod et naves habent Ve-

^a § 123, R.

^b 109, 2.

^c 112, 5.

^d § 120, Obs. 3,

^e 37, 2d, & Note. 1.

^f 38, 3.

^g § 98, Obs. 12.

^h 98, 2.

ⁱ § 131, R. XL.

^k § 136, R. LII.

^l § 136, Obs. 5, (ad.)

^m § 107, R. X. Exp.

nēti plurimas, quibus in Britanniam navigāre consuērunt, et ¹scientiā^a atque usu nauticarum rerum reliquos^b antecēdunt, et, ²in magno impētū maris atque aperto, paucis portibus interjectis, quos tenent ³ipsi,^c omnes ferē, qui ⁴eo mari uti consuērant, habent ⁵vectigāles. Ab iis fit initium retinendi^d Siliū atque Velanii, quod per eos suos se obsides, quos Crasso dedissent, recuperatūros^e existimābant. Horum auctoritate finitimi adducti (⁶ut sunt Gallōrum subita^f et repentina consilia), eādem de causā Trebium Terrasidiumque retinent, et, celeriter missis legātis,^g per suos principes inter se conjurant, nihil nisi communi consilio actūros,^e eundemque ⁷omnis fortunæ exitum esse latūros;^e reliquasque civitates sollicitant, ut in eā libertate, quam a maioribus acceperant, permanēre, quā^h Romanōrum servitutem perferre, mallent.ⁱ Omni orā^g maritimā celeriter ad suam^k sententiam perductā, communem legationem ad Publium Crassum mittunt, “ si velit ⁸suos recipere, obsides sibi remittat.”

9. Quibus de rebus Cæsar ab Crasso certior factus, quod ipse^e abērat longiūs, ⁹naves intērim longas ædificārīⁱ in flumine Ligēri, quod influit in Oceānum, ¹⁰remiges ex Provinciā institui,ⁱ nautas gubernatoresque comparārīⁱ jubet. His rebus^g celeriter administrātis, ipse,^e cū primū per anni tempus potuit, ad exercitū contendit. Venēti, reliquæque item civitates, cognito Cæsaris adventu,^g simul quod, quantum in se^m facinus admisissent,ⁿ intelligēbant (legātos, quod^o nomen apud omnes nationes sanctum inviolatumque semper fuisset, retentos ab se et in vincula coniectos), ¹¹pro magnitudine periculi bellum parāre, et maxime ea, quæ ad usum navium pertinent, providere instituunt; ¹²hoc majore spe, quod multū naturā^p loci confidēbant. ¹³Pedestria

^a § 128, R.^g 109, 2.^m § 28, Foot note, †^b § 116, Obs. 4.^h § 149, Obs. 1.ⁿ § 140, 5.^c 32, 3.ⁱ § 140, 1, 3d, &^o 37, 2d, 4, &^d 112, 5.

§ 137, Obs. 1.

Note. 1.

^e 100, 2.^k 30, 2.^p § 121, Obs. 2.^f § 103, Obs. 2.^l 90, 1.

esse itinēra concīsa^a æstuariis, ¹ navigatiōnem^d impeditam^a propter inſcientiam locōrum paucitatemque portuum sciēbant: ² neque^b nostros exercitus^d propter frumenti inopiam diutius apud se morārī posse, confidēbant: ac jam, ut omnia contra ³ opiniōnem accidērent,^c tamen se^d plurimum navibus posse: ^e Romānos^d neque ullam facultātem habēre^e navium, neque eōrum locōrum, ubi bellum gestūri essent,^f vada, portus, insūlas novisse: ^g ac ⁴ longē aliam esseⁱ navigatiōnem in conclūso mari, atque^h in vastissīmo atque apertissīmo Oceāno, perspiciebant. His inītis consiliis, oppīda muniunt, frumenta ex agris in oppīda comportant, naves in Venetiam, ubi Cæsārem primū bellum gestūrū^k constābat, quā^l plurimas possunt, cogunt. Socios sibi ad id bellum Osis-mios, Lexovios, Nannētes, Ambiliātos, Morīnos, Diablintes, Menapios adsciscunt: auxilia ex Britannīā, quæ contra eas regiōnes posīta est, arcessunt.

10. ⁵ Erant hæc difficultātes belli gerendi, quas supra ostendīmus; sed multa^m Cæsārem tamen ad id bellum incitābant: ⁶ injuriæⁿ retentōrum^o equitū Romanōrum; ⁷ rebellio facta post deditiōnem; defectioⁿ datis obsidibus; tot civitātum conjuratio; ⁿ in primis, ⁸ ne, hāc parte neglectā, reliquæ natiōnes ⁹ idem^p sibi licēre arbitrarentur. Itāque cū intelligēret, omnes fere Gallos^d ¹⁰ novis rebus^q studēre,ⁱ et, ad bellum mobiliter celeriterque excitārī,^e omnes autem homīnes ¹¹ natūrā libertātī^q studēre, et ¹² conditiōnem servitūtis odisse; priusquam plures civitātes conspirārent,^r partiendum^d sibi^s ac latiūs distribuendum exercitū putāvit.

11. Itāque Titum Labiēnum legātum in Trevīros, qui proximi Rheno flumīni sunt, cum equitātu mittit. Huic mandat, Remos reliquosque Belgas adeat, atque in officio contineat;

^a 98, 2.^g § 84, 3.ⁿ § 97, R.^b § 93, 1, (and—not.)^h § 149, Obs. 6.^o § 146, Obs. 2.^c § 140, 3.ⁱ 96, Exc. I. 9.^p § 113, Obs. 4. *facere*^d § 145, R. LVIII.^k 100, 2.^q § 112, R. V.^e 96, 2.^l § 134, Obs. 6, 3d.^r § 140, 4.^f § 140, 5, & § 79. 8.^m 19, (negotia.)^s § 147, R. & 113. 5

Germanosque, qui ¹ auxilio ^a a Belgis arcessiti ^b dicebantur, si per vim navibus flumen transire conentur, prohibeat. ^c Publium Crassum cum cohortibus legionariis duodēcim, et magno numero equitātūs, in Aquitaniam proficisci jubet, ne ex his nationibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur, ^d ac tantæ nationes conjungantur. ^d Quintum Titurium Sabīnum legātum cum legionibus tribus in Unellos, Curiosolitas, Lexoviosque mittit, ^e qui ^e eam manum distinendam ^f curet. Decimum Brutum adolescentem classi, Gallicisque navibus, quas ex Pictonibus et Santōnis reliquisque pacātis regionibus convenire jussērat, præficit, et, cū primūm possit, ^g in Venētos proficisci jubet. Ipse eō pedestribus copiis contendit.

12. Erant ejusmodi ferè ³ situs oppidōrum, ut, posita ⁴ in extrēmis lingulis promontoriisque, neque pedibus ¹ aditum habērent, ^h ⁵ cū ex alto se æstus incitavisset, ^g quod bis accidit semper horarum viginti quatuor spatio, neque navibus, ⁱ quod, rursus ⁶ minuente æstu, ⁷ naves in vadis afflicterentur. ^k Ita ⁸ utrāque re ¹ oppidōrum oppugnatio impediēbatur; ac, si quando magnitudine ¹ opēris fortē superāti, extrūso mari ⁹ aggēre ¹ ac molibus, atque his ferme oppīdi mēnibus ^m adæquātis, suis fortūnis ⁿ desperāre cōpērant, magno numero navium ¹⁰ appulso, cujus rei summam facultatem habēbant, sua deportābant omnia, seque in proxima oppīda recipiēbant. Ibi se rursus iisdem opportunitatibus ¹ loci defendēbant. Hæc eo facilius magnam partem ^o æstātis faciēbant, quod nostræ naves tempestatibus ¹ detinebantur; summāque erat vasto atque aperto mari, ¹¹ magnis æstibus, ¹ raris ac prope nullis portibus, ¹ difficultas navigandi.

13. Namque ipsōrum naves ad hunc modum ¹² factæ armatæque erant. Carinæ ¹³ aliquanto planiōres, quā ^p nos-

^a § 114, R. & Obs. 4. ^f 108, 4.

^m § 126, R. III.

^b 92, 2.

^g § 140, Obs. 4.

ⁿ § 136, Obs. 5.

^c § 140, 1, 3d.

^h § 140, 1, 1st.

^o § 131, R. XLI.

^d § 140, 1, 2d.

ⁱ § 123, R.

^p § 149, R. Sup. ca-

^e § 141, Obs. 2, 4th, and 40.

^k § 139, 2, & 76, 2.

rīnæ

¹ § 129, R.

trārum navium, quo facilius vada ac decessum æstus¹ excipere possent: ^a proræ admōdum erectæ, atque item puppes, ad magnitudinem fluctuum tempestatumque accommodatæ: naves totæ factæ ex robore,^b ² ad quamvis vim et contumeliam perferendam: ^c transtra ³ pedalibus in latitudinem trabibus^b confixa clavis ferreis, ⁴ digiti pollicis crassitudine: ^d anchoræ, pro funibus, ferreis catēnis revinctæ: ^e pelles pro velis, alutæque tenuiter confectæ, sive ^e propter lini inopiam atque ejus usûs inscientiam, sive eo,^f quod est magis verisimile, quod tantas tempestates ⁵ Oceani tantosque impetus ventorum sustineri,^h ac tanta onera^g navium ⁶ regi^h velis non satis commode, arbitrabantur. ⁷ Cum his navibus nostræ classiⁱ ejusmodi congressus erat, ut unâ celeritate^k et pulsu remorum præstaret,⁸ reliqua, pro loci naturâ, pro vi tempestatum, illis^l essent aptiora et accommodatiora: ⁹ neque enim his^m nostræ rostroⁿ nocere poterant; tanta in eis erat firmitudo: neque propter altitudinem facile telum adjiciebatur; et eâdem de causâ minus commode ¹⁰ copulisⁿ continebantur. Accedebat, ut, cum ¹¹ sævire ventus cœpisset et se vento dedissent, et^o tempestatem ferrent facilius, et^o in vadis consistērent^p tutius, et, ab æstu derelictæ, nihil^q saxa et cautes timērent: quarum rerum omnium nostris navibus^r ¹² casus erant extimescendi.

14. Compluribus expugnatis oppidis, Cæsar, ubi intellexit, frustra tantum laborem^s sumi, neque hostium fugam⁸ capitis oppidis reprimi, ¹³ neque his noceri posse,^s statuit expectandum classem. Quæ ubi convēnit, ac primum ab hostibus visa est, circiter ducentæ et viginti naves eorum ¹⁴ paratissimæ, atque omni genereⁿ armorum ornatissimæ, profectæ ex portu, nostris^l adversæ constitērunt: neque satis

^a § 140, 1.^b § 128, Obs. 2.^c 112, 7.^d § 106, R. VII. & 6, 1.^e 124, 3.^f § 129, R.^g § 145, R. LVIII.^h 94, 3.ⁱ § 112, R. II.^k § 128, R.^l § 111, R.^m § 112, R. V.ⁿ § 129, R.^o 124, 1.^p § 140, 1, 4th.^q § 122, Obs. 6.^r § 126, Obs. 3.^s § 113, R. & Obs. 1.

¹Bruto,^a qui classi^b præerat, vel tribūnis^a militum centurionibusque, quibus^c singulæ naves erant attributæ, constabat, quid agerent,^d aut ²quam rationem pugnae, insisterent.^d Roſtro^e enim noceri non posse^f cognoverant; turribus autem excitatis, tamen has altitudo puppium ex barbâris navibus superabat; ³ut neque ex inferiôre loco satis commodè tela adjici possent,^g et missa ab Gallis ⁴gravius acciderent. Una erat magno usui^h res præparata a nostris, ⁵falcesⁱ præacutæ, insertæ affixæque longuriis,^c non absimili^k formâ^l muralium falcium.^m His^e cum funes, qui antennis ad malos destinabant,⁷comprehensi adductique erant, navigio remis^e incitatio prærumpebatur. Quibusⁿ abscissis, antennæ necessario concidēbant, ut, cum omnis Gallicis navibus^o spes in velis armamentisque consisteret, his ereptis, omnis usus navium uno tempore eriperetur.^g Reliquum erat certamen positum in virtute, quâ nostri milites facîle superabant, atque eo magis, quod in conspectu Cæsaris atque omnis exercitus res gerebatur, ut nullum paulo fortius factum ⁸latere posset:^g omnes enim colles ac loca superiôra, unde erat propinquus despectus in mare, ab exercitu tenebantur.

15. Dejectis, ut diximus, antennis, ⁹cum^p singulas^q binæ ac ternæ naves circumsteterant, milites summâ vi^e ¹⁰transcendere in hostium naves contendebant. Quod^r postquam barbâri fieri animadvertērunt, expugnâtis compluribus navibus, cum ei rei^c nullum reperirētur auxilium, fugâ^e salutem petere contendērunt: ac, jam conversis in eam partem navibus, ¹¹quò ventus ferēbat, tanta subito malacia ac tranquillitas, extitit, ut se ex loco movere non possent. Quæ quidem res ad negotium conficiendum maxime fuit opportuna: nam singulas^q nostri consecrati expugnavērunt, ut perpaucae

^a § 113, R.^s § 140, 1, 2d.^m § 111, Obs. 2.^b § 112, R. I.^h § 114, R. & Obs. 4.ⁿ 38, 5.^c § 126, R. III.ⁱ § 97, R.^o § 110, Obs. 1, R.^d § 140, 5.^k 16, 2.^p § 140, Obs. 3.^e § 129, R.^l § 106, R. VII. or^q 26.^f § 113, Obs. 1.^g § 123, R.^r § 145, R. & 38, 4.

ex omni numēro, noctis interventu, ad terram pervenērint, cūm^a ab horā ferē quartā usque ad solis occāsū pugnārētur.

16. Quo^b praelio bellum Venetōrum totiusque orae maritimae confectum est. Nam, cūm omnis juvenus, omnes etiam¹ graviōris aetātis,^c in quibus aliquid consilii^d aut dignitātis fuit, eō convenērant; tum, navium quod^e ubique fuērat, unum in locum coēgērunt: quibus^f amissis, reliqui, neque quō se recipērent^g neque quemadmōdum oppida defendērent,^h habēbant. Itaque se suaque omnia Cæsari dedidērunt. ² In quos eo gravius Cæsar vindicandū^b statuit, quo diligentius in reliquum tempus a barbāris jus legatōrum conservārētur.ⁱ Itaque, omni senātū^f necātō, reliquos³ sub coronā vendidit.

17. Dum hæc in Venētis geruntur, Quintus Titurius Sabīnus cum iis copiis, quas a Cæsare accepērat, in fines Unelōrum pervēnit. His præerat Viridōvix, ac summam imperii tenēbat eārum omnium civitātum, quæ defecērunt, ex quibus exercitum magnasque copias coēgērunt. ⁴ Atque his paucis diēbus^k Aulerci Eburovīces, Lexovīique, senātū^f suo interfecto, quōd auctōres belli esse nolēbant, portas clausērunt seque cum Viridovīce conjunxērunt; magnaque præterea multitudo undique ex Galliā⁵ perditōrum hominū latronumque convenērant, quos spes prædandi, studiumque bellandi, ab agriculturā et quotidiāno labōre revocābat. Sabīnus idoneo¹ omnibus rebus loco^m castris sese tenēbat, cūm Viridōvix contra eum duōrum millium spatio consedisset, quotidieque productis copiis^f pugnandi potestatem faceret;ⁿ ut¹ jam non solūm hostibusⁿ in contemtiōnem Sabīnus venīret,^o sed etiam nostrōrum militū vocibus⁶ nonnihil carperētur: tantamque opiniōnem timōris præbuit, ut jam ad vallum castrōrum hostes accedēre audērent.^p Id eā de causā faciēbat,

^a § 140, Obs. 3.

^b 38, 9, & § 129, R.

^c § 106, R. VII.

^d § 106, R. VIII.

^e § 106, Obs. 10.

^f 109, 2.

^g § 140, 5

^h 113, 5.

ⁱ § 140, 1.

^k § 131, R. XLI.

¹ 16.

^m § 136, Obs. 5, (in.)

ⁿ § 110, Obs. 1, R.

^o § 140, 1, 2d.

^p § 140, 1, 1st.

quòd cum tantâ multitudīne hostium, præsertim ¹eo^a absente, qui summam imperii tenēret,^b nisi æquo loco, aut opportunitate aliquâ datâ, legâto^c dimicandum non existimābat.

18. ²Hâc confirmâtâ opiniōne timōris, idoneum quendam hominem et callidum delēgit, Gallum, ex his, quos auxilii causâ secum habēbat. Huic ^d magnis præmiis pollicitationibusque persuādet, uti ad hostes transeat;^e et, quid fieri velit,^f edōcet. Qui,^g ubi pro perfūgâ ad eos venit, timōrem Romanōrum ³propōnit: “quibus angustiis^h ipse Cæsar a Venētis premātur,”ⁱ docet: ⁴neque longiùs abesse, quin proximâ nocte Sabīnus clam ex castris exercitum educat,ⁱ et ad Cæsarem auxilii ferendi causâ proficiscātur.”^j Quod^k ubi auditum est, conclamant omnes, occasiōnem negotii bene gerendi amittendam non esse,^l ⁵ad castra iri oportere. Multæ res ad hoc consilium Gallos hortabantur: superiorum diērum Sabīni cunctatio,^m ⁶perfūgæ confirmatio, inopia cibariōrum, cui reiⁿ parum diligenter ab iis erat provīsum, spes Venetīci belli, et quòd ferè libenter homīnes id, quod volunt, credunt. His rebus^h adducti, non priùs Viridovicem reliquosque duces ex concilio dimittunt, quàm ab his sit^o concessum, arma uti capiant^p et ad castra contendant. Quare concessâ, læti, ut explorâtâ victoriâ, sarmentis virgultisque collectis, ⁷quibus^q fossas Romanōrum compleant,^q ad castra pergunt.

19. Locus erat castrōrum edītus, et paulatim ab imo acclīvis circīter passus^r mille. Huc magno cursu contendērunt, ut ⁸quàm minīmum spatii^s ad se colligendos armandosque Romānis darētur, ⁹exanimatīque pervenērunt. Sabīnus, suos hortātus, cupientibus signum dat. Impeditis hostibus propter ea, quæ ferēbant, onēra, subitò duābus portis erup-

^a 110.^b § 141, Obs. 8.^c § 147, R. & 113.^d § 123, R. & 63.^e § 140, 1, 3d.^f § 140, 5.^g 39, 5.^h § 129, R.ⁱ § 140, 3.^k 38.^l 108, 4.^m § 97, R.ⁿ § 113, R.^o § 140, 4.^p § 140, 1, 4th.^q § 141, Obs. 2. 4th.^r § 132, R. XLII.^s § 106, R. VIII.

tiōnem fieri jubet. Factum est opportunitate loci, hostium inscientiâ ac defatigatiōe, virtute militum, superiorum pugnarum exercitatiōe, ut ne unum quidem nostrorum impetum ferrent,^a ac statim terga vertērent. Quos^b impeditos¹ integris viribus^c milites nostri consecuti, magnum numerum eorum occiderunt; reliquos equites consecuti, paucos, qui ex fugâ evaserant, reliquerunt. Sic, uno tempore, et^e de navali pugna² Sabinus, et de Sabini victoriâ Cæsar certior factus; civitatesque omnes se statim Titurio dediderunt. Nam, ut^f ad bella suscipienda^g Gallorum alacer ac promptus est animus, sic mollis ac³ minimè resistens ad calamitates perferendas^g mens eorum est.

20. Eodem ferè tempore, Publius Crassus, cum in Aquitaniam pervenisset, quæ pars,^h ut ante dictum est, et regionum latitudine,ⁱ et multitudinēⁱ hominum, ⁴ex tertiâ parte Galliæ est æstimanda, cum intelligeret in his locis sibi^k bellum gerendum, ubi paucis antè annis Lucius Valerius Præconinus, legatus, exercitu pulso, interfectus esset,¹ atque unde Lucius Manilius, proconsul, impedimentis amissis profugisset,¹ ⁵non mediocrem sibi diligentiam^m adhibendamⁿ intelligēbat. Itaque re frumentariâ provîsâ, auxiliis equitatumque comparato,^o multis præterea viris fortibus Tolosâ,^p Carcasone, et Narbone, quæ sunt civitates Galliæ Provinciæ, finitimæ his regionibus, nominatim evocatis, in Sotiatum fines exercitum introduxit. Cujus adventu cognito, Sotiates, magnis copiis coactis, equitatumque, ⁶quo plurimum valēbant, in itinere agmen nostrum adorti, primum equestre prælium commiserunt: deinde, equitatu suo pulso, atque insequentibus nostris, subito pedestres copias, quas in convalle in insidiis collocaverant, ostenderunt. Hi, nostros disiectos adorti, prælium renovarunt.

^a § 140, 1, 4th.^f 124, 20.¹ § 141, Obs. 8.^b 38.^g 112, 7.^m § 145, R.^c § 129, R.^h 37, 2d, 4, Note. 1.ⁿ 108, 4.^d 105.ⁱ § 128, R.^o § 98, Obs. 4.^e 124, 1.^k § 147, R. LXI.^p § 136, R. LII.

21. Pugnātum est diu atque acriter, cū Sotiātes, superioribus victoriis^a freti, in suā^b virtute totius Aquitaniæ salutem positam putarent;^c nostri autem, quid sine imperatore, et sine reliquis legionibus, adolescentulo duce,^d efficere possent, perspicere cuperent.^e Tandem, confecti vulneribus, hostes terga vertere.^e Quorum^f magno numero interfecto, Crassus ex itinere oppidum Sotiātum oppugnare cepit. Quibus^g fortiter resistentibus, vineas turresque egit. Illi, aliās eruptione tentatā, aliās cuniculis ad aggērem^h vineasque actis (¹cujus rei^h sunt longē peritissimi Aquitani, propterea quod multis locis apud eos ²ærariæ secturæ sunt), ubi diligentiam nostrorum ³nihilⁱ his rebus profici posse^k intellexerunt, legatos ad Crassum mittunt, seque in deditiōnem ut recipiat petunt. Quā^f re impetratā, arma tradere jussi, faciunt.

22. Atque, in eā re omnium nostrorum intentis animis, aliā ex parte oppidi Adcantuannus, qui summam imperii tenebat, cum sexcentis devotis, quos illi soldurios appellant (⁴quorum hæc est conditio, uti omnibus in vitā commodis^l unā cum his fruantur,^m quorum se amicitiae^o dediderint; ⁿsi quid iis per vim accidat, aut eundem casum unā ferant,^m aut ⁵sibi^o mortem consciscant: ^mneque adhuc hominum memoriā repertus est quisquam, qui, eo interfecto, cuius se amicitiae^o devovisset, mortem recusaret),^p cum iis Adcantuannus, eruptionem facere conatus, clamore ab eā parte munitiōnis sublato, cū ad arma milites concurrissent,^c vehementerque ibi pugnātum esset,^c repulsus in oppidum, tamen uti eādē deditiōnis conditione^l uteretur,^g ab Crasso impetravit.

23. Armis obsidibusque acceptis, Crassus in fines Vocationis et Tarusatum profectus est. Tum verò ⁶barburi commoti, quod oppidum,^r ⁷et naturā^s loci et manu^s munitum,

^a § 119, R.^g 38, & 109.ⁿ § 141, Obs. 8.^b 30, 2.^h § 107, R. IX.^o § 123, R.^c § 140, Obs. 4.ⁱ § 128, Exc.^p § 141, Obs. 3.^d 110, 1.^k § 145, Obs. 3, (se.)^q § 140, 1, 3d.^e § 144, Obs. 6.^l § 121, R. XXVI.^r § 145, R.^f 38.^m § 140, 1, 1st.^s § 129, R.

paucis diēbus,^a quibus^a eò ventum erat,^b expugnātum^c cognovērant, legātos quoquoersus dimittēre, conjurāre, obsīdes inter se dare, copias parāre cōpērunt. Mittuntur etiam ad eas civitatē legāti, quæ sunt ¹citeriōris Hispaniæ,^d finitīmæ Aquitaniæ:^e inde auxilia ducesque arcessuntur. Quorum^f adventu magnā cum auctoritatē, et magnā cum homīnum multitudīne, bellum gerēre conantur. Duces verò ii deliguntur, qui unā cum Quinto Sertorio omnes annos^g fuērant, summamque scientiam rei militāris habēre existimabantur. Hi consuetudinē Popūli Romāni ²loca capēre, castra munīre, commeatibus nostros intercludēre instituunt. Quod^f ubi Crassus animadvertit, suas copias propter exiguitatem non ³facilē didūci,^h hostem et vagārīⁱ et vias obsidēreⁱ et castris satis præsīdii relinquēre,ⁱ ob eam causam minūs commōdē frumentum commeatumque sibi^k supportārī;^h ⁴in dies hostium numērum augēri; non cunctandum existimāvit, quin pugnā decertāret.^l ⁵Hāc re ad consilium delātā, ubi omnes ⁶idem sentīreⁱ intellexit, postērum diem pugnae constituit.

24. Primā luce, productis omnibus copiis, ⁷duplīci acie institūtā, ⁸auxiliis in mediam aciem coniectis, quid hostes consilii^m capērentⁿ expectābat. Illi, etsi propter multitudinem, et vetērem belli gloriam, paucitatemque nostrōrum, se tutō dimicatūros^o existimābant, tamen tutius^p esse arbitrabantur, obsessis viis, comineātu interclūso, sine ullo vulnēre victoriā potīri: et, si propter inopiam rei frumentariæ Romāni sese recipēre cōpissent,^q impedītos in agmīne et sub sarcīnis, inferiōres anīmo,^r adorīri cogitābant. Hoc consilio probāto ab ducibus, productis Romanōrum copiis, sese castris^s tenēbant. Hāc re perspectā Crassus, ⁹cū suā cunctatiōne atque opiniōne timōris hostes nostros milītes alacri-

^a § 131, R. XLI. Obs. 3. ^g § 131, R. XLI.

^b 67, 5, Note.

^h 94, 3.

ⁿ § 140, 5.

^c 98, 2.

ⁱ 96, 2.

^o 100, 1.

^d § 108, R. XII.

^k § 126, R. III.

^p § 98, Obs. 6.

^e § 111, R.

^l § 140, 3.

^q § 140, 2.

^f 38.

^m § 106, R. VIII.

^r § 128, R.

^s § 136. Obs. 5, (in.)

ōres ad pugnandum^a effecissent;^b atque omnium voces audirentur,^b expectārī^c diutius non oportēre, quin^d ad castra irētūr;^c cohortātus suos, omnībus cupientībus, ad hostium castra contendit.

25. Ibi cūm alii^e fossas complērent,^b alii^e multis telis coniectis, defensōres vallo^f munitionibusque depellērent, auxiliāresque, quibus^g ad pugnam non multū Crassus confidēbat, lapidībus^h telisque subministrandis,ⁱ et ad aggērem cespitibus comportandis, speciem atque opiniōnem pugnantium^k prābērent;^b cūm item ab hostibus^l constanter ac non timidē pugnārētūr,^b telāque ex loco superiōre missa non frustra accidērent;^b equītes, circumītis hostium castris, Crasso renunciāverunt, non eādē esse diligentīā ab^m decumānā portā castra^l munīta, facilemque adītum habēre.

26. Crassus, equitū prāfectos cohortātus, ut magnis prāmiis^h pollicitationibusque suos excitārent, quid fiēri velīt ostendit. Illi, ut erat imperātum, eductis quatuor cohortibus, quā, prāsidiō^m castris^m relictā, ³ intrītā ab labōre erant, et ⁴ longiōreⁿ itinēre^h circumductis, ne ex hostium castris conspīci possent,^o omnium oculis mentibusque ad pugnam intentis, celerīter ad eas, quas dixīmus, munitiones pervenērunt, atque, his prorūtis, priūs in hostium castris constitērunt, quā^p planē ab iis vidēri,^r aut, quid rei^p gererētūr,^q cognosci^r posset. Tum vero, clamōre ab eā parte audīto, nostri redintegrātis virībus,^h quod^s plerumque in spe victoriā accidēre consuevit, acriūs impugnāre cōpērunt. Hostes undīque circumventi, desperātis omnībus rebus,^t se per munitiones dejicēre et fugā^h salūtem petēre ⁶ intendērunt. Quos^u equitātus apertissimis campis^v consecrātus,

^a § 147, Obs. 4.^b § 129, R.^p § 106, R. VIII.^b § 140, Obs. 4.ⁱ § 147, R. LXII.^q § 140, 5.^c 67, Note.^k 19, (*militum.*)^r 87.^d § 140, 3.^l § 145, R. LVIII.^s 37, 9, Note. 3.^e § 98, Obs. 12.^m § 114, R.^t 109, 2.^f § 136, R. LII.ⁿ § 120, Obs. 5.^u 38.^g § 112, R. V.^o § 140. 1, 2d.^v § 136, Obs. 5, (*in.*)

ex millium quinquaginta numëro, quæ^a ex Aquitaniâ Cantabrisque convenisse^b constābat, vix quartā parte relictā¹ multā^c nocte^d se in castra recēpit.

27. Hāc audītā pugnā,^e magna pars Aquitaniæ sese Crasso^f dedīdit, obsidesque ultro misit: quo^g in numëro fuērunt Tarbelli, Bigerriōnes, Preciāni, Vocātes, Tarusātes, Elusātes, Garītes, Ausci, Garumni, Sibuzātes, Cocosātes. Paucæ ultimæ natiōnes, anni tempōre^h confīsæ, quòd hiems subērat, hoc facere neglexērunt.

28. Eōdem ferè tempōre^d Cæsar, etsi prope exacta jam æstas erat, tamen, quòd, omni Galliā¹ pacatā, Morīni Menapiique² superērunt, qui^k in armis essent,^k neque¹ ad eūm unquam legātos de pace misissent,^k arbitrātus, id bellum celerīter confīci posse, eò exercitum adduxit: ³qui longè aliā ratiōne, ac reliqui^m Galli, bellum agere instituērunt. Nam quòd intelligēbant, maxīmas natiōnes,ⁿ quæ prælio contendissent,^o pulsas^b superatasque esse,^b ⁴continentesque silvas ac palūdes habēbant, eò se suāque omnia contulērunt. Ad quarum^g initium silvārum cūm Cæsar pervenisset,^p castrāque munīre instituisset,^p neque¹ hostis intērim visus esset,^p dispersis in opère nostris,ⁱ subitò ex omnībus partībus silvæ evolavērunt et in nostros^d impētum fecērunt. Nostri^g celerīter arma cepērunt, eosque in silvas repulērunt, et, complurībus^e interfectis, ⁵longiūs^r impeditiorībus locis secūti, paucos ex suis deperdidērunt.

29. Relīquis deinceps diēbus^s Cæsar silvas cādēre instituit, et, ne, quis ⁶inermībus imprudentibusque militībus^t ab latere impētus fiēri^m posset,^u omnem eam ⁷materiam, quæ

^a § 145, R. & Obs. 2.

^b 98, 2.

^c 17, 1.

^d § 131, R. XL.

^e 109, 2.

^f § 123, R.

^g 38.

^h § 121, Obs. 2.

ⁱ 109, 2.

^k § 141, R. V, (*solū.*)

^l § 93, 1.

^m § 87, 6.

ⁿ § 145, R.

^o § 141, Obs. 7.

^p § 140, Obs. 4.

^q 19, 2.

^r 22, 1.

^s § 131. R. XLI.

^t § 126, R. III.

^u § 140, 1, 2d

erat cæsa, ¹ conversam ad hostem collocābat, et pro vallo ad utrumque latus extruēbat. Incredibīli celeritatē ^a magno spatio ^b paucis diēbus ^c ² confecto, cū jam pecus atque ⁸ extrēma ^d impedimenta ab nostris tenerentur, ^e ipsi ^f densiōres silvas petērent; ejusmōdi sunt tempestātes consecūtæ, ut opus necessariò intermitterētur, ^g et, continuatiōne ^a imbrium diutius ⁴ sub pellībus milītes continēri ^h non possent. ⁵ Itaque vastātis omnībus eōrum agris, ^b vicis ædificiisque incensis, Cæsar exercitum reduxit, et in Aulercis, Lexoviisque, reliquis item civitatibus, ⁵ quæ proximè bellum fecerant, in hibernis collocāvit.

^a § 129, R.^d 17, 2.^g § 140, 1, 1st.^b 109, 2.^e § 140, Obs. 4.^h 87, 6.^c § 131, R. XLI.^f 32, 3.

BOOK IV.

GENERAL ARGUMENT.

I. War with the Usipetes and Tenchtheri—Chap. 1–15. II. Cæsar's bridge over the Rhine, and his crossing into Germany—Chap. 16–19. III. Cæsar passes into Britain.—A battle—surrender of the Britains, and subsequent revolt.—Chap. 20–36. IV. War with the Morini and Menapii—Chap. 37–38.

1. ¹ EA, quæ secūta est, hiême, ^a qui fuit annus ² Cneio Pompeio, ^b Marco Crasso consulibus, Usipētes Germāni, et item Tenchthēri, magnā cum multitudīne homīnum, flumen Rhenum transiērunt, non longē a mari, ³ quo Rhenus influit. Causa transeundi fuit, quōd, ab Suēvis complūres annos ^c exagitāti, bello premebantur et agricultūrā ^d prohibebantur. Suevōrum gens est longē maxīma et bellicosissīma Germanōrum ^e omnium. Hi centum pagos habēre dicuntur, ex quibus quotannis singūla ^f millia armatōrum bellandi causā ex finibus edūcunt. Relīqui, ⁴ qui domi mansērint, ⁵ se atque illos alunt. Hi rursus invicem anno post in armis sunt; illi domi remānent. Sic neque agricultūra, ⁵ nec ratio atque usus belli, intermittitur. Sed privāti ac separāti agri apud eos nihil est; neque longiūs anno ^h remanēre uno in loco incolendi causā licet. Neque multūm frumento, ⁱ sed ⁶ maxīmam partem ^k lacte atque pēcōre ^l vivunt, multūmque sunt in venationibus; quæ res et cibi genēre, ^l et quotidīanā exercitatiōne, et libertāte vitæ (quōd, a puēris ⁷ nullo officio ^l aut disciplinā assuefacti, nihil omnīno contra voluntātem faciunt), ^m et vires alit, et immāni corpōrum magnitudīne ⁿ homīnes efficit. Atque in eam ^o se consuetudinē adduxērunt,

^a § 131, R. XL.

⁵ § 141, R. III.

^m § 140, Obs. 2.

^b § 110, Obs. 1, & 2.

^h § 120, R.

ⁿ § 106, R. VII. &

^c § 131, R. XLI.

ⁱ § 121, Obs. 2.

6, 1.

^d § 136, Obs. 5, (*ab.*)

^k § 136, Obs. 5, (*Se.*

^o § 31, Obs. 2, &

^e § 106, Obs. 3, (*gens*)

cundum.)

28, 1.

^f 26, 1.

^l § 129, R.

ut locis frigidissimis, neque vestītūs,^a præter pelles, habeant^b quicquam (quarum propter exiguitatem magna est corporis pars aperta), et laventur^b in fluminibus.

2. Mercatoribus^c est ad eos aditus magis eo,¹ ut, quæ bello cepērint,^d quibus vendant,^e habeant,^b quàm quò ullam rem ad se importāri desidērent:^f quinetiam² jumentis,^g quibus^h maxīmè Gallia delectātur, quæque impenso parant pretio,ⁱ Germāni importātis non utuntur: sed quæ sunt apud eos nata, parva atque deformia, hæc³ quotidiānā exercitātiōne, summi ut sint^k labōris,^l efficiunt. Equestribus præliis sæpe ex equis desiliunt, ac pedibus^m præliantur; equosque eōdem remanēre vestigio^m assuefaciunt; ad quos se celerīter, cū usus est, recipiunt: neque eōrum moribus turpius quicquam aut inertius habētur, quàm ephippiis^o uti.
4 Itaque ad quemvis numērum ephippiatōrum equitum, quamvis pauci, adire audent. Vinum ad se omnīno importāri non sinunt, quòd eā re ad labōrem ferendum remollescere homīnes, atque effemināri, arbitrantur.

3. 5 Publicè maxīmam putant esse laudem, quàm latissimè a suis finibus vacāre agros:ⁿ hāc re⁶ significāri, magnum numērumⁿ civitatum suam vim sustinēre non posse. Itaque, unā ex parte, a Suēvis, circīter millia passuum sexcenta agri⁷ vacāre dicuntur. 8 Ad altēram partem succēdunt Ubii (quorum fuit civitas ampla atque florens, 9 ut est captus Germanōrum), et paulo quàm sunt ejusdem genēris cetēri humaniōres; propterea quòd Rhenum attingunt, multūmque ad eos mercatōres ventitant, et ipsi propter propinquitatem Gallicis sunt moribus assuefacti. Hos cū Suēvi, multis sæpe bellis experti, propter¹⁰ amplitudīnem gravitatemque civitātis, finibus^o expellere non potuissent, tamen vectigāles sibi fecerunt, ac multo^p humiliōres infirmioresque redegērunt.

^a § 106, R. VIII.

^f § 140, 1.

¹ § 106, R. VII.

^b § 140, 1, 1st.

^g § 121, R. XXVI.

^m § 136, Obs. 5, (in.)

^c § 112, R. II.

^h § 121, Obs. 2.

ⁿ § 145, R.

^d § 141, Obs. 3.

ⁱ § 133, R.

^o § 136, R. LII.

^e § 141, R. I. & Obs. 1.

^k § 140, 1, 3d.

^p § 132, R. XLIII.

4. ¹In eâdem causâ fuērunt Usipêtes et Tenchthēri, quos suprâ dixīmus, qui complūres annos ^a Suevōrum vim sustinuerunt; ad extrēmum ^b tamēn, agris ^c expulsi, et multis Germaniæ locis ^d triennium ^a vagāti, ad Rhenum pervenērunt: ²quas ^e regiōnes Menapii incolēbant, et ad utramque ripam flumīnis agros, ædificia, vicosque habēbant; sed tantæ multitudīnis adītu ^f perterriti, ex his ædificiis, quæ trans flumen habuērant, demigravērant, et, cis Rhenum dispositis præsidiis, ^gGermānos transīre prohibēbant. Illi, omnia experti, cū neque vi ^f contendere propter inopiam navium, neque ³clam transīre propter custodias Menapiōrum, possent, ^hreverti se in suas sedes regionesque simulavērunt; et, ⁴tridui viam progressi, rursus revertērunt, atque, omni hoc itinēre unâ nocte equitātu ⁱ confecto, inscios inopinantesque Menapios oppressērunt, qui, de Germanōrum discessu per exploratōres certiōres facti, sine metu trans Rhenum in suos vicos remigravērant. His ^ginterfectis, navibusque eōrum occupātis, ^gpriusquam ea pars Menapiōrum, quæ citra Rhenum quiēta in suis sedibus erat, certior fiēret, ^kflumen transiērunt, atque, omnibus eōrum ædificiis ^goccupātis, ^hreliquam partem ^ahiēmis se eōrum copiis aluērunt.

5. His de rebus Cæsar certior factus, et ⁶infirmiātem Gallōrum veritus, ⁱquod sunt in consiliis capiendis mobiles, et novis plerumque rebus ^mstudent, ⁷nihil his ⁿcommittendum existimāvit. ⁸Est autem hoc Gallicæ consuetudinis, ^outī et viatōres, etiam invitos, consistere cogant, ^pet, quod quisque eōrum de quâque re audiērit ^qaut cognovērit, quærant; ^pet mercatōres in oppidis vulgus circumsistat, ^pquibusque ex regionibus veniant, ^qquasque ibi res cognovērint, pronunciare cogant. ^pHis rumoribus atque auditionibus per-

^a § 131, R. XLI.^g 109, 2.^m § 112, R. V.^b 19, (*tempus.*)^h § 140, Obs. 4.ⁿ § 126, R. III.^c § 136, R. LII.ⁱ § 136, Obs. 5, (*ab.*)^o § 108, R.^d § 136, Obs. 5, (*in.*)^k § 140, 4.^p § 145, Obs. 5.^e 37, 2d, 4, Note 1.^l 106, 1.^q § 140, 5.^f § 129, R.

mōti, de ¹summis sæpe rebus consilia ineunt, quorum ^a eos
²e vestigio pœnitēre necesse est, ³cū incertis rumoribus ^b
serviant, ^c et plerique ad voluntātem eōrum ficta respondeant. ^c

6. Quā consuetudinē cognītā, Cæsar, ⁴ ne ^d graviōri bello ^e
occurreret, maturiūs quā consuebat ad exercitum proficis-
citur. Eō cū venisset, ea, quæ fore suspicātus erat, ^f facta ^f
cognōvit; missas ^f legatiōnes a nonnullis civitatibus ad Ger-
mānos, invitatosque ^f eos, uti ab Rheno discederent; ^g om-
niāque quæ postulāssent, ^h ab se fore parāta. Quā ⁱ spe ad-
ducti Germāni latiūs jam vagabantur, et in fines Eburōnum
et Condrusōrum, qui sunt Trevirōrum clientes, pervenērunt.
Principibus Galliæ evocātis, Cæsar ea quæ cognovērat ⁶ dis-
simulanda ^k sibi ^l existimāvit, eorumque animis permulsis et
confirmātis, equitatuque imperāto, bellum cum Germānis
gerere constituit.

7. Re ^m frumentariā comparātā, equitibusque delectis, iter
in ea loca facere cœpit, quibus ⁿ in locis esse Germānos au-
diēbat. A quibus cū paucōrum diērum iter ^o abesset, le-
gāti ab his venērunt, quorum hæc fuit oratio: "Germānos"
neque priōres ^q Popūlo Romāno bellum inferre, neque tamen
recusāre, ^r si lacessantur, quin armis contendant; ^s quōd Ger-
manōrum consuetūdo hæc sit ^t a majoribus tradita, quicum-
quē bellum infērant, ^h ⁷ resistere, neque deprecāri: hæc ta-
men dicere, venisse ^f invitōs, ^q ejectos domo. ^u Si ^s suam gra-
tiam Romāni velint, posse eis utiles esse amīcos: vel sibi
agros attribuant, vel patiantur ⁹ eos tenere quos armis pos-
sederint. ^v Sese unis Suēvis ¹⁰ concedere, quibus ne Dii qui-
dem immortāles pares esse possint: reliquum quidem ¹¹ in
terris esse neminem, quem non superare possint."

^a § 113, Ex. II.

^b § 112, R. V.

^c § 140, Obs. 3.

^d § 140, 1, 2d.

^e § 112, R. IV

^f 98, 2.

^g § 140, 1. 3d.

^h § 141, Obs. 8.

ⁱ 38.

^k § 108, 4.

^l § 126, Obs. 3.

^m 109, 2.

ⁿ 37, 6, Note. 1.

^o 132, R. XLII.

^p § 145, R. LVIII.

^q § 98, Obs. 10.

^r 94, 3.

^s § 140, 3.

^t § 140, 6.

^u § 136, R. LII.

^v § 141, Obs. 3.

8. ¹ Ad hæc Cæsar, quæ visum est, respondit; sed ² exi-
tus fuit oratiōnis: “Sibi ^a nullam cum his amicitiam esse
posse, si in Galliâ remanērent: neque ³ verum esse, qui ^b
suos fines tuēri non potuērint, ^c aliēnos occupāre: ⁴ neque
ullos in Galliâ vacāre agros qui dari, tantæ præsertim multi-
tudīni, ^d sine injuriâ possint. ^e Sed licēre, si velint, in Ubi-
ōrum finibus considēre, quorum sint ^f legāti apud se, et de
Suevōrum injuriis querantur, ^f et a se auxilium petant: hoc
se ab iis impetratūrum.”^g

9. Legāti hæc se ad suos relatūros ^h dixērunt, et, re delib-
erātâ, post diem tertium ad Cæsārem reversūros: interea ne
propiūs se ^h castra movēret, ⁱ petiērunt. Ne id quidem ^k Cæ-
sar ab se impetrāri posse dixit: cognovērat enim, magnam
partem equitātis ab iis aliquot diēbus ^l ante prædandi fru-
mentandique causâ ad Ambivarētos trans Mosam missam.
Hos ^m expectāri equītes, atque ejus rei causâ moram ^m inter-
pōni, arbitrabātur.

10. Mosa profluit ex monte Vosēgo, qui est in finibus Lin-
gōnum, ⁿ et, parte quâdam ex Rheno receptâ, quæ appellā-
tur Vahālis, ⁿ insulam efficit Batavōrum, neque longiūs ab
eo millibus ^o passuum octoginta in Oceānum transit. Rhe-
nus autem oritur ex Lepontiis, qui Alpes incōlunt, et longo
spatio ^p per fines Nantuatium, Helvetiōrum, Sequanōrum,
Mediomatricōrum, Tribocōrum, Trevirōrum citātus ^q fertur; ^r
et, ubi Oceāno ^s appropinquat, ⁶ in plures diffluit partes, mul-
tis ingentibusque insulis effectis, quarum pars magna a feris
barbarisque nationibus incolitur ^t (ex quibus sunt, qui pisci-
bus ^u atque ovis avium vivēre existimantur), ⁷ multisque cap-
itibus in Oceānum influit.

^a § 112, R. II.

^b 37, (eos.)

^c § 141, Obs. 3.

^d § 126, R. III.

^e § 141, R. I. & Obs. 1.

^f § 141, Obs. 7.

^g § 100, 2.

^h § 136, Obs. 5, (ad.)

ⁱ § 140, 1, 3d.

^k 121, Note. 2.

^l § 131, R. XLI.

^m § 145, R.

ⁿ § 103, R.

^o § 120, R. XXIV.

^p § 132, R. XLII.

^q § 98, Obs. 10.

^r 116, 4.

^s § 112, R. IV.

^t § 102, R. II.

^u § 121, Obs. 2.

11. Cæsar cùm ab hoste non ampliùs passuum duodécim millibus abesset, ut erat constitutum, ad eum legāti revertuntur: qui,^a in itinère congressi, magnopère, ne longiùs progredērētur,^b orābant. Cùm id non impetrāssent,^c petēbant, uti ad eos equītes, qui agmen antecessissent, præmittēret,^b eosque pugnā^d prohibēret; sibi que uti potestātem facēret, in Ubios legātos mittendi: quorum^e si Princīpes ac Senātus¹ sibi jurejurando^f fidem fecissent, eā conditiōne,^g quæ a Cæsāre ferrētur, se usūros ostendēbant: ad has res conficiendas sibi tridui spatium daret.^b Hæc omnia Cæsar² eōdem illo pertinēre^h arbitrābatur, ut, tridui morā interpositā, equītes eōrum, qui abessent,ⁱ reverterentur:^k tamen sese non longiùs millibus passuum quatuor aquatiōnis causā processūrum eo die dixit: huc postēro die^l quàm frequentissīmi convenīrent,^b ut de eōrum postulātis cognoscēret.^k Intērim ad præfectos, qui cum omni equitātu antecessērant, mittit, qui^m nunciārent, ne hostes prælio lacessērent,^b et, si ipsi lacesserentur, ³sustinērent, quoad ipse cum exercitū propiùs accessisset.ⁿ

12. At hostes, ubi primùm nostros equītes conspexērunt, quorum erat quinque millium numērus, cùm ipsi non ampliùs^o octingentos equītes habērent, quòd ii, qui frumentandi causā iērant trans Mosam, nondum rediērant, nihil timentibus nostris,^p quòd legāti eōrum paulo antè a Cæsāre discesserant, atque is dies induciis^q erat ab eis petītus, impētū facto, celerīter nostros perturbavērunt. Rursus resistentibus nostris,^p consuetudīne suā^r ad pedes desiluērunt, subfossisque equis, compluribusque nostris dejectis, reliquos in fugam conjecērunt, atque ita perterritos egērunt, ut non priùs fugā^r desistērent,^s quàm in conspectu agmīnis nostri venissent.

^a 39, 5.^z § 121, R. XXVI.ⁿ § 140, 4.^b § 140, 1, 3d.^h 96, 2.^o § 120, Obs. 3^c § 140, Obs. 4.ⁱ § 141, Obs. 3.^p 109, 1.^d § 136, Obs. 5, (ab.)^k § 140, 1, 2d.^q § 114, R. & Obs. 4.^e 39.^l § 131, R. XL.^r § 136, Obs. 5, (ex.)^f § 129, R.^m § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.^s § 140, 1, 1st.

In eo prœlio ex equitibus^a nostris interficiuntur quatuor et septuaginta, in his vir fortissimus, Piso, Aquitanus, ¹ amplissimò genère^b natus, cujus avus in civitatè suâ regnum obtinuërat, amicus^c ab Senātu nostro appellātus. Hic cū fratri^d ²interclūso ab hostibus auxilium ferret,^e illum ex pericūlo^f eripuit: ipse, equo vulnerato dejectus, quoad potuit, fortissimè restitit. Cū circumventus, multis vulneribus acceptis, cecidisset,^e atque id frater, qui jam prœlio^g excesserat, procul animadvertisset, incitato equo³ se hostibus^d obtulit atque interfectus est.

13. Hoc facto prœlio, Cæsar neque jam sibi^h legatosⁱ audiendos,^k neque conditiones accipiendas^k arbitrabatur ab his, qui per dolum atque insidias, petita pace, ultro bellum intulissent: ¹ expectare^m verò, dum hostium copiae augerentur,ⁿ equitatusque reverteretur, ⁴summæ dementiæ^o esse^p iudicabat; et, cognita Gallorum infirmitate, quantum jam apud eos hostes uno prœlio auctoritatis^q essent consecuti, sentiebat: quibus^r ad consilia capienda nihil¹ spatii dandum existimabat. His constitutis rebus, et consilio cum legatis et quæstore communicato, ⁵ne quem diem pugnae prætermitteret, opportunissima res accidit, quod postridie ejus diei^s mane, eadem et perfidia et simulatione usi Germani, frequentes, ⁶omnibus principibus majoribusque natu adhibitis, ad eum in castra venerunt; simul, ut dicebatur, ⁷sui purgandi causâ, quod ⁸contra atque esset dictum, et ipsi petissent, praelium pridie commisissent; simul ut, si quid possent, de induciis fallendo impetrarent. ⁹Quosⁱ sibi Cæsar oblatos gavisus, illico retinere iussit; ipse omnes copias castris eduxit, equitatumque, quod recenti praelio perterritum esse existimabat, agmen subsequi iussit.

^a § 107, Obs. 8.^g § 136, R. LII.ⁿ § 140, 4.^b § 119, R. & 6, 5.^h § 126, Obs. 3.^o § 108, R.^c § 103, R.ⁱ § 145, R. (*esse.*)^p 94, 3.^d § 123, R.^k 108, 4.^q § 106, R. VIII.^e § 140, Obs. 4.¹ § 141, Obs. 8.^r 39, & § 126, R. III.^f § 123, Obs. 1.^m § 144, R. LVI.^s § 135, XLVI.

14. Acie triplici institūtâ, et celeriter octo millium^a itin-
 ěre confecto, prius ad hostium castra pervēnit, quàm, quid
 ageretur, ^b Germāni sentire possent.^c Qui,^d omnibus rebus
 subito perterriti, et celeritate adventus nostri, et discessu su-
 ōrum, neque consilii habendi^e neque arma capiendi^f spatio
 dato, ¹ perturbantur, copiasne adversus hostem educere, an
 castra defendere, an fugā salutem petere, præstaret.^b Quo-
 rum^g timor cūm fremitu et concursu ² significaretur, milites
 nostri, ³ pristini diēi perfidiā incitati, in castra irrupērunt.
 Quorum^h quiⁱ celeriter arma capere potuerunt, paulisper
 nostris restiterunt, atque inter carros impedimentaque præ-
 lium commisērunt: at reliqua multitudo puerorum mulie-
 rumque (nam cum omnibus suis domo excesserant Rhenum-
 que transierant), passim fugere cœpit; ad quos^g consecan-
 dos Cæsar equitatum misit.

15. Germāni, post tergum ⁴ clamore audito, cūm suos^k
 interfici viderent, armis abjectis, signisque militaribus re-
 lictis, se ex castris eiecērunt: et, cūm ⁵ ad confluentem Mo-
 sæ et Rheni pervenissent, ⁶ reliquā fugā desperatâ, magno
 numēro interfecto, reliqui se in flumen præcipitaverunt, at-
 que ibi timore,^l lassitudine,^l vi fluminis oppressi, periērunt.
 Nostri ad unum^m omnes incolūmes, perpaucis vulneratis,
⁷ ex tanti belli timore, cūm hostium numērus capĭtum quad-
 ringentōrum et triginta millium fuisset, se in castra recepē-
 runt. Cæsar his,ⁿ quos in castris retinuerat, ⁸ discedendi
 potestatem fecit: illi supplicia cruciatusque Gallōrum ver-
 ūti,^o quorum agros vexaverant, remanere se apud eum velle
 dixerunt. Hisⁿ Cæsar libertatem concessit.

16. Germanico bello confecto, multis de causis Cæsar
 statuit, sibi Rhenum esse transeundum: quarum^p illa fuit
 iustissima, quod, cūm vidēret, Germānos tam faciliè impelli,

^a § 106, R. VII.^f 112, 1.¹ § 129, R.^b § 140, 5.^g 39.^m 19, (*homīnem.*)^c § 140, 4.^h 39, & § 107, R. X.ⁿ § 123, R.^d 39, 5.ⁱ 37, (*ii.*)^o 106, 1.^e 112, 5.^k 19, 2, & § 145, R.^p 38, & § 107, R. X

ut in Galliam venirent,^a ¹ suis quoque rebus^b eos timere voluit, cum intelligerent, ² et posse et audere Populi Romani exercitum Rhenum transire. ³ Accessit etiam, quod illa pars equitatus Usipetum et Tenchtherorum, quam supra commemoravi, praedandi^c frumentandique causâ Mosam transisse, neque praelio^d interfuisse, post fugam suorum se trans Rhenum in fines Sigambrorum recepserat seque cum iis conjunxerat. Ad quos^e cum Cæsar nuncios misisset, qui^f postularent, eos, qui sibi^g Galliæque bellum intulissent, sibi^g dedèrent,^h responderunt: "Populi Romani imperium Rhenumⁱ finire: si, se invito Germanos in Galliam transire non æquum existimaret, ⁴ cur sui^k quicquam^l esse imperii^l aut potestatis trans Rhenum postularet?"^m Ubii autem, qui uni ex Transrhenanis ad Cæsarem legatos miserant, amicitiam fecerant, obsides dedérant, magnopere orabant, "ut sibi^g auxilium ferret,^h quod graviter ab Suevis premerentur;ⁿ vel, si id facere^o occupationibus reipublicæ prohiberetur, exercitum modò Rhenum transportaret:^h idⁱ sibi^d ad auxilium spemque reliqui temporis satis futurum: tantum esse nomen atque opinionem ejus exercitus, Ariovisto pulso, et hoc novissimo praelio facto, etiam ad ultimas Germanorum nationes, uti opinione^o et amicitia Populi Romani tuti^p esse possint."^a Navium magnam copiam ad transportandum exercitum pollicebantur.

17. Cæsar his de causis, quas commemoravi, Rhenum transire decreverat; sed navibus transire, neque satis tutum esse^q arbitrabatur, ⁶ neque suæ^r neque Populi Romani dignitatis^k esse statuēbat. Itaque, etsi summa difficultas facienda pontis⁷ proponebatur, propter latitudinem, rapiditatem, altitudinemque fluminis, tamen idⁱ sibi^g contendendum, aut

^a § 140, 1, 1st.

^g § 123, R.

ⁿ § 141, Obs. 7.

^b § 112, R. XVII.

^h § 140, 1, 3d, & Obs. 5.

^o § 129, R.

^c 112, 1.

ⁱ § 145, R.

^p § 103, Obs. 6.

^d § 112, R. I.

^k § 108, R. XII.

^q 51, 5.

^e 39, 9.

^l § 106, R. VIII.

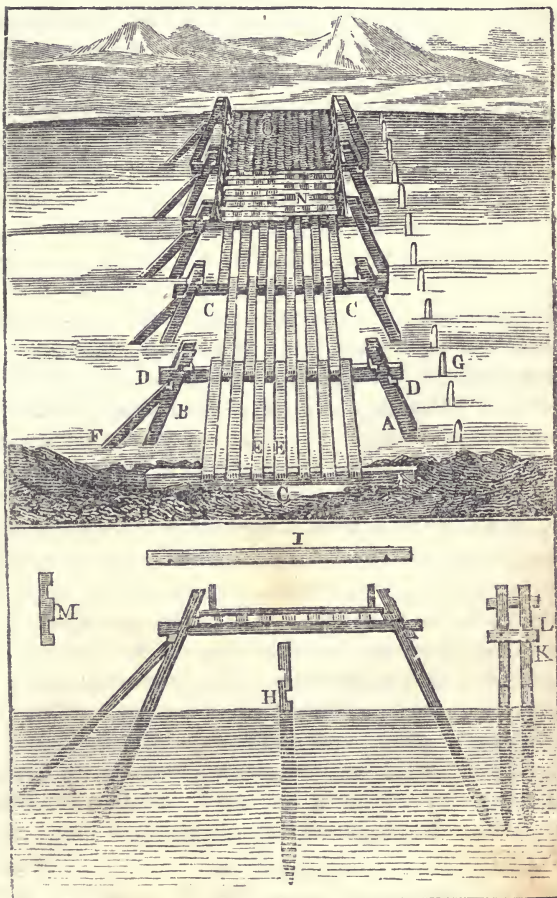
^r 29, 1.

^f § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.

^m § 140, 6.

^s 113, & § 147.

PLAN OF THE BRIDGE MADE OVER THE RHINE BY CÆSAR,
IN TEN DAYS.



A. *Tigna bina sesquipedalia*: Two piles each a foot and a half thick, joined together at the distance of two feet. H. One of the piles detached. K. Form of the two piles braced together. B. Two opposite piles similarly joined together, and at the distance of forty feet down the river from the other. C. *Trabs bipedalis*: Large beam two feet square, extending from the upper to the lower piles. I. The same beam detached. D. *Fibulae binæ*: Two braces fastening each pair of piles together, as seen at L, one on each side, (*utrimque*)—the one below, supporting the beam, (*trabs*), the other above it. M. Form of the brace detached. E E. *Materies*: Timbers laid from beam to beam, (*directæ*), lengthwise of the bridge. N. *Longurii*: Spars laid across the timbers. O. *Crates*: Hurdles laid over the spars. F. *Sublicæ*: Stakes sunk in the river as buttresses, and fastened (*conjunctæ*), to each lower pair of piles. G. *Aliæ sublicæ*: Other stakes driven in above the bridge, and separate from it, as a fence against trunks of trees, &c. sent down the river.



aliter non transducendum exercitum, existimabat. ¹ Rationem pontis hanc instituit. ² Tigna bina^a sesquipedalia, paulum ab imo præacuta, dimensa ad altitudinem fluminis, intervallo^b pedum duorum inter se jungēbat. ³ Hæc cum^c machinationibus^d immissa in flumen defixerat, fistucisque^d adgerat, ⁴ non publicæ modo^d directæ^e ad perpendiculum, sed prona^e ac fastigata, ut secundum naturam fluminis procumbērent; ^f ⁵ iis^g item contraria bina,^a ad eundem modum juncta, intervallo^b pedum quadragēnum, ab inferiōre parte, contra vim atque impetum fluminis conversa statuēbat. ⁶ Hæc utraq̃ue insuper bipedalibus trabibus^h immissis quantumⁱ eorum tignorum junctura distabat, binis utrimque fibulis^k ab extrēmā parte, distinebantur: ⁷ quibus^l disclusis atque in contrariam partem revinctis, tanta erat operis firmitudo, atque ⁸ ea^m rerum natura, ut, ⁹ quoⁿ major vis aquæ se incitavisset, ^o hocⁿ arctius illigata tenerentur.^p ¹⁰ Hæc directā materie^q injecta contexebantur, et ¹¹ longuriis^q cratibusque consternebantur: ¹² ac nihilo secius publicæ et ad inferiorem partem fluminis obliquè agebantur, quæ,^r ¹³ pro pariēte subjectæ, et cum omni opere conjunctæ, vim fluminis excipērent: ^r ¹⁴ et aliæ item supra pontem mediocri spatio,^b ut, si arborum trunci, sive naves ¹⁵ deijciendi operis essent^t a barbaris missæ, his defensoribus^d earum rerum vis minueretur,^f neu ponti^u nocerent.

18. Diēbus^v decem, ¹⁶ quibus materia cæpta erat comportari, omni opere effecto, exercitus transducitur. Cæsar, ¹⁷ ad utramque partem pontis firmo præsidio^h relicto, in fines Siganbrorum contendit. Intērim a compluribus civitatibus ad eum legāti veniunt,^v quibus^x pacem atque amicitiam pe-

^a 26, 3.^b § 132, R. XLII.^c § 140, Obs. 3.^d § 129, R.^e § 98, Obs. 10.^f § 140, 1, 2d.^g § 111, R.^h 109, 2.ⁱ 46, (tantum.) &^b^k 110.^l § 38, & 109, 2.^m 124, 17, & 28.ⁿ § 132, Obs. 6, &

22, 4, Obs.

^o § 141, Obs. 8.^p § 140, 1, 1st.^q § 126, R. V.^r § 141, Obs. 2, 4th,^s 19, (publicæ.)^t 81, 2, & 140, 2.^u § 112, R. V.^v § 131, R. XLI.^w § 44, I. 3.^x § 123, R.

tentibus liberaliter respondit, obsidesque ad se adduci^a jubet, At Sigambri, ex eo tempore quo^b pons institui cœptus est, fugâ comparâtâ, ¹ hortantibus iis ^c quos ex Tenchthëris atque Usipetibus apud se habebant, finibus^d suis-accesserant, suâque omnia exportaverant, seque ² in solitudinem ac silvas abdidérant.

19. Cæsar, paucos dies^e in eorum finibus moratus, omnibus vicis ædificiisque incensis,^f frumentisque succisis,^f se in fines Ubiorum recēpit; atque iis auxilium suum pollicitus, si ab Suëvis premerentur,^g hæc ab iis cognovit: Suëvos, posteaquam per exploratores pontem fieri comperissent,^h moreⁱ suo concilio habito, nuncios in omnes partes dimisisse, uti de oppidis demigrarent,^k liberos, uxores, suâque omnia in silvas deponerent,^k atque omnes qui arma ferre possent^l unum in locum convenirent:^k ³ hunc esse delectum medium^m ferè regionum earum quas Suëvi obtinereⁿ: ⁿ hic Romanorum adventum expectare atque ibi decertare constituisse.^o Quod^p ubi Cæsar compērit, omnibus his rebus confectis, quarum rerum causâ transducere exercitum constituērat, ut Germānis metum injiceret,^k ut Sigambros ⁴ ulciscerētur,^k ut Ubios obsidiōne liberāret,^k diēbus^c omnino decem et octo trans Rhenum consumptis, ⁵ satis et ad laudem et ad utilitatem profectum^o arbitratus, se in Galliam recēpit, pontemque rescidit.

20. Exiguâ parte æstatis reliquâ, Cæsar, etsi in his locis, quod omnis Gallia ad septentriones vergit, ⁶ maturæ sunt hiemes, tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit, quod, omnibus fere Gallicis bellis,^q hostibus nostris ^r ⁷ inde subministrata auxilia intelligēbat: et, si tempus anni ad bellum gerendum deficeret,^k tamen magno sibi^s usui fore arbitrabatur, si modò insulam adisset, genus hominum perspexisset, loca,

^a 90, 4.^g § 140, 2.ⁿ § 140, 6.^b § 131, R. XL.^h § 140, 4.^o 98, 2.^c 109, 1.ⁱ § 129, R.^p 38, 4.^d § 136, R. LII.^k § 140, 1, 2d.^q § 136, Obs. 5, (in.)^e § 131, R. XLI.^l § 141, Obs. 3.^r § 126, R. III.^f 104, 1.^m § 97, R. Exp.^s § 114, R.

portus, aditus cognovisset: quæ omnia ferè Gallis erant incognita. Neque enim ¹temèrè præter mercatōres illò adit quisquam, ²neque iis ipsis ³quicquam, præter oram maritimam atque eas regiōnes quæ sunt contra Gallias, notum est. Itaque, evocātis ad se undique mercatoribus, neque quanta esset ^binsulæ magnitudo, neque quæ ^caut quantæ ^cnatiōnes incolerent, ^bneque ³quem ^cusum belli haberent, ^baut quibus ^cinstitūtis uterentur, neque qui essent ad majōrum navium multitudinem idonei ^dportus, reperire poterat.

21. Ad hæc cognoscenda, priusquam pericūlum faceret, idoneum esse arbitrātus ^eCaïum Volusēnum, cum navi longā præmittit. Huic ^fmandat, uti, explorātis omnibus rebus, ad se quamprimum revertatur: ^gipse cum omnibus copiis in Morinos proficiscitur, quòd inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam transiectus. Huc naves undique ex finitimis regionibus et, quam ^hsuperiøre æstāte ad Veneticum bellum fecerat, classem jubet convenire. ⁱIntèrim, consilio ejus cognito et per mercatōres perlato ad Britannos, a compluribus ejus insulæ civitatibus ad eum legāti veniunt, qui polliceantur ^kobsides dare, atque imperio ^lPopuli Romāni obtemperare. Quibus ^mauditis, liberaliter pollicitus, hortatusque ut ⁴in eā sententiā permanerent, ^geos domum ⁿremittit, et cum his unā Commium, quem ipse, Atrebatibus superatis, regem ibi constituerat, cujus et virtutem et consilium probabat, et quem sibi fidēlem arbitrabatur, cujusque auctoritas in iis regionibus magni ^ohabebatur, mittit. Huic impērat, quas possit adeat ^bcivitātes, ⁵horteturque ^gut Populi Romāni ⁶fidem sequantur; ^gseque celeriter eò venturum nunciet. ^gVolusēnus, perspectis regionibus, ⁷quantum ei facultātis dari potuit, ⁸qui navi egrēdi ac se barbaris committere non auderet, ^pquinto die ad Cæsārem revertitur; quæque ibi perspexisset renunciat.

^a § 126, R. XXXIII.

^b § 140, 5.

^c 48, & § 34, Obs. 1.

^d § 103, Obs. 2.

^e 106, 1.

^f 63, & § 123, R.

^g § 140, 1, 3d.

^h 43.

ⁱ 90, 4.

^k § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.

^l § 112, R. V.

^m 38, & 109, 2.

ⁿ § 130, 4.

^o § 126, R. II.

^p § 141, R. III.

22. Dum in his locis Cæsar navium parandârum^a causâ morâtur, ex magnâ parte Morinorum ad eum legâti venērunt, qui^b se¹ de superiōris temporis^c consilio excusarent,^b quod homines barbâri, et nostræ consuetudinis^c imperiti, bellum Populo Româno fecissent,^d seque ea, quæ imperâsset,^e factûros pollicerentur.^b Hoc sibi^f satis opportunè Cæsar accidisse arbitrâtus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volēbat, neque belli gerendi,^a propter anni tempus, facultatem habēbat, neque² has tantulârum rerum occupatiōnes^g sibi^h Britannię¹ anteponendas judicâbat, magnum his^k obsidum numêrum impērat. Quibus adductis, eos in fidem recēpit.³ Navibus circiter octoginta onerariis coactis contractisque, quot¹ satis esse ad duas transportandas legiōnes existimâbat, quicquid præterea navium^m longârum habēbat, quæstori, legâtis, præfectisque distribuit. Huc accedēbant octodēcim onerariæ naves, quæ ex eo loco abⁿ millibus passuum octo vento tenebantur, quo minùs in eundem portum pervenire possent.^o Has equitibus distribuit; reliquum exercitum Quinto Titurio Sabîno et Lucio Aurunculeio Cottæ, legâtis, in Menapios atque in eos pagos Morinorum, ab quibus ad eum legâti non venērant, deducendum^p dedit. Publium Sulpitium Rufum, legâtum, cum eo præsidio quod satis esse arbitrabâtur, portum tenere iussit.

23. His constitutis rebus, nactus idoneam ad navigandum^q tempestâtem, ⁴ tertiâ ferè vigiliâ⁵ solvit, equitesque in ulteriorem portum progrēdi,^r ⁶ et naves conscendēre,^r et se sequi^r iussit: a quibus^s cum id paulo tardiùs esset administrâtum, ipse⁷ horâ diēi circiter quartâ cum primis navibus Britanniam attingit, atque ibi in omnibus collibus⁸ expositas hostium

^a 112, 5.^b § 141, Obs. 2, 4.^c § 107, R. IX.^d § 141, Obs. 7.^e § 141, Obs. 3.^f § 112, R. IV.^g § 145, R.^h § 126, Obs. 3.ⁱ § 126, R. III.^k § 123, R. & 5, 1.^l 46, 2.^m § 106, R. VIII. &

Obs. 10.

ⁿ § 132, Obs. 5.^o § 140, 1.^p 107, 1.^q 112, 3.^r 90, 1.^s 38.

copias armātas conspexit. Cujus loci hæc erat natūra : ¹ adeo montibus angustis mare continebātur, uti ex locis superioribus in littus telum adjici^a posset. Hunc ² ad egrediendum nequāquam idoneum arbitrātus locum, dum reliquæ naves eò convenirent,^b ³ ad horam nonam in anchōris expectāvit. Intērim legātis^c tribunisque milītum convocātis, et quæ ex Volusēno cognōsset,^d et quæ fieri vellet,^d ostendit, ⁴ monuitque (ut rei militāris ratio, maxīmè ut maritimæ res postularent,^e ut quæ celērem atque instabilem motum habērent), ad nutum et ad tempus omnes res ab iis administrarentur.^f His^c dimissis, et ventum et æstum uno tempore nactus secundum, dato signo,^c et sublātis anchōris,^c circiter millia passuum septem ab eo loco progressus, aperto ac plano littore^g naves constituit.

24. At barbāri, consilio^c Romanōrum cognīto, præmisso^h equitātu, ⁵ et essedariis, quo plerumque genereⁱ in præliis uti consuērunt, reliquis copiis subsecūti, nostros navibus^k egrēdi⁶ prohibēbant. Erat ob has causas summa difficultas, quòd naves, propter magnitudīnem, nisi in alto, constitui^a non potērant; ⁷ militibus^l autem, ignōtis locis,^c impedītis manibus,^c magno et gravi armōrum onēre oppressis, simul et de navibus desiliendum,^l et in fluctibus consistendum,^l et cum hostibus erat pugnandum : ¹ cū illi aut ex arīdo, aut paululūm in aquam progressi, ⁸ omnibus membris^m expediti, notissimis locis,^g audacter tela conjicērent,ⁿ et equos ⁹ insuefactos incitarent.ⁿ Quibus rebus nostri perterriti, atque hujus omnīno generis^o pugnae imperīti, non eādē alacritateⁱ ac studio, quoⁱ in pedestribus uti præliis consueverant, utebantur.

25. Quod ubi Cæsar anīmum advertit, naves longas, ¹⁰ quarum et species erat barbāris^p inusitatior, et motus ad usum expeditior, paulum removēri ab onerariis navibus, et

^a § 87, 1.^f § 140, 1, 3d.^l § 147, & 113, 2.^b § 140, 4.^g § 136, Obs. 5, (in.)^m § 128, R.^c 109, 2.^h § 98, Obs. 4. & 109. 2.ⁿ § 140, Obs. 4.^d § 140, 5.ⁱ § 121, R. XXVI.^o § 108, R. IX^e § 141, Obs. 7.^k § 136, R. LII.^p § 111, R.

¹ remis incitāri,^a et ad latus apertum hostium constitui,^a atque inde fundis, sagittis, ² tormentis, hostes propelli^a ac submovēri jussit: ³ quæ res magno usui^b nostris fuit. Nam, et navium figurâ, et remōrum motu, et inusitâto genēre tormentōrum permōti, barbāri constitērunt, ⁴ ac paulum modò pedem retulērunt. Atque, nostris militibus^c cunctantibus, maxīmè propter altitudīnem maris, ⁵ qui^d decimæ legiōnis aquilam ferēbat, contestātus^e Deos, ut ⁶ ea res legiōni^f feliciter evenīret: “Desilite,” inquit, “commilitōnes, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prodere: ego certè meum reipublicæ atque imperatōri officium præstitero.” Hoc cūm ⁷ magnâ voce dixisset, ⁸ ex navi se projēcit, atque in hostes aquilam ferre cœpit. Tum nostri, cohortāti inter se,^g ne^h tantum dedecus admitterētur, universi ex navi desiluērunt: hos item ex proximis navibus cūm conspexissent, subsecūti hostibusⁱ appropinquārunt.

26. Pugnātum est ab utrisque acriter; nostri tamen, quòd neque ordīnes servāre,^k neque firmīter insistēre,^k neque signa subsēqui^k poterant, atque alius aliâ^l ex navi, quibuscumque^m signis occurrerat, se aggregābat, magno opōre perturbabantur. Hostes verò, notis omnibus vadis, ubi ex littōre aliquos ⁹ singulāres ex navi egredientes conspexerant, incitātis equis impeditos adoriebantur: plures paucosⁿ circumsistēbant: alii ab latere aperto in universos tela conjiciēbant. ¹⁰ Quod^o cūm animum advertisset Cæsar, ¹¹ scaphas longarum navium, item ¹² speculatoria navigia militibus complēri^a jussit, et, quos^p laborantes conspexerat, iis subsidia submittēbat. Nostri, simul^q in arido constitērunt, suis omnibus consecutis, in hostes impetum fecerunt, atque eos in fugam dedērunt, neque longiùs prosēqui^k potuerunt, quòd

^a 90, 4.^b § 114, R.^c 109, 1.^d 37, 3.^e 105, 2.^f § 112, R. XVII.^g § 28, Obs. 5.^h § 140, 1, 3d, & 121.ⁱ § 112, R. IV.^k 87, 7.^l § 98, Obs. 11. &

25, 1.

^m 37, 7, Ncte. 2, &

§ 99, Obs. 7.

ⁿ § 136, R. LII.^o § 38, 7.^p 43.^q 124, 18, (Sup.ac.)

equites ¹ cursum tenēre atque insulam capere non potuerant. Hoc unum ad pristinam fortunam Cæsari defuit.

27. Hostes praelio superati, simul^a atque se ex fugā receperunt, statim ad Cæsarem legatos de pace miserunt: obsides daturos, quæque imperasset^b sese facturos, polliciti sunt. Unā cum his legatis Commius Atrēbas venit, quem^c ²suprà demonstravēram a Cæsare in Britanniam præmissum.^d Hunc illi e navi egressum, cum ad eos ³oratoris modo imperatoris mandata perferret, comprehendērant, atque in vincula coniecērant: tum, praelio facto, remisērunt et in petendā^e pace ejus rei ⁴culpam in multitudinem contulērunt, et propter imprudentiam ut ignoscerētur, petivērunt. Cæsar questus, quod, cum ultro^f in continentem legatis missis pacem ab se petissent,^g bellum sine causā intulissent,^h ignoscere ⁶imprudentiæ^h dixit, obsidesque imperavit: quorum illi partem statim dedērunt, partem, ex longinquiōribus locis ⁷arcessitam,^d paucis diēbusⁱ sese daturos dixerunt. Interea suos remigrare in agros jussērunt, principesque undique convenire, et se civitatesque suas Cæsari commendare cōperunt.

28. His rebus pace confirmatā,^g post diem quartum, quā est in Britanniam ventum,^k naves octodēcim, de quibus⁹ suprà demonstratum est, quæ equites sustulērunt, ex superiōre portu leni vento solvērunt. ¹⁰Quæ^l cum appropinquārent Britanniæ, et ex castris viderentur, tanta tempestas subito coorta est, ut nulla eārum^m cursum tenere posset,ⁿ sed aliæ eodem, unde erant profectæ, referrentur; aliæ ad inferiōrem partem insulæ, ¹¹quæ est propius solis occāsum,^o magno sui cum periculō dejicerentur: ¹²quæ^p tamen, anchōris jactis cum fluctibus complerentur,^f ¹³necessariō adversā nocte in altum provectæ, continentem petiērunt.

^a 124, 18.^f § 140, Obs. 4.^l 39, 6, or 1.^b 80, 1.^g § 141, Obs. 7.^m § 107, R. X.^c § 145, R. & 91, 4.^h § 112, R. V.ⁿ § 140, 1, 1st.^d 98, 2.ⁱ § 131, R. XLI.^o § 136, Obs. 5, (ad.)^e § 147, R. LXII.^k 67, 5, Note.^p § 38.

29. Eâdem nocte accidit, ut esset ^a luna plena, ¹ qui ^b dies maritimos æstus maximos in Oceâno efficere consuêvit; ² nostrisque ^c id erat incognitum. Ita uno tempore et longas naves, quibus ^d Cæsar exercitum transportandum curaverat, quasque in aridum ^e subduxerat, æstus complêbat; et onerarias, ³ quæ ad anchoras erant deligatæ, tempestas ⁴ afflictabat; neque ulla nostris ^f facultas aut administrandi, aut auxiliandi, dabatur. Compluribus navibus ^g fractis, reliquæ cum essent, funibus, ^h anchoris, reliquisque armamentis amissis, ad navigandum inutiles, magna, id quod ^h necesse erat accidere, totius exercitus perturbatio facta est: neque enim naves erant aliæ, quibus reportari possent; ⁱ et omnia deërant, quæ ad reficiendas eas usui ^k sunt, et, ⁵ quod omnibus ^l constabat hiemari in Galliâ oportere, frumentum ⁶ his in locis in hiemem provisum non erat.

30. Quibus ^m rebus ⁿ cognitis, principes Britanniae, qui post prælium factum ad ea, quæ jussêrat Cæsar, facienda convenêrant, inter se collocuti, cum equites ⁿ et naves et frumentum Romanis ^o deesse intelligerent, et paucitatem militum ex castrorum exiguitate cognoscerent, quæ hoc erant etiam angustiôra, quod sine impedimentis Cæsar legiões transportaverat, optimum factu ^p esse duxerunt, rebellione ^q factâ, frumento ^r com meatuque nostros prohibere, et ⁷ rem in hiemem producere, quod, iis superatis, aut reditu ^s interclusis, neminem postea belli inferendi causâ in Britanniam transiturum confidêbant. Itaque, rursus conjuratione ^t factâ, paulatim ex castris discedere, ac suos clam ex agris deducere cœperunt.

31. At Cæsar, etsi nondum eorum consilia cognovêrat, tamen et ⁸ ex eventu navium suarum, ⁹ et ex eo, quod obsides dare intermisêrant, fore ^r id, ⁿ quod accidit, suspicabatur.

^a § 140, 1, 4th.

^f § 126, R. III.

^m 38, 3.

^b § 99, Exc. 1, & 37, 4.

^g 109, 2.

ⁿ § 145, R.

^h 37, 9, Note. 3.

^o § 112, R. I.

^c § 111, R.

ⁱ § 141, Obs. 1.

^p 114, 2.

^d § 129, R.

^k § 114, Obs. 4.

^q § 136, Obs. 5, (ab.)

^e 19, (locum.)

^l § 113, R. & 19.

^r 100, 12.

Itaque ¹ ad omnes casus subsidia comparābat: nam et frumentum ex agris quotidie in castra conferēbat,^a et, quæ ^b gravissimè afflictæ erant naves, eārum ^c materiā atque ære ad reliquas reficiendas utebātur, et, quæ ad eas res erant usui,^d ex continenti comportāri jubēbat. Itaque, cū id summo studio a militibus administrarētur, duodēcim navibus amissis, ^e reliquis ut navigāri commōdè posset, effēcit.

32. ³ Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex consuetudīne unā frumentum ^f missā, quæ appellabātur septīma, neque ullā ad id tempus belli suspiciōne interpositā, cū pars homīnum in agris remanēret, pars etiam in castra ventitāret, ii, qui pro portis castrōrum ⁴ in statiōne erant, Cæsari renunciārent, pulvĕrem ^g majōrem, ⁵ quā consuetūdo ferret,^h in eā parte vidēri, quam ⁱ in partem legio iter fecisset. Cæsar id, quod erat, suspicātus, aliquid ^j novi a barbāris inītum ^k consilii, cohortes, quæ ⁶ in stationibus erant, secum in eam partem proficisci,^l duas ex reliquis ⁷ in statiōnem succedēre,^l reliquas armāri^l et confestim sese subsēqui^l jussit. Cū paulō longiūs a castris processisset, suos ^m ab hostibus premi,^m atque ⁿ agrē sustinēre, ⁸ et, confertā legiōne, ex omnibus partibus tela ⁿ conjici,^m animum advertit. Nam ⁹ quōd, omni ex reliquis partibus demesso frumento, pars una erat reliqua, suspicāti hostes, huc nostros esse ventūros, noctu in silvis delituērunt: tum dispersos, depositis armis, in metendo ⁿ occupātos, subito adorti, paucis interfectis, reliquos ¹⁰ incertis ordinibus perturbavērunt: simul equitātū^e atque essēdis^e circumdederant.

33. ¹¹ Genus hoc est ex essēdis pugnæ: primò per omnes partes perequitant, et tela conjiciunt, atque ¹² ipso ^o terrōre equōrum, et strepitu rotārum, ordīnes plerumque perturbant;

^a § 44, II. 2.

^e § 129, R.

^k 98, 2.

^b 37, 6, Note. 1. & 43.

^f § 148, R. LXIII.

^l 90, 4.

^g § 145, R.

^m 96, 6.

^c 19, (*navium*.)

^h § 141, Obs. 7.

ⁿ § 147, Obs. 5.

^d § 114, Obs. 4.

ⁱ 37, 6, Note. 1.

^o 32, 5.

et cū se inter equitum turmas ¹insinuavērint,^a ex essēdis desiliunt, et pedibus praeliantur. ²Aurīgæ intērim paulātim ex praelio excēdunt, ³atque ita curru ^bse collōcant, ut, si illi a multitudīne hostium premantur,^c expeditum ad suos receptum habeant.^d ⁴Ita mobilitātem equitum, stabilitātem pedītum, in praeliis præstant: ⁵ac tantum usu quotidiāno et exercitatiōne efficiunt, utī, in declivi ac præcipiti loco, ⁶incitātos equos sustinēre, ⁷et brevi^e moderārī ac flectēre, et per temōnem percurrēre, et in iugo insistēre, et inde se in curus citissimē recipere consuērint.^d

34. Quibus ^frebus,^g perturbātis nostris novitāte pugnæ, tempore ^hopportunissimō Cæsar auxilium tulit: namque ejus adventu ⁱhostes constitērunt, nostri se ex timōre recepērunt. Quo ^kfacto, ad lacessendum et ad committendum praelium aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus,^l suo se loco ^mcontinuit, et, brevi tempore intermisso, in castra legiōnes reduxit. Dum hæc geruntur, nostris omnibus occupātis, qui erant in agris, reliqui discessērunt. Secūtæ sunt ⁿcontinuos complures dies^m tempestātes, quæ ^oet nostros in castris continērent,ⁿ et hostem a pugnā prohibērent.ⁿ Intērim barbāri nuncios in omnes partes dimisērunt, paucitatemque nostrōrum militum ^psuis prædicavērunt, et, ^qquanta prædæ faciendæ,^o atque in perpetuum sui liberandi,^o facultas darētur,^p si Romānos castris^q expulissent, demonstravērunt. His rebus celeriter magnā multitudīne peditātūs equitatūsque coactā, ad castra venērunt.

35. Cæsar, etsi idem,^r quod superioribus diēbus ^saccidērat, fore vidēbat, ut, si essent hostes pulsi, celeritāte periculum effugērent; ^stamen nactus equites circiter triginta,

^a § 140, Obs. 3.

^g § 136, Obs. 5 (*in.*)

ⁿ § 141, Obs. 3.

^b § 136, Obs. 5, (*cum.*) ^h § 131, R. XL.

^o 112, 5.

^c § 140, 2.

ⁱ § 129, R.

^p § 140, 5.

^d § 140, 1, 1st.

^k 38, 5.

^q § 136, R. LII.

^e 19, (*tempore.*)

^l 106, 1.

^r § 145, R. & 19.

^f 38.

^m § 131, R. XLI.

^s § 145, Obs. 6.

quos Commius Atrēbas, de quo ¹antè dictum est, ^a secum transportavērat, legiōnes in acie pro castris constituit. Commisso prœlio, diutius nostrōrum milītum impētum hostes ferre non potuērunt, ac terga vertērunt. Quos ^b tanto spatio ^c secūti, quantum ^d cursu ^e et virībus efficēre potuērunt, complūres ex iis occidērunt; deinde, ²omnībus ^f longè latèque afflictis incensisque, se in castra recepērunt.

36. Eōdem die legāti, ab hostībus missi ad Cæsārem de pace, venērunt. His ³ Cæsar numērum obsīdum, quem antea imperavērat, duplicāvit, eosque in continentem addūci ^h iussit, quòd, propinquā ³ die ⁱ æquinoctii, infirmis navībus, ⁴hiēmi ^k navigatiōnem subjiciendam ^l non existimābat. Ipse, idoneam tempestātem nactus, paulò post mediam noctem naves solvit, quæ omnes incolūmes ad continentem pervenērunt; sed ex his onerariæ duæ ⁵ eosdem, quos reliquæ, ^m portus capēre non potuērunt, et paulo infrā delātæ sunt.

37. ⁶ Quibus ^b ex navībus cū essent expositi milītes circīter trecenti, atque in castra contendērent, Morīni, quos Cæsar, in Britanniam proficiscens, pacātos reliquērat, spe ^e prædæ adducti, primò ⁷ non ita magno suōrum numēro circumstetērunt, ac, ⁸ si sese interfīci nollent, ⁿ arma ponēre iussērunt. Cū illi, ⁹ orbe facto, sese defendērent, celerīter ad clamōrem homīnum circīter millia sex convenērunt. Quā ^b re nunciātā, Cæsar omnem ex castris equitātum suis ^o auxilio ^o misit. Intērim nostri milītes impētum hostium sustinuērunt, atque ampliùs horis ^p quatuor fortissimè pugnavērunt, et, paucis vulnerībus acceptis, complūres ex iis occidērunt. Postea verò quàm equitātus noster in conspēctum venit, hostes abjectis armis ¹⁰ terga vertērunt, magnusque eōrum numērus est occīsus.

^a 67, Note. (*a nobis.*) § 123, R.

^b § 38.

^c § 132, R. XLII.

^d 44, 3.

^e § 129, R.

^f 19, (*negotiis.*)

^h 90, 4.

ⁱ § 110, 1

^k § 126, R. III.

^l 108, 4.

^m § 101, Obs. 4, (*ceperunt.*)

ⁿ § 140, 2.

^o § 114, R.

^p § 120, R.

38. Cæsar postëro die Titum Labiënum legātum, cum iis legionibus, quas ex Britannia reduxerat, in Morinos, qui rebellionem fecerant, misit. Qui,^a cum propter siccitates paludum, quod se recipèrent,^b non haberent^c (quo perfugio^d superiore anno fuerant usi), omnes ferè in potestatem Labieni venerunt. At Quintus Titurius et Lucius Cotta, legati, qui in Menapiorum fines legiones duxerant, omnibus eorum agris vastatis, frumentis succisis, ædificiis incensis, quod Menapii se omnes¹ in densissimas silvas abdidérant, se ad Cæsarem recepērunt. Cæsar in Belgis omnium legionum hiberna constituit. Eo duæ omnino civitates ex Britannia obsides miserunt; reliquæ neglexērunt. His rebus gestis, ex literis Cæsaris diërum^e viginti supplicatio a Senatu decreta est.

^a 39, 5.

^c § 140, Obs. 4.

^e § 106, R. VII.

^b § 140, 5.

^d § 121, R. XXVI.

BOOK V.

GENERAL ARGUMENT.

I. Cæsar's second expedition into Britain—Chap. 1-23. II. War with Ambiorix—Chap. 24-54. III. Insurrection among the Treviri repressed—Chap. 55-58.

1. ¹ LUCIO DOMITIO, Appio Claudio, consulibus, discēdens ab hibernis Cæsar in Italiam, ut quotannis facere consuērat, legātis impērat, quos legionibus præfecerat, uti, ² quamplurimas ^a possent, hieme ^b naves ædificandas ^c veteresque reficiendas ^c curarent. Eārum modum formamque demonstrat. ³ Ad celeritatem onerandi subductionesque paulò facit humiliores, quàm quibus ^d in ⁴ nostro mari uti consuevimus; atque id eo ^e magis, quòd propter crebras commutationes æstuum minùs magnos ibi fluctus fieri cognoverat: ad onera et ad multitudinem jumentorum transportandam paulò latiores, quàm quibus ^d in reliquis utimur maribus. Has omnes ⁵ actuarias impērat fieri, quam ad rem multum humilitas ⁶ adjuvat. Ea, quæ sunt usui ⁷ ad armandas naves, ex Hispaniâ apportari jubet. Ipse, conventibus Galliæ citerioris peractis, in Illyricum proficiscitur, quòd a Pirustis finitimam partem Provinciæ incursionibus vastari audiēbat. Eò cùm venisset, civitatibus ^f milites impērat, certumque in locum convenire jubet. Quā ^g re nunciatâ, Pirustæ legatos ad eum mittunt, qui ^h doceant, nihil earum rerum publico factum consilio, seseque paratos esse demonstrant, ⁸ omnibus rationibus ⁱ de injuriis satisfacere. Acceptâ oratione eorum, Cæsar obsides impērat, eosque ad certam diem adduci jubet: nisi ita fecerint, sese bello civitatem persecuturum de-

^a § 134, Obs. 6, 3d.

^d 37.

^g 38, 5.

^b § 131, R. XLI.

^e § 132, Obs. 6.

^h § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.

^c 108, 4.

^f § 123, R. & 5. 1.

ⁱ § 129, R.

monstrat. His ad diem adductis, ut imperavērat, arbitros inter civitatē dat, ¹ qui litem æstiment ^a pœnamque constituent.^a

2. His confectis rebus ²conventibusque peractis, in citiōrem Galliam revertitur, atque inde ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eò cū venisset, circuitis omnibus hibernis, singulāri militum studio, in summā omnium rerum inopiā, circiter sexcentas ejus genēris, cujus ^b suprā demonstravimus, naves et longas viginti octo invēnit ³ instructas, ⁴ neque multū abesse ab eo, quin paucis diēbus dedūci possent.^c Colaudātis militibus^d atque iis^d qui negotio præfuērant, quid fieri velit, ostendit, atque omnes ad portum Itium convenire jubet, quo ex portu commodissimum in Britanniam ^etransmissum^e esse cognovērat, circiter millium passuum^f triginta a continenti. Huic rei quod satis esse visum est militum,^g reliquit: ipse cum legionibus ⁶expeditis quatuor et equitibus octingentis in fines Trevirōrum proficiscitur, quod hi neque ad concilia veniēbant, neque imperio ^h parēbant, Germanosque transrhenānos sollicitāre dicebantur.

3. Hæc civitas longē plurimū totius Galliæ equitatu valet, magnasque habet copias peditum, Rhenumque, ut suprā demonstravimus, tangit. In eā civitatē duoⁱ de principatu inter se contendēbant, Indutiomārus et Cingetōrix: ex quibus ⁷alter, simul atque^k de Cæsāris legionumque adventu cognitum est, ad eum venit: se suosque omnes in officio futūros, neque ab amicitia Populi Romāni defectūros confirmāvit; quæque in Treviris gererentur,^l ostendit. At Indutiomārus equitatum peditatumque cogēre,^m iisque,^d qui per ætatem in armis esse non potērant, in ⁸silvam Arduennam abdītis, quæ ingenti magnitudine per medios fines Trevirōrum a flumine Rheno ad initium Remōrum pertinet, bellum parāre^m instituit. Sed postea quā nonnulli principes ex

^a § 141, Obs. 2, 4th. ^e § 145, R.

ⁱ 19, 1.

^b § 99, Exc. 2.

^f § 106, R. VII.

^k 124, 18.

^c § 140, 3.

^g § 106. R. VIII. Obs. 10. ^l § 140, 5.

^d 109, 2.

^h 112, R. V.

^m § 144, R. LVII.

ea civitatē, et familiaritatē Cingetorīgis adducti et adventu nostri exercītus perterrīti, ad Cæsārem venērunt, et de suis privātim rebus ab eo petere cōpērunt, ¹ quoniam civitatī consulere non possent: ^a Indutiomārus, veritus ^b ne ^c ab omnibus desereretur, legātos ad Cæsārem mittit; ^d sese idcirco ab suis discedere atque ad eum venire noluisse, quò facilius civitatē in officio contineret, ne omnis nobilitātis discessu plebs propter imprudentiam ² laberetur. Itaque esse civitatem in suā potestate, seque, si Cæsar permittēret, ad eum in castra ventūrum, et suas civitatisque fortūnas ejus fidēi ³ permissūrum.

4. Cæsar, etsi intelligēbat, quā de causā ea dicerentur, ^e quæque eum res ab inſtitūto consilio deterrēret, ^e tamen, ne æstātem in Treviris consumere cogeretur, ^f omnibus ad Britannicum bellum rebus comparātis, Indutiomārum ad se cum ducentis obsidibus venire ^g jussit. His adductis, in iis filio propinquisque ejus omnibus, quos nominatim evocaverat, consolātus ^h Indutiomārum hortatusque est, uti in officio permaneret: nihilo tamen secius, principibus Trevirorum ad se convocātis, hos singillatim Cingetorīgi conciliāvit: quod cum ⁱ merito ejus ab se fieri intelligēbat, tum ^k magni ^k interesse arbitrabatur, ejus auctoritatem inter suos quamplurimum valere, cujus tam egregiam in se voluntatem perspexisset. ^l Id factum graviter tulit Indutiomārus, ⁴ suam gratiam inter suos minui; et, qui ^m jam antè inimico in nos animo fuisset, ⁵ multo gravius hōc dolore exarsit.

5. His rebus constitūtis, Cæsar ad portum Itium cum legionibus pervēnit. Ibi cognoscit, quadraginta naves, quæ in Meldis factæ erant, tempestāte rejectas. ⁶ cursum tenere non potuisse, atque eodem, unde erant profectæ, revertisse: reliquas parātas ad navigandum atque omnibus rebus in-

^a § 140, Obs. 2.

^c § 140, 5.

ⁱ 124, 8.

^b 106, 1.

^f § 140, 1, 21.

^k § 113, Exc. I.

^e § 140, Obs. 6, & 121.

^g 90, 4.

^l § 141, Obs. 7.

^d 94, 4, & § 145, R.

^h 115, 1.

^m § 141, R. III.

structas invēnit. Eòdem totius Galliæ equitātus convēnit, numēro^a millium quatuor, principesque omnibus ex civitatibus: ex quibus perpaucos, quorum in se fidem perspexerat, relinquere in Galliā, reliquos obsidum loco^a secum ducere, decreverat; quòd, cùm ipse abesset, motum Galliæ verebatur.

6. Erat unà cum ceteris Dumnōrix Æduus, de quo ab nobis¹ antea dictum est. Hunc secum habere in primis constituērat, quòd eum² cupidum rerum^b novarum, cupidum imperii, magni animi,^c magnæ inter Gallos auctoritatis,^c cognoverat. Accedēbat huc, quòd jam in concilio Æduorum Dumnōrix dixerat, sibi^d a Cæsare regnum civitatis deferri: quod^e dictum Ædui graviter ferēbant, neque recusandi aut deprecandi causā legatos ad Cæsarem mittere audēbant.³ Id factum ex suis hospitibus Cæsar cognoverat. Ille omnibus primò precibus⁴ petere contendit, ut in Galliā relinquerentur; partim, quòd insuetus navigandi^b mare timēret;^f partim, quòd religionibus sese dicēret impediri. Posteaquam id obstinātè sibi^d negari vidit, omni spe impetrandi ademtā, principes Galliæ sollicitare, sevocare singulos hortarique cœpit, uti in continenti remanerent;^g metu territare^h non sine causā fieri, ut Gallia omni nobilitate^b spoliaretur: id esse consilium Cæsaris, ut, quos in conspectu Galliæ interficere vereretur, hos omnes in Britanniam transductos necaret:^f ⁶ fidem reliquis interponere, jusjurandum poscere, ut, ⁷ quodⁱ esse ex usu Galliæ intellexissent, communi consilio administrarent. Hæc a compluribus ad Cæsarem deferrebantur.

7. Quā^c re cognitā, Cæsar, ⁸ quòd tantum civitati Æduæ dignitatis^k tribuerat, coercendum^l atque deterrendum,^l quibuscumque rebus posset, Dumnorigem statuēbat; quòd⁹ longius ejus amentiam progrēdi vidēbat, ¹⁰ prospiciendum,^m

^a § 136, Obs. 5, (de.) ^e 38.

ⁱ 37, 2.

^b § 107, R. IX.

^f § 141, Obs. 7.

^k § 106, R. VIII

^c § 106, R. VII.

^g § 140, 1, 3d.

^l 108, 4.

^d § 126, R. III.

^h § 126, R. V.

^m 113, 5.

¹ ne quid ^a sibi ^b ac rei publicæ nocere posset. Itaque dies ^c circiter viginti quinque in eo loco commoratus, quod ² Corus ventus navigatiōnem impediēbat, qui magnam partem ^e omnis temporis in his locis flare consuevit, dabat opēram, ut in officio Dumnorīgem contineret, ^d nihilo tamen secius omnia ejus consilia ³ cognosceret: ^d tandem, idoneam nactus tempestatem, milites equitesque conscendere naves jubet. At, ⁴ omnium impeditis animis, Dumnōrix cum equitibus Æduorum a castris, insciente Cæsare, domum ^e discedere cœpit. Quâ re nunciâtâ, Cæsar, intermissâ profectione atque omnibus rebus postpositis, magnam partem equitatus ad eum insequendum mittit, retrahique ^f impērat: si vim faciat neque ^g pareat, interfici ^f jubet: nihil ^h hunc ^h se absente pro sano facturum arbitratus, qui præsentis imperium neglexisset. ⁱ Ille enim revocatus resistere ac se manu defendere suorumque fidem implorare cœpit, sæpe clamitans, “liberum se liberæque civitatis ^k esse.” Illi, ut erat imperatum, circumstant atque hominem interficiunt; at Ædui equites ad Cæsarem omnes revertuntur.

8. His rebus gestis, Labiēno in continente cum tribus legionibus et equitum millibus duobus relicto, ut portus tueretur ^d et rem frumentariam provideret, ^d quæque in Galliâ gererentur ¹ cognosceret, ^d ⁷ consiliumque pro tempore et pro re caperet, ^d ipse cum quinque legionibus et ⁸ pari numero equitum quem in continenti relinquēbat, solis occasu ^m naves solvit, et, leni Africo provectus, mediâ circiter nocte ^m vento intermisso, cursum non tenuit, et, ⁹ longius delatus æstu, ortâ luce, sub sinistrâ Britanniam relictam conspexit. Tum rursus, æstus commutatiōnem ¹⁰ secutus, remis contendit, ut eam partem insulæ caperet, ^d quâ optimum esse egressum superiore æstate cognovērat. Quâ in re admōdum fuit

^a § 116, Obs. 3.^b § 112, R. V.^c § 131, R. XLI.^d § 140, 1. 2d.^e § 130, 4.^f 90, 4.^g § 93, 1, (*and not.*)^h § 145, R.ⁱ § 141, R. III.^k § 108, R. XII.^l § 140, 5.^m § 131, R. XL.

milītum ¹ virtus laudanda, qui ² vectoriis gravibusque navigiis, non intermisso remigandi labōre, longārum navium cursum adæquārunť. ³ Accessum est ^a ad Britanniam omnībus navībus¹ meridiāno ferē tempōre : neque in eo loco hostis est visus, sed, ut postea Cæsar ex captīvis compērit, cūm^b magnæ manus eò convenissent,^b multitudīne navium perterrītæ (quæ ⁴ cum annotīnis privatisque, quas sui quisque commōdi^c fecerat, ampliūs octingentis uno erant visæ tempōre), a littōre discesserant ac se in superiōra loca abdidērunt.

9. Cæsar, exposito exercitu et loco castris^d idoneo capto, ubi ex captīvis cognōvit, quo in loco hostium copię condisissent,^e cohortībus decem ad mare relictis et equitībus trecentis, qui^f præsidio^g navībus essent, de tertiā vigiliā ad hostes contendit, eo minūs^h verītus navībus,^h quòdⁱ in littōre molli atque aperto deligātas ad anchōram relinquebat ; et præsidio^e navībus Quintum Atrium præfēcit. - Ipse, noctu progressus millia passuum circiter duodēcim, hostium copias conspicātus est. Illi, equitātu¹ atque essēdis ad flumen progressi, ex loco superiōre nostros prohibēre et prælium committere cœperunt. Repulsi ab equitātu, se in silvas abdidērunt, locum nacti, egregiē et natūrā et opēre munītum, quem domestici belli, ut videbātur, causā jam antē præparaverant : nam crebris arborībus^k succīs omnes introitus erant⁷ præclūsi. Ipsi ex silvis rari propugnābant, nostrosque intra munitiōnes ingrēdi prohibēbant. At milītes legiōnis septīmæ, ⁸ testudīne^k factā, et aggēre ad munitiōnes adjecto, locum cepērunt eosque ex silvis expulērunt, paucis vulnerībus^k acceptis. Sed eos fugientes longiūs Cæsar prosēqui vetuit, et quòd loci natūram ignorābat, et quòd, magnā parte diēi consumptā munitiōni¹ castrōrum tempus relinqui volēbat.

^a 67, 5, Note.

^c § 140, 5.

ⁱ § 136, Obs. 5, (cum)

^b § 140, Obs. 3.

^f § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.

^k 109, 2.

^c § 106, Obs. 3. (causā.)

^g § 114, R.

¹ § 110, R. XV.

^d § 111, R.

^h § 112, R. XVII.

10. Postridie ejus diē^a mane ¹tripartitò milites equitesque in expeditionem misit, ut eos, qui fugerant, persequerentur. His aliquantum itineris^b progressis, cum jam extrēmi^c essent in prospectu, equites a Quinto Atrio ad Cæsarem venerunt, qui^d nunciarent, ²superiøre nocte, maximā coortā tempestate, prope omnes naves ³afflictas^e atque in littore ejectas esse; ^equod neque anchoræ funesque ⁴subsisterent,^f neque nautæ gubernatoresque vim pati tempestatis possent: ^f itaque ⁵ex eo concursu navium magnum esse ⁶incommōdum acceptum.^g

11. His rebus cognitis, Cæsar legiones equitatumque revocari atque itinere desistere jubet: ipse ad naves revertitur: eadem ferè, quæ ex nuntiis literisque cognoverat, ⁷coram perspicit, sic ut, amissis circiter quadraginta navibus, reliquæ tamen refici posse magno negotio viderentur.^g Itaque ex legionibus fabros delēgit, et ex continenti alios accessiri jubet^h; Labiēno^h scribit, ut, quàm plurimas posset, iis legionibusⁱ quæ sint^k apud eum, naves instituat. Ipse, etsi ⁸res erat multæ opē^h ac labōris, tamen commodissimum esse statuit, omnes naves ⁹subdūci^m et cum castris unā munitione conjungi. In his rebus circiter dies decem consumit, ne nocturnisⁿ quidem temporibus ad laborem militum intermissis. Subductis navibus castrisque egregiè munitis, easdem copias, quas antè, præsidio navibus reliquit: ipse eodem, unde redierat, proficiscitur. Eò cum venisset, majores jam undique in eum locum copiarum Britannorum conveniant, ¹⁰summa imperii bellicæ administrandi communi consilio permissa Cassivellauno,^o cujus fines a maritimis civitatibus flumen dividit, quod appellatur Tamēsis, a mari circiter millia passuum octoginta. Huic^p ¹¹superiøre tempore cum reliquis civitatibus continentia bella intercessē-

^a § 135, R. XLVI.^f § 141, Obs. 7.¹ § 106, R. VII.^b § 106, R. VIII.^g § 140, 1, 1st.^m 94, 3.^c Sup. *fugientium*.^h § 123, R.ⁿ 121, Note. 2.^d § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.ⁱ § 136, Obs. 5, (*ex.*)^o § 126, R. III.^e 93, 2.^k § 141, Obs. 8.^p § 112, R. IV.

rant: sed nostro adventu permōti Britanni hunc toti bello^a imperiōque præfecerant.

12. Britanniae pars interior ab iis incolitur, ¹ quos^b natos in insulâ ipsâ, memoriâ proditum dicunt: maritima pars ab iis, qui prædæ ac belli inferendi causâ ex Belgis transiērunt; qui omnes ferè iis nominibus civitatum appellantur, quibus^c orti ex civitatibus eò pervenerunt, et ² bello illato ibi remanserunt atque agros colere cœperunt. Hominum est infinîta multitudo, ³ creberrimæque ædificia, ⁴ ferè Gallicis^d consimilia: pecorum magnus numerus. Utuntur aut ære,^e aut ⁵ taleis ferreis, ad certum pondus examinâti, pro nummo. Nascitur ibi ⁶ plumbum album in mediterraneis regionibus, in maritimis ferrum; sed ejus exigua est ⁷ copia: ære^e utuntur importato. ⁸ Materia cujusque generis, ut in Galliâ, est, præter fagum atque abiëtem. Leporem et gallinam et ansërem gustare, fas non putant; hæc tamen alunt ⁹ animi voluptatisque causâ. ¹⁰ Loca sunt temperatiōra, quàm in Galliâ, ¹¹ remissioribus frigoribus.^f

13. Insula naturâ ¹² triquetra, cujus unum latus est contra Galliam. Hujus latëris alter angulus, qui est ¹³ ad Cantium, quo ferè omnes ex Galliâ naves appellantur, ad orientem solem; inferior ad meridiem spectat. Hoc latus tenet circiter millia passuum quingenta. Alterum vergit ¹⁴ ad Hispaniam atque occidentem solem, quâ ex parte est Hibernia, ¹⁵ dimidio^h minor, ut æstimatur, quàm Britannia; ¹⁶ sed pari spatio^k transmissus, atque^l ex Galliâ, est in Britanniam. In hoc medio cursu est insula, quæ appellatur ¹⁷ Mona; complures præterea minores objectæ insulæ existimantur; de quibus^c insulis nonnulli scripserunt, ¹⁸ dies^m continuos triginta sub brumâ, esse noctem,^b Nos nihil de eo percontationibus reperiebamus, ¹⁹ nisi certis ex aquâ mensuris breviō-

^a § 123, R.

^e § 121, R. XXVI.

ⁱ § 120, Obs. 2, 2d.

^b § 145, R. & 91, 4.

^f 110.

^k § 132, R. XLII.

^c 37, 6, Note. 1.

^z 19, (*latus.*)

^l § 149, Obs. 6.

^d § 111, R. & 19.

^h § 132, R. XLIII.

^m § 131, R. XLI

res esse, quàm in continente, noctes videbāmus. Hujus est longitūdo latēris, ut fert illōrum opinio, ¹ septingentōrum millium.^a Tertium est ² contra septentriōnes, cui parti^b nulla est objecta terra; sed ejus angūlus latēris maxīmè ad Germaniam spectat: huic^c millia^d passuum ³ octingenta in longitudinem esse existimātur.^e Ita omnis insūla est in circuitu vicies centum millium passuum.

14. Ex his omnibus longè sunt ⁴ humanissīmi, qui Cantium incōlunt, quæ regio est maritima omnis; neque multum a Gallicā diffērent consuetudine. Interiōres plerique frumenta non serunt, sed lacte^f et carne vivunt, pellibusque^g sunt vestīti. Omnes verò ⁵ se Britanni vitro inficiunt, quod cæruleum efficit colōrem, atque hoc horridiōre sunt in pugna aspectu:^h ⁶ capillōqueⁱ sunt promisso atque omni parte corpōris rasā, præter caput et labrum superius. Uxōres habent ⁷ deni duodenique inter se commūnes, et maxīmè fratres cum fratribus parentesque cum libēris; sed, si qui sunt ex his nati, eōrum habentur libērī, ⁸ quo^k primū virgo quæque deducta est.

15. Equites hostium essedariique acriter prælio cum equitatu nostro in itinere conflixerunt, ⁹ tamen ut nostri omnibus partibus superiōres fuerint, atque eos in silvas collesque compulerint: sed compluribus interfectis, cupidius^l insecuti, nonnullos ex suis amisērunt. At illi, intermisso spatio, imprudentibus nostris atque occupatis in munitiōne castrōrum, subito se ex silvis ejecerunt, impetūque in eos facto, qui erant in statione pro castris collocati, acriter pugnāverunt: duabusque ¹⁰ submissis cohortibus a Cæsare, atque his primis legionum^m duarum, cum hæc, perexiguo intermisso loci spatio inter se, ¹¹ constitissent, novo genere pugnae perterritis nostris, per medios audacissimè perruperunt, seque inde in-

^a § 132, Obs. 3.^e 51.^l § 136, Obs. 5, (cum)^b § 126, R. III.^f § 121, Obs. 2.^k § 136, Obs. 5, (a.)^c § 112, R. II.^g § 126, R. V.ⁱ 22, 3.^d § 145, R.^h § 106, R. VII.^m § 107, R. X.

colūmes recepērunt. Eo die Quintus Laberius Durus, tribūnus militum, interficitur. Illi, pluribus immissis cohortibus, repelluntur.

16. Toto hoc in genere pugnae, ¹cū sub oculis omnium ac pro castris dimicarētur, ²intellectum est, ^anostros ^bpropter gravitatem armaturae, quod neque insēqui ³cedentes possent, neque ab signis discedere auderent, minū aptos esse ad hujus generis hostem; equites ^bautem magno cum periculo dimicare, ^cpropterea quod illi etiam consulto plerumque ⁴cederent, ^det, cū paulum ab legionibus nostros removissent, ex essedis desilirent ^eet pedibus ^edispāri praelio contendērent. Equestris autem praelii ratio et cedentibus ^fet insequentibus par atque idem periculum inferēbat. Accedēbat huc, ut, nunquam ⁶conferti, sed rari magnisque intervallis ^gpraeliarentur, ^hstationesque dispositas haberent, ^hatque ⁷alios alii deinceps exciperent, integrīque et recentes defatigātis succederent. ^h

17. Postero die procul a castris hostes in collibus constituerunt, rarique se ostendere et ⁸lenius, quā pridie, nostros equites praelio lacesere cōpērunt. Sed meridie, cū Cæsar pabulandi causā tres legiōnes atque omnem equitatum cum Caio Trebonio legato misisset, repente ex omnibus partibus ad pabulatōres advolaverunt, sic, ⁹ut ab signis legionibusque non absisterent. Nostri, acriter in eos impetu facto, repulērunt, neque finem sequendi fecērunt, quoad subsidio ⁱconfisi equites, cū post se legiōnes viderent, praecepit hostes egērunt: magnōque eōrum numēro interfecto, neque sui colligendi, neque consistendi, aut ex essedis desiliendi facultatem dederunt. Ex hac fugā protinus, quae undique convenērant, auxilia discessērunt: ¹⁰neque post id tempus unquam summis nobiscum copiis hostes contendērunt.

^a 51, 2.

^b § 145, R.

^c 96, 2.

^d § 140, 6.

^e § 129, R.

^f 19, & § 123, R.

^g § 132, R. XLII.

^h § 140, 1, 4th.

ⁱ § 112, R. V.

18. Cæsar, cognito consilio eorum, ad flumen Tamēsin in fines Cassivellauni exercitum duxit; quod^a flumen uno omnino loco^b pedibus, atque hoc^c ægrè, transiri potest. Eò cum venisset, animadvertit, ad alteram fluminis ripam magnas esse copias hostium instructas: ripa autem erat¹ acutis sudibus^d præfixis munita; ejusdem generis sub aqua defixæ sudes flumine^d tegebantur. His rebus cognitis a captivis perfugisque, Cæsar, præmisso equitatu, confestim legiones subsequi jussit. Sed eâ^e celeritate atque eo^e impetu milites ierunt, ²cum capite solo ex aqua exstarent,^f ut hostes impetum legionum atque equitum sustinere non possent,^g ripasque dimitterent ac se fugæ mandarent.

19. Cassivellaunus, ³ut supra demonstravimus, omni deposita spe contentiōnis, ⁴dimissis amplioribus copiis, millibus circiter quatuor essedariorum relictis, itinera nostra servabat, paululumque ⁵ex viâ excedēbat, locisque^b impeditis ac silvestribus sese occultabat, atque iis regionibus,^b quibus^b nos iter facturos cognoverat, pecora atque homines ex agris in silvas compellēbat: et, cum equitatus noster, liberius^h prædandi vastandique causâ, se in agros effunderet, omnibus viisⁱ notis semitisque essedarios ex silvis emittēbat, et magno cum periculo nostrorum equitum cum iis configēbat, atque hoc metu latius^h vagari prohibēbat. ⁶Relinquebatur, ut neque longius ab agmine legionum discēdi^k Cæsar pateretur, et tantum^l in agris vastandis incendiisque faciendis ⁷hostibus^m noceretur,^k quantum labore^d atque itinere legionarii milites efficere poterant.

20. Interim Trinobantes, propè firmissima earum regionum civitas, ex qua Mandubratius adolescens, Cæsaris fidem secutus, ad eum in continentem Galliam venerat (cujus pater Imanuentius in eâ civitate regnum obtinuerat, interfec-

^a 37, 6, Note. 1.

^c 28, 1.

ⁱ 109, 2.

^b § 136, Obs. 5, (in.)

^f § 140, Obs. 3.

^k § 85, 3.

^e 19, loco, Sup. (in.)

^g § 140, 1, 1st.

^l § 116, Obs. 3.

^d 129, R.

^h 22, 3.

^m 66, 7.

tusque erat a Cassivellauno, ipse fugâ mortem vitaverat), legâtos ad Cæsarem mittunt, pollicenturque, sese ei deditûros atque imperâta factûros: petunt, ut Mandubratium ab injuriâ Cassivellauni defendat,^a ¹ atque in civitatem mittat, qui præsit^b imperiumque obtineat.^b His^c Cæsar impêrat obsides quadraginta frumentumque exercitui,^d Mandubratiumque ad eos mittit. Illi imperâta celeriter fecerunt, obsides ² ad numërum frumentâque miserunt.

21. Trinobantibus defensis atque ab omni militum injuriâ ³ prohibitis, Cenimagi, Segontiaci, Ancalites, Bibröci, Cassi, legationibus missis sese Cæsari dedunt. Ab his cognoscit, non longè ex eo loco oppidum Cassivellauni abesse, silvis^e paludibusque munitum, quo^f satis magnus hominum pecorisque numërus convenit. (⁴ Oppidum autem Britanni vocant, cum silvas impeditas vallo atque fossâ muniunt,^g quò incursiõnis hostium vitandæ causâ convenire consuunt.) Eò proficiscitur cum legionibus: locum reperit egregiè natûrâ^e atque opère munitum; tamen hunc duabus ex partibus oppugnare contendit. Hostes, paulisper morati, militum nostrorum impetum non tulerunt, seseque aliâ ex parte oppidi ejecerunt. Magnus ibi numërus pecoris repertus, multique in fugâ sunt comprehensi atque interfecti.

22. Dum hæc in his locis geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad Cantium, quod^h esse ⁵ ad mare suprâ demonstravimus, quibusⁱ regionibus^k quatuor reges præerant, Cingetorix, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segonax, nuncios mittit, atque his impêrat, uti, coactis omnibus copiis, castra navalia de improvîso^l ⁶ adorianur atque oppugnent. Ii cum ad castra venissent, nostri, eruptiõne factâ, multis eorum^m interfectis, capto etiam nobili duce Lugotorige, suos incolumes reduxerunt. Cassivellaunus, hoc prælio nunciato, tot detrimentis accep-

^a § 140, 1, 3d.

^b § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.

^c § 123, R. & 5, 1.

^d § 110, R. XV.

^e § 129, R.

^f § 136, Obs. 5, (in.)

^g § 140, Obs. 3.

^h § 145, R. & 91.

ⁱ 37, 1, (regiones.)

^k § 112, R. I.

^l § 90, 6.

^m § 107, R. X.

tis, vastātis finibus, maxīmè etiam permōtus defectiōne civitatum, legātos per Atrebātem Commium de deditiōne ad Cæsārem mittit. Cæsar, cūm statuisset ^a hiēmē in continenti propter repentinōs Galliæ ¹ motus agēre, neque multum æstātis superesset, atque id facilè extrāhi posse intelligeret, obsides impērat, et, quid in annos singūlos vectigālis ^b Popūlo Romāno Britannia pendēret, ^c constituit; interdicit atque impērat Cassivellauno, ne Mandubratio, neu Trinobantibus bellum faciat. ^d

23. Obsidibus acceptis, exercitum reducit ad mare, naves invenit ² refectas. His deductis, quod et ^e ³ captivorum magnum numerum habebat, et nonnullæ tempestate deperierant naves, duobus ⁴ comitatibus exercitum reportare instituit. Ac sic accidit, uti ex tanto navium numero, tot ⁵ navigationibus, neque hoc, neque superiore anno, ^f ulla omnino navis, quæ milites portaret, ^g ⁶ desideraretur: ^h at ex iis, quæ inanes ex continenti ad eum remitterentur, ⁱ et ⁷ prioris comitatus expositis militibus, et quas postea Labienus faciendas curaverat numero sexaginta, ⁸ perpaucæ locum caperent; ^k reliquæ fere omnes rejicerentur. ^k Quas ^l cūm aliquamdiu Cæsar frustra expectasset, ^a ne anni tempore a navigatione excluderentur, quod æquinotium suberat, ⁹ necessariò angustius milites collocavit, ac, summâ tranquillitate consecutâ, secundâ initâ cūm solvisset vigiliâ, primâ luce terram attigit, omnesque incolūmes naves perduxit.

24. ¹⁰ Subductis navibus, concilioque Gallorum Samarbivæ^m peracto, quod eo anno ¹¹ frumentum in Galliâ propter siccitates angustius provenerat, coactus est aliter, ac superioribus annis, ^f exercitum in hibernis collocare, legionesque ¹² in plures civitates distribuere: ex quibus unam in Morinos ducendam Caio Fabio legato dedit; alteram in Nervios

^a § 140, Obs. 4.

^e 124, 1.

ⁱ § 141, Obs. 3.

^b § 106, R. VIII.

^f § 131, R, XL.

^k Sup. *accidit ut.*

^c § 140, 5.

^g § 141, R. I. & Obs. 1.

^l 38.

^d § 140, 1, 3d.

^h § 140, 1, 4th.

^m § 130, R. XXXVI.

Quintio Cicerōni; tertiam in Essuos Lucio Roscio; quartam in Remis cum Tito Labieno in confinio Trevirōrum hiemāre jussit; tres in Belgio collocāvit: his Marcum Crassum, quæstōrem, et Lucium Munatium Plancum et Caium Trebonium, legātos,^a præfēcit. Unam legiōnem, quam proximè trans Padum conscripsērat, et cohortes quinque in Eburōnes, quorum pars maxīma est inter Mosam ac Rhenum, qui sub imperio Ambiorigis et Cativolci erant, misit. His^b militibus Quintum Titurium Sabīnum et Lucium Aurunculeium Cottam, legātos,^a præesse jussit. Ad hunc modum distribūtis legiōnibus, facillimè inopiæ^c frumentariæ sese ¹ medēri posse existimāvit: atque harum^d tamen omnium hiberna (præter eam, quam Lucio Roscio in pacatissimam et quietissimam partem ducendam dedērat), ² millibus passuum centum continebantur. Ipse interea, quoad legiōnes collocāset^e munitāque hiberna cognovisset, in Galliā morārī constituit.

25. Erat in Carnutibus ³ summo loco^f natus Tasgetius, cujus majōres in suā civitatē regnum obtinuērant. Huic Cæsar, pro ejus virtūte atque in se benevolentia, quod in omnibus bellis singulāri ejus operā fuērat usus, majōrum locum restituērat. ⁴ Tertium jam hunc annum^g regnantem inimici palam, multis etiam ex civitatē auctoribus, interfecērunt. Defertur ea res ad Cæsārem. Ille veritus, ⁵ quod ad plures pertinēbat, ne^h civitas eōrum impulsu deficēret, Lucium Plancum cum legiōne ex Belgio celeriter in Carnutes proficisci jubet, ibique hiemāre; quorumque operā cognovērit Tasgetium interfectum, hos comprehensos ad se mittere. Intērim ab omnibus legātis quæstoribusque, quibus legiōnes transdidērat, certior factus est, ⁶ in hiberna perventumⁱ locumque hibernis esse munitum.

26. Diēbus circiter quindēcim, quibus in hiberna ventum est,¹ initium repentinī tumultūs ac defectiōnis ortum est ab

^a § 97, Obs. 2.

^b § 112, R. I.

^c § 112, R. V.

^d 19, (*legiōnum*.)

^e § 140, 4.

^f § 119, R.

^g § 131, R. XLI.

^h § 140, Obs. 6 & 121, 6.

ⁱ 67, 5, Note.

Ambiorġge et Cativolco: ¹ qui^a cūm ad fines regni sui Sabīno^b Cottæque præstò fuissent, frumentumque in hiberna comportavissent, Indutiomāri Trevīri nunciis impulsī, suos concitavērunt, subitòque oppressis lignatorībus, magnā manu castra oppugnātum^c venērunt. Cūm celerīter nostri arma cepissent vallumque ascendissent, atque, unā ex parte Hispānis equitībus emissis, equestri prælio^d superiōres fuissent, ² desperātā re, hostes suos ab oppugnatione reduxērunt. Tum suo more conclamavērunt, utī aliqui ex nostris^e ad colloquium prodīrent; habēre se, quæ ³ de re commūni dicere vellent,^f quibus rebus controversias ⁴ minui posse sperārent.^f

27. Mittitur ad eos colloquendi causā Caius Arpineius, eques Romānus, familiāris Quintii Titurii et Quintus Junius ex Hispaniā quidam, qui jam antè ⁵ missu Cæsāris ad Ambiorġgem ventitāre consueverat: apud quos Ambiōrix ⁶ ad hunc modum locūtus est: ⁷ “ Sese pro Cæsāris in se beneficiis ⁸ plurimum ei confitēri debēre, quòd ejus operā stipendio⁸ liberātus esset,^f quod Aduatūcis finitīmis suis pendere consuēset: ^f quòdque ei et filius et fratris filius ab Cæsāre remissi essent, quos Aduatūci, obsidum numēro missos, apud se in servitūte et catēnis tenuissent: ^f neque id, quod fecerit ⁹ de oppugnatione castrōrum, aut iudicio^h aut voluntate suā fecisse,ⁱ sed coactu^h civitātis; ¹⁰ suāque esse ejusmodi imperia, ut non minus habēret^k juris in se multitudo, quā ipse in multitudīnem. Civitātī^l porro hanc fuisse belli causam, quòd repentinæ Gallōrum conjurationi resistere non potuerit: id se facīle ¹¹ ex humilitate suā probare posse, quòd non adeo sit ^f imperitus rerum, ut suis copiis^h Popūlum Romānum se superare posse confīdat: sed ¹² esse Galliæ commūne consilium; omnībus hibernis Cæsāris oppugnandis hunc esse dictum diem, ne qua legio altēræ legiōni^m subsidio

^a 39, 6.^b § 135, R. XLVII.^c § 148, 1.^d § 128, R.^e § 107, Obs. 8.^f § 141, Obs. 7.^g § 126, R. V.^h § 129, R.ⁱ § 145, Obs. 3.^k § 140, 1, 1st.^l § 112, R. II.^m § 114, R.

venire posset: ^a non facile Gallos Gallis ^b negare potuisse, praesertim cum de recuperanda communi libertate consilium initum videretur. ¹ Quibus ^c quoniam pro pietate satisfacere, habere se nunc rationem officii pro beneficiis Caesaris; monere, orare Titurium ^d ² pro hospitio, ut suae ac militum salutis consulat: magnam manum Germanorum conductam Rhenum transisse; ^e hanc ^f affore biduo. ³ Ipsorum esse consilium, velintne ^g prius, quam finitimi sentiant, ^h eductos ex hibernis milites aut ad Ciceronem aut ad Labienum deducere, quorum alter ⁱ millia passuum circiter quinquaginta, alter ¹ paulo amplius ab his absit. Illud se polliceri et iurejurando confirmare, tutum iter per fines suos daturum; ⁴ quod ^k cum faciat, et ^l civitati sese consulere, quod hibernis levetur, et ^l Caesar pro ejus meritis gratiam referre.” Hae oratione habitae, discedit Ambiorix.

28. Arpineius et Junius, quae audiierint, ad legatos deferunt. Illi, repentinam re perturbati, etsi ab hoste ea dicebantur, non tamen negligenda existimabant: maximèque hae re permovebantur, quod, civitatem ignobilem atque humilem Eburonum sua sponte Populo Romano bellum facere ausam, ^e vix erat credendum.^m Itaque ad consilium rem deferunt magnaque inter eos ⁿ existit controversia. Lucius Aurunculeius compluresque tribuni militum et primorum ordinum centuriones nihil temere agendum,^m neque ex hibernis injussu Caesaris discedendum,^m existimabant: “quantavis magnas etiam copias ^f Germanorum ^g sustineri posse munitionis hibernis,” docebant: ⁷ “rem esse testimonio,ⁿ quod primum hostium impetum, multis ultro vulneribus illatis, fortissimè sustinuerint: ^o re frumentaria non premi: interea et ex proximis hibernis et a Caesare conventura subsidia

^a § 140, 1, 2d.^c 98, 2.^k 38, 4.^b § 112, R. V.^f § 145, R. & 19.^l 124, 1.^c 39, & § 112, R. III.^g § 140, 5.^m 108.^d § 124, R. &^h § 140, 4.ⁿ § 114, R. & Obs. 4.

§ 116, Exp.

ⁱ 27, 10, Obs.^o § 140, 6.

postrēmo, “quid esse ¹levius aut turpius, quàm, ²auctōre hoste,^a de summis rebus capere consilium?”

29. Contra ea Titurius, “serò factūros,” ³clamitābat, “cum majōres hostium manus, adjunctis Germānis, convenissent: aut cūm aliquid calamitātis in proximis hibernis esset acceptum, brevem consulendi esse occasiōnem: ⁴Cæsarem^b arbitrāri profectum^c in Italiam: neque aliter Carnūtes interficiendi Tasgetii consilium fuisse captūros, neque Eburōnes, si ille adesset, tantā cum contentiōne nostri ad castra ventūros esse: ⁵non hostem auctōrem, sed rem spectāre; subesse Rhenum; magno esse Germānis dolōri Ariovisti mortem^b et superiōres nostras victorias:^b ⁶ardere Galliam,^b tot contumeliis acceptis sub Popūli Romāni imperium redactam, superiōre gloriā rei militāris extinctā.” Postrēmo, “quis hoc sibi^d persuaderet,^e ⁷sine certā re Ambiorīgem ad ejusmōdi consilium descendisse^c? Suam sententiam in utramque partem esse tutam: ⁸si nil sit durius, nullo pericūlo ad proximam legiōnem perventūros; si Gallia omnis cum Germānis consentiat, ⁹unam esse in celeritāte positam salutem. Cottæ quidem atque eōrum, qui dissentirent, consilium quem haberet^c exitum? In quo si non ¹⁰præsens pericūlum, at certè longinquā obsidiōne^f fames esset pertimescenda.”

30. ¹¹Hāc in utramque partem disputatione habītā, cūm a Cottā ¹²primisque ordinibus acriter resisteretur,^g ¹³“Vincite,” inquit, “si ita vultis,” Sabīnus, ¹⁴et id clariōre voce,^f ut magna pars militum exaudiret: “neque is sum,” inquit, “qui^h gravissimè ex vobis mortis pericūlo terrear: ¹⁵hi sapient, et si gravius quid accidērit, abs te ratiōnem reposcent: qui,ⁱ si per te liceat, perendīno die cum proximis hibernis conjuncti, commūnem cum reliquis belli casum sustineant, ¹⁶nec reiecti et relegāti longè ab cetēris aut ferro aut fame intereant.

^a 110, 1.^d § 123, R.^g 67.^b § 145, R.^e § 140, 6.^h § 141, Obs. 2, 2d, & 40.^c 98, 2.^f § 129, R.ⁱ § 141, R. III. & Exp.

31. ¹ Consurgitur^a ex consilio; comprehendunt ² utrumque et orant, “ne suâ dissensiōne et pertinaciâ rem in summum pericŭlum dedŭcant: ^b facilem esse rem, seu maneant, ^c seu proficiscantur, ^e si modò unum omnes sentiant ac probent; contrâ in dissensiōne nullam se salutem perspicere.” ³ Res disputatione ad mediam noctem perducitur. Tandem ⁴ dat Cotta permotus manus; superat sententia Sabini. ⁵ Pronunciatur, ^d primâ luce ituros: consumitur vigiliis reliqua pars noctis, cŭm sua quisque miles circumspiceret, ⁶ quid secum portare posset, ^e quid ex instrumento hibernorum relinquere cogeretur. ^e ⁷ Omnia excogitantur, quare nec sine pericŭlo maneatur et languore militum et ⁸ vigiliis pericŭlum augeatur. Primâ luce sic ex castris proficiscuntur, ⁹ ut quibus ^f esset persuasum, ^g non ab hoste, sed ab homine amicissimo Ambiorige consilium datum, ^h longissimo agmine ⁱ maximisque impedimentis.

32. At hostes, posteaquam ex nocturno fremitu vigiliisque de profectiōne eorum senserunt, collocatis insidiis bipartito in silvis opportuno atque occulto loco, a ^k millibus passuum circiter duobus, Romanorum adventum expectabant: et, cŭm ¹⁰ se major pars agminis in magnam convallem demississet, ex utrâque parte ejus vallis subito se ostenderunt, novissimosque premere et primos prohibere ascensu atque iniquissimo nostris ^l loco praelium committere cœperunt.

33. Tum demum Titurius, ¹¹ ut qui^f nihil antè providisset, trepidare, ^m concursare, cohortesque disponere; ¹² hæc tamen ipsa timide atque ut ⁿ eum omnia deficere viderentur: quod^o plerumque iis ^p accidere consuēvit, qui ¹³ in ipso negotio consilium capere coguntur. At Cotta, qui^g cogitasset, hæc posse in itinere accidere, atque ob eam causam profectiōnis

^a 67, 5. Note.

^b § 140, 1, 3d.

^c § 140, 6.

^d 51, 2.

^e § 140, 5.

^f § 126, R. III.

^g § 141, Obs. 4.

^h 98, 2.

ⁱ § 129, R.

^k § 132, Obs. 5.

^l § 111, R.

^m § 144, Obs. 6.

ⁿ § 140, 1, 2d, (*ita*.)

^o 37, 9, Note. 3.

^p § 112, R. IV.

¹ auctor non fuisset, nullâ in re communi salutî ^a deërat, et in appellandis cohortandisque militibus, imperatoris; et in pugnâ, militis officia præstabat. Cùmque propter longitudinem agminis ² minùs facilè per se omnia obire, et, quid quoque loco ^c faciendum esset, ^b providere possent, ³ jussērunt pronuntiare, ut impedimenta relinquērent atque ⁴ in orbem consistērent. Quod ^d consilium etsi in ejusmodi casu reprehendendum non est, tamen ⁵ incommodè accidit: nam et nostris militibus ^e spem minuit, et hostes ad pugnam alacriores effecit, quòd non sine summo timore et desperatione id factum videbatur. Præterea accidit, quod ^f fieri necesse erat, ut ⁶ vulgò milites ab signis discederent, ^h ⁷ quæ quisque eorum ^g carissîma haberet ⁱ ab impedimentis petere atque abripere properaret, ^h clamore ac fletu omnia complerentur. ^h

34. At ⁸ barbâris ^a consilium non defuit: nam duces eorum totâ acie pronuntiare jussērunt, “ne quis ab loco discederet ⁹ illorum ^k esse prædam, atque illis reservari, quæcumque Români reliquissent: proinde omnia in victoriâ posita existimarent.” ¹⁰ Erant et virtute et numero pugnando ^l pares nostri, tamen etsi ab duce et a fortunâ deserebantur, tamen omnem spem salutis in virtute ponebant, et, quoties quæque cohors procurreret, ab eâ parte magnus hostium numerus cadēbat. Quâ ^d re animadversâ, Ambiorix pronuntiari jubet, ut procul tela conjiciant, neu propius accedant, et, quam in partem Români impetum fecerint, ¹¹ cedant (levitate armorum et quotidianâ exercitatione ¹² nihil iis noceri posse ^m): rursus se ad signa recipientes insequantur.

35. Quo ^d præcepto ab iis diligentissimè observato, cùm quæpiam cohors ex orbe excesserat atque impetum fecerat, hostes velocissimè fugiebant. Interim eam partem nudari necesse erat et ab latere aperto tela recipi. Rursus, cùm

^a § 112, R. I.^e § 123, R.ⁱ § 141, Obs. 8.^b § 140, 5.^f 37, 9, Note. 3.^k § 108, R. XII.^c § 136, Obs. 5, (in.)^g § 107, R. X.^l § 128, R.^d 38.^h § 140, 1, 4th.^m 66, & 68, 2.

in eum locum, unde erant progressi, reverti cœperant, et ab iis, qui cessērant, et ab iis, qui proximi^a stetērant, circumveniebantur; sin autem¹ locum tenēre vellent, nec virtūti^b locus relinquebātur, neque ab tantā multitudīne conjecta tela conferti vitāre potērant. Tamen tot incommōdis conflictāti, multis vulneribus acceptis, resistēbant et, magnā parte diēi consumtā, cū a primā luce² ad horam octāvam pugnāretur, nihil, quod ipsis^c esset indignum, committēbant. Tum Tito Balventio,^d qui superiōre anno primum pilum duxerat, viro forti et magnæ auctoritātis, ³utrumque femur tragulā transjicitur. Quintus Lucanius, ejusdem ordinis,^e fortissimē pugnans, dum circumvento filio^f ⁴subvenit, interficitur: Lucius Cotta, legātus, omnes cohortes ordinesque adhortans, ⁵in adversum os fundā vulnerātur.

36. His rebus permōtus Quintus Titurius, cum procul Ambiorigem suos cohortantem conspexisset, interprētem suum, Cneium Pompeium, ad eum mittit, rogātum,^g ut sibi^h militibusque parcat. Ille appellātus respondit: “si velit secum collōqui, licēre; sperāre, a multitudīne impetrāri posse, quod^h ad milītum salūtem pertineat;ⁱ ⁶ipsi^k vero nihil nocitum iri, inque eam rem se^l suā fidem interponēre.” Ille cum Cottā saucio communicat, “si videātur, pugnā ut excēdant et cum Ambiorige unā colloquantur: sperāre, ab eo de suā ac milītum salūte impetrāre posse.” Cotta se ad armātum hostem itūrum negat⁷ atque in eo constitit.

37. Sabīnus, quos⁸ in præsēntia tribūnos milītum circum se habēbat et primōrum ordinum centuriōnes, se sequi jubet, et, cum propiūs Ambiorigem^m accessisset, jussus arma abjicere, imperātum facit, suisque, ut idem faciant, impērat. Intērim, dum de conditionibus inter se agunt, longiorque

^a § 98, Obs. 10.^e § 106, R. VII.ⁱ § 140, 6.^b § 126, R. III.^f § 112, Obs. 5, 2d.^k 66, 7.^c § 119, R.^g § 148, 1.^l § 145, R.^d § 110, Obs. 1.^h 37, 2.^m § 136, Obs. 5, (ad.)

consultò ab Ambiorġe instituitur sermo, paulatim circum-ventus interficitur. Tum vero suo more ¹ victoriam conclāmant atque ululātum tollunt, impetūque in nostros facto, ordīnes perturbant. Ibi Lucius Cotta pugnans interficitur cum maxīmā parte milītum, reliqui se in castra recipiunt, unde erant egressi: ex quibus Lucius Petrosidius aquilifer, cū magnā multitudine hostium premeretur, aquilam intra vallum projēcit, ipse pro castris fortissimē pugnans occiditur. ² Illi ægrē ad noctem oppugnationem sustinent: noctu ³ ad unum ^a omnes, desperatā salūte, se ipsi ^b interficiunt. Pauci ex praelio elapsi, incertis itineribus ^c per silvas ad Titum Labiēnum legātum in hiberna perveniunt atque eum de rebus gestis certiōrem faciunt.

38. Hāc victoriā ^c ⁴ sublātus Ambiōrix, statim cum equitātū in Aduatūcos, qui erant ejus regno ^d finitimi, proficiscitur; neque noctem neque diem intermittit, peditatumque se subsēqui jubet. Re demonstratā, Aduatucisque concitatis, postēro die in Nervios pervēnit, hortaturque, “ne sui ^e in ^f perpetuum liberandi atque ulciscendi ^g Romānos, pro iis, quas accepērint, ^h injuriis, occasiōnem dimittant: interfectos esse ⁱ legātos duo magnamque partem exercitūs interisse” ¹ demonstrat; ⁵ “nihil esse negotii, subitò oppressam legiōnem, quæ cum Cicerōne hiēmet, ^k interfici; ⁶ se ad eam rem profitetur adiutōrem.” ¹ Facile hāc oratiōe Nervii persuadet.

39. Itaque, confestim dimissis nunciis ad Ceutrōnes, Grudios, Levācos, Pleumoxios, Geidūnos, qui omnes sub eōrum imperio sunt, quā maxīmas manus possunt, cogunt, et de improvīso ad Cicerōnis hiberna advolant, nondum ad eum famā de Titurii morte perlātā. ⁷ Huic quoque accidit, quod ^m fuit necesse, ut nonnulli milītes, qui lignatiōnis munitionis-

^a 19, (*homīnem*.)

^b 33, 1.

^c § 129, R.

^d § 111, R.

^e 112, 5.

^f § 90, 6.

^g 112, 1.

^h § 141, Obs. 7.

ⁱ 93, 2, & 94, 1, 2.

^k § 140, 6.

^l § 97, R.

^m 37, 9, Note 3.

que causâ in silvas discessissent,^a repentinô equitum adventu interciperentur.^b His circumventis, magnâ manu Eburônes, Nervii, Aduatûci atque horum omnium socii et cli- entes, legiônem oppugnâre incipiunt: nostri celeritèr ad arma concurrunt, vallum conscendunt. ¹ Ægrè is dies sustentâtur, quòd omnem spem hostes in celeritatè ponēbant, atque, hanc adepti ^c victoriam, in perpetuum se fore viciō- res^d confidēbant.

40. Mittuntur ad Cæsārem confestim ab Cicerōne litērae, magnis ² propositis præmiis, si pertulissent. Obsessis omnī- bus viis, missi ^e intercipiuntur. Noctu ex eâ materiâ, quam munitiōnis causâ comportavērant, ³ turres admōdum centum et viginti excitantur incredibīli celeritatè: quæ^f deesse opē- ri^g videbantur, perficiuntur. Hostes postēro die, multo ma- jorībus copiis coactis, castra oppugnant, fossam complent. Ab nostris eādē ratiōne,^h quâ pridie, resistitur: ⁱ hoc idē deinceps reliquis fit diēbus. Nulla pars nocturni tēpōris ad labōrem intermittitur: non ægris,^k non vulnerātis, facul- tas quiētis datur: quæcumque ^l ad proximi diēi oppugnatiō- nem opus sunt, noctu comparantur: multæ ⁴ præustæ sudes, magnus muralium pilōrum numērus instituitur; ⁵ turres contabulantur, pinnæ loricæque ex cratibus attexuntur. Ipse Cicēro, ⁶ cū tenuissimâ valetudinē^m esset, ne noctur- num ⁿ quidem sibi tempus ad quiētem relinquēbat, ut ^o ultro milītum concursu ac vocibus ⁷ sibi ^p parcere cogerētur.

41. Tunc duces principesque Nerviōrum, qui ⁸ aliquem sermōnis aditum causamque amicitiae cum Cicerōne habē- bant, collōqui sese velle dicunt. ⁹ Factâ potestātē, eādē, quæ Ambiōrix cum Titurio egērat, commemorant, “omnem esse in armis Galliam, Germānos Rhenum transisse, Cæsār-

^a § 141, R. I.

^b § 140, 1, 4th.

^c 105, 1.

^d § 103, R.

^e 19, (*homīnes.*)

^f 37, 2.

^g § 112, R. I.

^h § 129, R.

ⁱ 67, 1.

^k § 126, R. III. & 19.

^l 37, 8, Note. 2.

^m § 106, R. VII.

ⁿ 121, Note. 2.

^o § 140, 1, 1st, (*ita.*)

^p § 112, R. V.

is reliquorumque hiberna oppugnâri.” Addunt etiam de Sabîni morte. ¹ Ambiorîgem ostentant fidēi faciendæ causâ: “errâre ² eos” dicunt, “si quicquam ab his præsidii sperent,^a qui suis rebus^b diffîdant;^c sese tamen ³ hoc esse in Cicêrōnem Populumque Românum animo,^d ut nihil nisi hiberna recûsent^m atque hanc inveterascere consuetudînem nolint.”^m ⁴ licere illis^e incolumibus per se ex hibernis discedere, et, quascumque in partes velint, sine metu proficisci.” Cicêro ad hæc unum modò respondit. “Non esse consuetudînem Popûli Români, ullam accipere ab hoste armâto conditiōnem: si ab armis discedere velint,^a se^f ⁵ adiutōre utantur,^g legatosque ad Cæsarem mittant: ⁶ sperare, ⁶ pro ejus justitiâ, quæ petierint,^c impetratûros.”

42. Ab hâc spe repulsi Nervii, vallo^h pedum undêcim et fossâ pedum quindêcim hiberna cingunt. Hæc et superiorum annōrum consuetudîne^h a nostris cognovêrant, et, quosdam de exercîtu nacti captîvos, ab his docebantur: ⁷ sed, nullâ ferramentōrum copiâ,ⁱ quæ sunt ad hunc usum idonea, gladiis^h cespitem circumcidere, manibus^h ⁸ sagulisque ⁹ terram exhaurire cogeabantur. Quâ^k quidem ex re hominum multitudo cognosci potuit: nam minùs horis tribus ¹⁰ millium decem in circuitu munitiōnem perfecêrunt: reliquisque diêbus turres ad altitudînem valli, ¹¹ falces testudinesque, quas iidem captîvi docuêrant, parare ac facere cœperunt.

43. Septîmo oppugnationis die, maxîmo coorto vento, ¹² ferventes fusili ex argillâ^l glandes fundis et ¹³ fervefacta jacûla in casas, quæ more^h Gallico stramentis erant tectæ, jacere cœperunt. Hæ celerîter ignem comprehendêrunt et venti magnitudîne^h in omnem castrōrum locum ¹⁴ distulêrunt. Hostes, maxîmo clamōre^h insecûti, quasi partâ jam atque explorâtâ victoriâ, turres testudinesque ¹⁵ agere et scalis val-

^a § 140, 2.^c 66, 2.ⁱ 110, 1.^b § 112, R. V.^f § 121, R. XXVI.^k 38.^c § 141, Obs. 3.^g § 139, 2.^l § 128, Obs. 2.^d § 106, R. VII.^h § 129, R.^m § 140. 1. 1st.

lum ascendere cœperunt. At tanta militum virtus atque ea^a præsentia animi fuit, ut, cum undique flammâ torrerentur,^b maximâque telorum multitudîne premerentur,^b suâque omnia impedimenta atque omnes fortûnas conflagrâre intelligerent^b non modò¹ demigrandi causâ de vallo decederet^c nemo, sed pæne ne respiceret^c quidem quisquam; ac tum omnes² acerrimè fortissimèque pugnarent. Hic dies nostris^d longè gravissimus fuit; sed tamen hunc habuit eventum, ut eo die maximus hostium numërus vulneraretur^c atque interficeretur, ut^e se sub ipso vallo constipaverant³ recessumque primis^f ultimi non dabant. Paulum quidem intermissâ flammâ, et quodam loco^g 4 tûrri^h adactâ et contingente vallum, tertiæ cohortis centuriões ex eo, quo^g stabant,ⁱ loco recesserunt suosque omnes removērunt; nutu^k vocibusque hostes, “si introîre vellent,” vocâre cœperunt,⁵ quorum progrēdi ausus est nemo. Tum ex omni parte lapidibus^h coniectis⁶ deturbâti, turrisque succensa est.

44. Erant in eâ legiōne fortissimi viri centuriões,⁷ qui jam primis ordinibus¹ appropinquarent, Tito Pulpio et Lucius Varēnus. Hi perpetuas controversias inter se habebant, quinam anteferrētur,^m omnibusque annis de loco summis simultatibus^k contendebant. Ex iis Pulpio, cum acerrimè ad munitiões pugnaretur, “Quid dubitas,” inquit, “Varēne? aut quem locum probandæ virtutis tuæ⁸ spectas? hic, hic dies de nostris controversiis iudicabit.” Hæc cum dixisset,^b procēdit extra munitiões,⁹ quâque pars hostium confertissima visa est, in eam irrumpit. Ne Varēnus quidem tum vallo sese continet, sed omnium veritus existimatiōnem subsequitur. Tum, mediocri spatio^h relicto, Pulpio pilum in hostes mittit atque unum ex multitudîne¹⁰ procurrentem transjicit, quo^h percusso et exanimato, ¹¹ hunc scutis protē-

^a 28, 1.^b § 140, Obs. 4.^c § 140, 1, 1st.^d § 111, R.^e § 140, Obs. 1.^f § 123, R. & 19.^g § 136, Obs. 5, (in.)^h 109, 2.ⁱ § 44, II. 2.^k § 129, R.^l § 112, R. IV.^m § 140, 5.

gunt hostes, ¹ in illum tela universi conjiciunt neque dant regrediendi facultatem. Transfigitur scutum Pulfioni ^a et verutum in balteo defigitur. Avertit hic casus vaginam et gladium educere conanti ^b dextram moratur manum; impeditum ^c hostes circumsistunt. ² Succurrit inimicus illi ^d Varēnus et laboranti ^e subvenit. Ad ³ hunc se confestim a Pulfione omnis multitudo convertit, ⁴ illum veruto transfixum arbitrantur. Occursat ocius gladio cominusque rem gerit Varēnus atque, uno interfecto, reliquos paulum propellit: dum cupidius instat, ⁵ in locum dejectus inferiorem concidit. Huic rursus circumvento fert subsidium Pulfio atque ambo incolūmes, compluribus interfectis, summā cum laude sese intra munitiōnes recipiunt. Sic fortuna ⁶ in contentiōne et certamine utrumque versavit, ut alter alteri ^d inimicus auxilio ^f salutique esset, neque dijudicari posset, uter utri ^g virtute ^h anteferendus videretur.

45. ⁷ Quanto ⁱ erat in dies gravior atque asperior oppugnationo, et maxime quod, magnā parte militum confectā vulneribus, res ad paucitatem defensorum pervenerat, tanto ⁱ crebriores literæ nuntiique ad Cæsarem mittebantur: quorum pars deprehensa in conspectu nostrorum militum cum cruciātu necabatur. Erat ⁸ unus intus Nervius, nomine Vertico, ⁹ loco natus honesto, qui a primā obsidiōne ad Cicerōnem perfugerat, suamque ei fidem præstiterat. Hic ¹⁰ servo ^k spe libertatis magnisque persuadet præmiis, ut literas ad Cæsarem defērat. Has ille in jaculo illigatas effert, et, Gallus inter Gallos sine ullā suspiciōne versatus, ad Cæsarem pervenit. Ab eo ¹ de ¹¹ periculis Cicerōnis legionisque cognoscitur.

46. Cæsar, acceptis literis ¹² horā circiter undecimā diēi, statim nuncium in Bellovācos ad Marcum Crassum quæ-

^a § 110, Obs. 1,

^b 19, (ei,) & ^a.

^c 19, (eum.)

^d § 111, R.

^e § 112, R. V.

^f § 114, R.

^g § 126, R. III.

^h § 128, R.

ⁱ § 132, R. XLIII. Obs.

6, & 44, 8, & 47.

^k 63, & § 123, R.

^l 67, 1.

tōrem mittit; cujus hiberna abērant ab eo millia passuum viginti quinque. Jubet mediâ nocte legiōnem proficisci,^a celeriterque ad se venīre. Exiit cum nuncio Crassus, Altērum^b ad Caium Fabium legātum mittit, ut in Atrebatium fines legiōnem addūcat,^c ¹ quā sibi^d iter faciendum sciēbat. Scribit Labiēno, ² si reipublicæ commōdō facere posset, cum legiōne ad fines Nerviorum veniat: ^c reliquam partem exercitūs, quod paulò abērat longiūs, non putat expectandam; ^e equites circiter quadringentos ex proximis hibernis cogit.

47. Horā circiter tertiā ab antecursoribus de Crassi adventu certior factus, eo die millia^f passuum viginti progreditur. Crassum Samarobrīvæ^g præficit, legionemque ei^g attribuit, quod ibi impedimenta exercitūs, obsides civitatum, ³ litēras publicas, frumentumque omne, quod eò ⁴ tolerandæ hiēmis causā devexerat, relinquebat. Fabius, ut imperātum erat, non ita multum morātus, in itinere cum legiōne occurrit. Labiēnus, interitū Sabini et cæde cohortium cognitā, cū omnes ad eum Trevirorum copiae venissent,^h veritus, ne,ⁱ si ex hibernis fugæ similem profectiōnem fecisset, hostium impetum sustinere non posset, præsertim quos^k recenti victoriā efferri sciret, litēras Cæsari remittit, quanto cum pericūlo legiōnem ex hibernis eductūrus esset:^l ⁵ rem gestam in Eburonibus perscribit: docet, omnes peditatūs equitatūsque copias Trevirorum tria millia^f passuum longè ab suis castris consedissee.

48. Cæsar, consilio ejus probāto, etsi, ⁶ opiniōne^m trium legiōnum dejectus, ad duas rediērat, tamen unum commūnis salutis auxilium in celeritatē ponebat. Venit magnis itineribus in Nerviorum fines. Ibi ex captivis cognoscit, quæ apud Cicerōnem gerantur,¹ quantōque in pericūlo res sit.¹ Tum cuidam^g ex equitibus Gallis magnis præmiis persuadet,

^a 90, 4.^b 19, (*nuncium.*)^c § 140, 1, 3d.^d 113, 5.^e 108, 4.^f § 132, R.^g § 123, R.^h § 140, Obs. 3.ⁱ § 140, Obs. 6.^k § 145, R. & 91, 4.^l § 140, 5.^m § 136, R. LII.

utî ad Cicerōnem epistolam defērat. Hanc Græcis conscrip-
tam litēris mittit, ne, interceptâ epistolâ, nostra ab hostibus
consilia cognoscantur.^a ¹ Si adire non possit, monet, ut tra-
gūlam cum epistolâ, ² ad amentum deligâtâ, intra munitiō-
nes castrōrum abjiciat.^b In litēris scribit, se cum legionibus
profectum celeriter affōre: hortatur, ut pristinam virtutem
retineat. Gallus, pericūlum veritus, ut erat præceptum, tra-
gūlam mittit. Hæc ³ casu ad turrim adhæsit, neque^c ab
nostris biduo animadversa; tertio die a quodam milite con-
spicitur; demta ad Cicerōnem defertur. Ille ⁴ perlectam in
conventu militum recitat, maximâque omnes lætitiâ afficit.
Tum fumi incendiōrum procul videbantur, quæ res omnem
dubitatiōnem adventûs legiōnum ⁵ expulit.

49. Galli, re cognitâ per exploratōres, obsidiōnem relin-
quunt, ad Cæsārem omnibus copiis contendunt; eæ erant
armatōrum circiter millia^d sexaginta. Cicēro, datâ facul-
tate, Gallum ab eōdem Verticōne, quem suprâ demonstrav-
imus, repētit; qui litēras ad Cæsārem refērat;^e hunc^f ad-
mōnet, iter cautē diligenterque faciat:^g perscribit in litēris,
hostes ab se discessisse, omnemque ad eum multitudīnem
convertisse. Quibus^h litēris circiter mediâ nocte Cæsar al-
lātis suos facit certiōres, eosque ad dimicandum animō con-
firmat: postēro die luce primâ movet castra, et circiter mil-
liaⁱ passuum quatuor progressus, trans vallem magnam et
rivum multitudīnem hostium conspicatur. Erat magni peri-
cūli^k res, cum tantis copiis inīquo loco^l dimicāre. Tum,
quoniam liberātum obsidiōne^m Cicerōnem sciēbat, eoque
omnino remittendum de celeritate existimābat, consēdit, et,
quā æquissimo potest loco,^l castra commūnit. Atque hæc,
etsi erant exigua per se, vix homīnum^k millium septem, præ-
sertim nullis cum impedimentis, ⁶ tamen angustiis viarum

^a § 140, 1, 2d.^c § 141, Obs. 2 4th.ⁱ § 132, R. XLII.^b § 140, 1, 3d.^f § 124, R.^k § 106, R. VII.^e § 93, 1.^g § 140, 1, 3d., & Obs. 5.^l § 136, Obs. 5, (in.)^d § 136, R. XLVIII.^h 38.^m § 126, R. V.

quàm maxīmè potest, contrāhit, eo consilio, ut in summam contemtiōnem hostībus^a veniat. Intērim, speculatorībus in omnes partes dimissis, explōrat, quo commodissīmo^b itinēre vallem transīre possit.

50. Eo die, parvūlis equestrībus praeliis ad aquam factis, utrīque sese suo loco continent; ¹ Galli, quòd ampliōres copias, quæ nondum convenērant, expectābant; Cæsar, si fortè timōris simulatiōne hostes ² in suum locum elicēre posset, ut citra vallem pro castris praelio contendēret;^c si id efficēre non posset, ut, explorātis itinerībus, minōre cum pericūlo vallem rivumque transīret.^c Primā luce hostium equitātus ad castra accēdit, praeliumque cum nostris equitībus committit. Cæsar consultò equites cedēre,^d seque in castra recipēre^d jubet; simul ex omnībus partībus castra altiōre vallo munīri,^d ³ portasque obstrui, atque in his administrandis rebus quàm maxīmè concursāri et cum simulatiōne timōris agi jubet.

51. Quibus omnībus rebus hostes invitāti copias transdūcunt, aciemque inīquo loco constituunt; nostris verò ⁴ etiam de vallo deductis, propiūs accēdunt, et tela intra munitiōnem ex omnībus partībus conjiciunt; præconibusque^e circummissis pronuntiārī jubent, "seu quis Gallus seu Romānus velit ante horam tertiam ⁵ ad se transīre, sine pericūlo licēre; post id tempus non fore potestātem:" ⁶ ac sic nostros contemsērunt, ut obstructis in speciem portis singūlis ordinībus cespītum, quòd ⁷ eā non posse introrumpēre videbantur, alii vallum manu scindēre, alii fossas complēre incipērent. Tum Cæsar, omnībus portis eruptiōne factā equitatūque emissio, celerīter hostes dat in fugam, sic, utī omnīno pugnandi causā resistēret nemo; magnumque ex eis numerum occīdit, atque omnes armis^f exiit.

52. ⁸ Longiūs prosēqui verītus, quòd silvæ paludesque intercedēbant, neque etiam parvūlo detrimento ⁹ illōrum locum

^a § 110, Obs. 1.

^c § 140, 1, 2d.

^e 109, 2.

^b § 98, Obs. 10.

^d 90, 4.

^f § 125, R.

relinqui vidēbat, omnibus suis incolumibus copiis eōdem die ad Cicerōnem pervēnit. Institūtas turres, testudīnes, munitionesque hostium admirātur: ¹productā legiōne cognoscit, non decimum quemque esse relictum militem sine vulnere. Ex his omnibus iudicat rebus, quanto cum periculo et quantā cum virtute res sint ^a administratæ: Cicerōnem ²pro ejus merito, legionemque collaudat: centuriōnes singillatim tribunosque militum appellat, quorum egregiam fuisse virtutem testimonio Cicerōnis cognoverat. De casu Sabīni et Cottæ certiūs ex captivis cognoscit. Postēro die concione habitā ³rem gestam proponit, milites consolatur et confirmat: quod detrimentum ⁴culpā et temeritate legati sit ^b acceptum, hoc ⁵æquiore animo ferendum docet, ⁶quod, beneficio Deōrum immortalium et virtute eōrum ⁷expiato incommōdo, neque hostibus diutina lætatio, neque ipsis longior dolor relinquatur.^c

53. Intērim ad Labiēnum per Remos incredibili celeritate de victoriā Cæsāris fama perfertur, ut, cū ab hibernis Cicerōnis abesset millia passuum circiter sexaginta, eoque ⁸post horam nonam diēi Cæsar pervenisset, ante mediam noctem ad portas castrōrum clamor orirētur,^d quo clamore significatio victoriæ gratulatiōque ab Remis Labiēno^e fieret. Hāc famā ad Treviros perlātā, Indutiomārus, qui postēro die castra Labiēni oppugnare decreverat, noctu profūgit, copiasque omnes in Treviros reducit. Cæsar Fabium cum legiōne in sua remittit hiberna, ipse cum tribus legionibus circum Samarobrīvam ⁹trinis hibernis hiemare constituit; et, quod tanti motus Galliæ extiterant, totam hiēmem ipse ad exercitum manere decrevit. Nam illo incommōdo de Sabīni morte perlato, omnes ferē Galliæ civitates de bello ¹⁰consultabant, nuncios legationesque in omnes partes dimittēbant, et ¹¹quid reliqui consilii^f caperent^a atque unde initium belli fieret, explorābant, nocturnaque in locis desertis ¹²concilia

^a § 140, 5.^c 77, 5.^e § 126, R. III.^b § 140, Obs. 2.^d § 140, 1, 3d.^f § 106. R. VIII

habēbant. Neque ullum ferè totius hiëmis tempus sine sollicitudinē Cæsāris intercessit, ¹quin^a aliquem de conciliis ac motu Gallōrum nuncium accipēret.^a In his ab Lucio Roscio legāto, quem legiōni decimæ tertiæ præfecerat, certior est factus, magnas Gallōrum copias eārum civitātum, quæ ²Armoricæ appellantur, oppugnandi sui causā convenisse: neque longiūs^b millia passuum octo ab hibernis suis abfuisse, sed nuncio allāto de victoriā Cæsāris, discessisse, adeo ut fugæ similis discessus viderētur.

54. At Cæsar, principibus cujusque civitātis ad se evocatis, aliās^c territando, cū se scire, quæ fiērent, denunciāret, aliās cohortando, magnam partem Galliæ in officio tenuit. Tamen Senōnes, quæ est civitas in primis firma et magnæ inter Gallos auctoritātis, Cavarinum, quem Cæsar apud eos regem constituērat (cujus frater Moritasgus, adventu in Galliam Cæsāris, cujusque majōres regnum obtinuērant), interficere publico consilio conāti, cū ille præsensisset ac profugisset, usque ad fines insecūti regno^d domōque expulserunt: et, missis ad Cæsārem satisfaciendi causā legatis, cū is omnem ad se senātum venīre jussisset, ³dicto audientes non fuērunt. ⁴Tantum^e apud homīnes barbāros valuit, esse repertos aliquos principes belli inferendi, tantamque omnibus voluntātum commutatiōnem ⁵attulit, ut præter Æduos et Remos, quos ⁶præcipuo semper honōre Cæsar habuit, ⁷altēros pro vetēre ac perpetuā erga Populum Romānum fide, ⁷altēros pro recentibus Gallīci belli officiis, ⁸nulla ferè civitas fuērit non^f suspecta nobis. ⁹Idque adeo haud scio mirandumne sit, cū compluribus aliis de causis, tum maxime,, ¹⁰quòd, qui virtūte belli omnibus gentibus præferebantur, tantum se ejus opiniōnis deperdidisse, ut a Populo Romāno imperia perferrent, gravissimè dolēbant.

55. Treviri vero atque Indutiomārus totius hiëmis nullum tempus intermisērunt, quin^a trans Rhenum legātos mittērent,

^a § 140, 3.^c 124, 12.^e § 116, Obs. 3.^b § 120, Obs. 3.^d § 136, R. LII.^f § 134, Obs. 3.

civitātes sollicitārent, pecunias pollicerentur, magnā parte exercītūs nostri interfectā, multo minōrem superesse dicērent partem. Neque tamen ulli civitatī^a Germanōrum persuadēri potuit, ut Rhenum transīret, cūm “se bis expertos”^b dicērent, “Ariovisti bello et Tenchtherōrum transītu, non esse ampliūs fortunam tentandam.”¹ Hāc spe^c lapsus Indutiomārus, nihilo minūs copias cogēre, exercēre, a finitīmis equos parāre, exūles damnatosque totā Galliā^d magnis prēmīis ad se allicēre cēpit. Ac tantam sibi jam iis rebus in Galliā auctoritātem comparavērat, ut undīque ad eum legatīōnes concurrērent,^e gratiam atque amicitiam publicē privatimque petērent.

56. Ubi intellexit² ultro ad se venīri, altērā ex parte Senōnes Carnutesque conscientīā facinōris instigārī, altērā Nervios Aduatucosque bellum Romānis parāre, neque sibi^f voluntariōrum copias defōre, si ex finībūs suis progrēdi cēpisset: armātum concilium indīcit (hoc more Gallōrum est initium belli), quo lege commūni omnes pubēres armāti convenīre consuerunt; qui^g ex iis novissīmus venit, in conspectu multitudīnis³ omnībūs cruciatībūs affectus necātur. In eo concilio Cingetorīgem,⁴ alterius principem^h factiōnis, genērū suū (quem suprā demonstravīmus, ⁵ Cēsāris secūtum fidem, ab eo non discessisse), hostem iudicat, bonāque ejus publicat. His rebus confectis, in concilio pronuntiat, arcessītum se a Senonībūs et Carnutībūs aliisque complurībūs Galliæ civitatībūs, ⁶huc iter factūrumⁱ per fines Remōrum, eorumque agros populatūrum,¹ ac priūs, quā id faciat, Labiēni castra oppugnatūrum:¹ quæ fieri velit, prēcipit.

57. Labiēnus, cūm et loci natūrā et manu munitissīmis castris sese tenēret, de suo ac legiōnis pericūlo nihil timēbat; ne quam occasiōnem rei bene gerendæ dimittēret, cogitabat. Itaque a Cingetorīge atque ejus propinquis ora-

^a § 126, R. III. & 68, 2.^d § 136, Obs. 5, (ex.)^g 37, 3.^b 98, 2.^e § 140, 1, 1st.^h § 97, R.^c § 136, Obs. 5, (de.)^f § 112, R. I.ⁱ 94, 1, 2d, & 100, 2

tiōne Indutiomāri cognītā, quam in concilio habuērat, nuncios mittit ad finitīmas civitatēs, equitesque undīque evōcat : iis^a certum diem conveniendi dicit. Intērim propè quotidie cum omni equitātu Indutiomārus¹ sub castris ejus vagabātur, aliās^b ut situm castrōrum cognoscēret,^c aliās^b colloquendi aut territandi causā : equites plerumque omnes tela intra vallum conjiciēbant. Labiēnus suos intra munitiōnes continēbat, timorisque opiniōnem,² quibuscumque^d potērat rebus, augēbat.

58. Cum majōre in dies contemtiōne Indutiomārus ad^e castra accedēret, nocte unā,³ intromissis equitībus omnium finitimārum civitātum,⁴ quos arcessendos curavērat, tantā diligentīā omnes suos custodiis intra castra continuit, ut⁵ nullā ratiōne ea res enunciārī aut ad Trevīros perferri posset.^e Intērim ex consuetudinē quotidiānā Indutiomārus ad castra accēdit, atque ibi magnam partem diēi consūmit; equites tela conjiciunt, et⁶ magnā cum contumeliā verbōrum nostros ad pugnam evōcant. Nullo ab nostris dato responso, ubi visum est, sub vespērum⁷ dispersi^f ac dissipāti^f discēdunt. Subitō Labiēnus duābus portis omnem equitātum emittit;⁸ prēcīpit atque interdīcit, proterrītis hostībus atque in fugam coniectis (quod^g fore, sicut accīdit, vidēbat), unum omnes petant^h Indutiomārum; neu quis quem priūs vulneret,^h quān illum interfectum vidērit, quod⁹ morā reliquōrum spatium nactum illum effugēre nolēbat: magna propōnit iis,^a qui occidērint,ⁱ prēmia: submittit cohortes equitībus subsidio. ¹⁰ Comprōbat homīnis consilium fortūna; et, cū unum omnes petērent, in ipso fluminis vado deprehensus Indutiomārus interficitur, caputque ejus refertur in castra: redeuntes equites, quos possunt, consecantur atque occīdunt. Hāc re cognītā, omnes Eburōnum et Nerviōrum, quæ convenērant, copiæ discēdunt; pauloque habuit post id factum Cæsar quietiōrem Galliam.

^a § 123, R.

^b 124, 12.

^c § 140, 1, 2d.

^d 37, 7, Note 2.

^e § 136, Obs. 7.

^f § 98, Obs. 10.

^g 37, 9, Note 3.

^h § 140, 1, 3d.

ⁱ § 141, Obs. 3

BOOK VI.

GENERAL ARGUMENT.

I. Commotions throughout nearly all Gaul in consequence of the overthrow and death of Tiberius—Chap. 1–8. II. Cæsar's expedition against the Suevi—Chap. 9–28. III. Punishment of Ambiorix and the Eburones—Chap. 29–44.

1. MULTIS de causis Cæsar, majorem Galliæ motum expectans, per Marcum Silanum, Caium Antistium Reginum, Titum Sextium, legatos, ¹ dilectum habere instituit: simul ab Cneio Pompeio proconsule petit, ² quoniam ipse ad urbem cum imperio reipublicæ causâ remaneret, ^a quos ^b ex Cisalpina Galliâ consulis sacramento rogavisset, ^a ad signa convenire et ad se proficisci juberet: ^c magni ^d interesse etiam in reliquum tempus ad opinionem Galliæ existimans, tantas videri Italiæ facultates, ^e ut, si quid esset in bello detrimenti acceptum, non modò id brevi tempore ³ sarciri, sed etiam majoribus adaugeri copiis posset. ^f ⁴ Quod ^g cum Pompeius et reipublicæ et amicitiae tribuisset, ^h celeriter confecto per suos dilectus, tribus ante exactam hiemem et constitutis et adductis legionibus, duplicatoque earum cohortium numero, quas cum Quinto Titurio amiserat, et celeritate et copiis docuit, quid Populi Romani disciplina atque opes possent. ⁱ

2. Interfecto Indutiomaro, ⁵ ut docuimus, ad ejus propinquos a Treviris imperium defertur. Illi finitimos Germanos sollicitare et pecuniam polliceri non desistunt: cum ab proximis impetrare non possent, ulteriôres tentant. Inventis nonnullis civitatibus, jurejurando inter se confirmant, ⁶ obsidibusque de pecuniâ cavent: Ambiorigem sibi societate et fœdere adjungunt. Quibus rebus cognitis, Cæsar, cum

^a § 141, Obs. 7.

^d § 113, Exc. I.

^g 38.

^b 37, (*militēs.*)

^e § 145, R.

^h 81, 1.

^c § 140, 1, 3d.

^f § 140, 1, 1st.

ⁱ § 140, 5.

undique bellum parari vidēret, Nervios,^a Aduatūcos, Menapios, adjunctis Cisrhenānis omnibus Germānis, esse^b in armis, Senōnes^a ¹ad imperātum non venīre, et cum Carnutibus finitimisque civitatibus consilia communicāre, a Treviris Germānos^a crebris legationibus sollicitari;^b maturius sibi^c de bello cogitandum putāvit.

3. Itaque ²nondum hiēme confectā, proximis quatuor coactis legionibus, de improvīso in fines Nerviorum contendit, et prius, quā illi aut convenīre aut profugere possent,^d magno pecoris atque hominum numero capto, atque eā praeda militibus^e concessā, vastatisque agris, in deditiōnem venīre atque obsides sibi dare coegit. Eo celeriter confecto negotio, rursus in hiberna legiones reduxit. Concilio Galliae primo^f vere, ³ut instituerat, indicto, cum reliqui, praeter Senones, Carnutes, Trevirosque, venissent, initium belli ac defectiōnis hoc esse arbitratus,^g ut ⁴omnia postponere videretur, concilium Lutetiam Parisiorum transfert. Confines erant hi Senonibus,^h civitatemque patrum memoriā conjunxerant; ⁵sed ab hoc consilio abfuisse existimabantur. ⁶Hac re pro suggestu pronunciata, eodem die cum legionibus in Senones proficiscitur, magnisque itineribus eo pervenit.

4. Cognito ejus adventu, Acco, qui princeps ejus consilii fuerat, jubet in oppida multitudinem convenire; ⁷conantibus,^e priusquam id effici posset,^d adesse Romanos^a nuntiatur; necessariò ⁸sententiā desistunt, legatosque ⁹deprecandi causā ad Cæsarem mittunt; adeunt per Aeduos, quorum antiquitus erat in fide civitas. Libenter Cæsar petentibus Aeduis dat veniam, excusationemque accipit; ¹⁰quod æstivum tempus instantis belli, non quæstiōnis, esse arbitrabatur. Obsidibus imperatis centum, hos Aeduis custodiendosⁱ tradit. Eodem Carnutes legatos obsidesque mittunt, usi deprecatoribus Remis, quorum erant in clientelā: eadem

^a § 145, R.^d § 140, 4.^g 106, 1.^b 96, 2.^e § 126, R. III.^h § 111, R.^c § 147, R. LXI.^f 17, 1.ⁱ 107, 1.

ferunt responsa. Perāgit concilium Cæsar, equitesque impērat civitatibus.^a

5. Hæc parte Galliæ pacatâ,¹ totus et mente et anīmo in bellum Trevirōrum et Ambiorīgis insistit. Cavarīnum cum equitātu Senōnum secum proficisci jubet,² ne quis aut ex hujus iracundiâ, aut ex eo, quod meruērat, odio civitatīs, motus existat.^b His rebus constitūtis, quod³ pro explorātō habēbat, Ambiorīgem præliō non esse concertatūrum,⁴ reliqua ejus consilia anīmo^c circumspiciēbat. Erant Menapii propinqui Eburōnum finibus,^d ⁶perpetuis paludibus^e silvisque munīti, qui uni ex Galliâ de pace ad Cæsārem legātos nunquam misērant. Cum iis esse hospitium Ambiorīgi^e sciēbat: item per Trevīros venisse Germānis^f in amicitiam, cognovērat. Hæc prius ⁶illi^g detrahenda auxilia existimābat, quā ipsum bello lacesset; ne, desperatâ salūte, aut se in Menapios abdēret, aut ⁷cum Transrhenānis congrēdi cogerētur. Hoc inīto consilio, totius exercitus impedimenta ad Labiēnum in Trevīros mittit, duasque legiōnes ad eum proficisci jubet: ipse cum legionibus expeditis quinque in Menapios proficiscitur. Illi, nullâ coactâ ⁸manu,⁹ loci præsidio^h freti, in silvas paludesque confugiunt, suâque eodem confērunt.

6. Cæsar, partītis copiis cum Caio Fabio legāto et Marco Crasso quæstōre, celeriterque ¹⁰effectis pontibus¹¹ adit tripartitō, ædificia vicosque incendit, magno pecōris atque homīnum numēroⁱ potitur. Quibus rebus coacti Menapii, legātos ad eum pacis petendæ causâ mittunt. Ille, obsidibus acceptis hostium se habitūrum numēro confirmat, si aut Ambiorīgem, aut ejus legātos, finibus suis recepissent. His confirmātis rebus, Commium Atrebātem cum equitātu custōdis loco in Menapiis relinquit; ipse in Trevīros proficiscitur.

^a § 123, R. & 5, 1.

^b § 140, 1, 2d.

^c § 129, R.

^d § 111, R.

^e § 112, R. II.

^f § 110, Obs. 1.

^g § 126, R.III. & 5, 1.

^h § 119, R.

ⁱ § 121, R. XXVI.

7. Dum hæc a Cæsäre geruntur, Treviri, magnis coactis peditatús equitatúsque copiis, Labiënum ^a cum unâ legiõne, quæ in eõrum finibus hiemābat, adoriri parābant: jamque ab eo non longiùs bidui viâ ^b abērant, cùm duas venisse ^c legiõnes missu Cæsāris cognoscunt. Positis castris a ^d millibus ^b passuum quindēcim, auxilia Germanõrum expectāre constituunt. Labiēnus, hostium cognito consilio, sperans, temeritatē ^e eõrum fore aliquam dimicandi facultātem, præsidio ^f cohortium quinque impedimentis relicto, cum viginti quinque cohortibus magnōque equitātu contra hostem profiscitur, et, mille passuum intermisso spatio, ^f castra commūnit. Erat inter Labiēnum atque hostem difficīli transitu ^g flumen ripisque præruptis: hoc neque ipse transire in animo habēbat, neque hostes transituros existimābat. ¹ Augēbātur auxiliõrum quotidie spes. ² Loquitur in consilio palam, “quoniam Germāni appropinquāre dicantur,” sese suas exercitúsque fortūnas ³ in dubium non devocatūrum, et postēro die primā luce castra motūrum.” Celeriter hæc ad hostes deferuntur, ut ¹ ex magno Gallõrum equitatús numēro nonnullis ⁴ Gallicis rebus ^k favēre natūra cogēbat. Labiēnus noctu, tribūnis militum ⁵ primisque ordinibus coactis, quid sui sit consilii, propōnit, et, quo facilius hostibus timōris det ¹ suspiciōnem, majōre strepitu ^e et tumultu, quā Popūli Romāni fert consuetūdo, castra movēri jubet. His rebus ^e fugæ similem profectiōnem efficit. Hæc quoque per exploratōres ante lucem, in tantā propinquitāte castrõrum, ad hostes deferuntur.

8. Vix agmen novissimum extra munitiōnes processerat, cùm Galli, cohortāti inter se, “ne sperātam prædam ex manibus dimitterent; ⁶ longum esse, perterritis Romānis, Germanõrum auxilium expectāre, neque suam pati dignitā

^a § 136, R. LII.

^d § 132, Obs. 5.

^h § 140, 6.

^b § 132, R. XLII. &

^e § 129, R.

¹ § 140, Obs. 1.

§ 120, Obs. 3.

^f 109, 2.

^k § 112, R. V.

^c 98, 2, & 94, 1, 2d.

^g § 106, R. VII.

¹ § 140, 1, 2d

tem, ut tantis copiis tam exiguam manum,^a præsertim fugientem atque impeditam, adoriri non audeant;” flumen^a transire et iniquo loco^b prælium committere non dubitant. Quæ^c fore suspicatus Labiēnus, ut omnes citra flumen eliceret, ¹ eadem usus simulatiōne^d itinēris, placidē progrediebatur. Tum, præmissis paulum impedimentis atque in tumultu quodam collocatis, “Habētis,” inquit, “milites,^e quam petistis, ² facultatem: hostem impedito atque iniquo loco^b tenētis: ³ præstare eandem nobis^f ducibus virtutem, quam sæpenumero imperatori præstitistis: adesse eum et hæc coram cernere, existimate.” Simul signa ad hostem converti^g aciemque dirigi jubet, et, paucis turmis ⁴ præsidio “ad impedimenta dimissis, reliquos equites ad latera disponit. Celeriter nostri clamore sublato pila in hostes immittunt. Illi, ubi ⁵ præter spem, quos^h fugere credēbant, ⁶ infestis signisⁱ ad se ire viderunt, impetum modò ferre non potuerunt, ac, primo concursu^j in fugam coniecti, proximās silvas petierunt: quos^k Labiēnus equitatu consecutus, magno numero interfecto, compluribus captis, paucis post diebus civitatem recēpit: nam Germāni, qui auxilio^l veniebant, perceptā Trevirorum fugā, sese domum contulerunt. Cum iis propinqui Indutiomāri, qui defectiōnis auctores fuerant, comitati eos, ex civitate excessere. ⁷ Cingetorigi, quem ab initio permansisse in officio demonstravimus, principatus atque imperium est traditum.

9. Cæsar, postquàm ex Menapiis in Treviros venit, duabus de causis Rhenum transire constituit: quarum erat altera,^m quod auxilia contra se Treviris miserant; altera,^m ⁸ ne Ambiōrix ad eos receptum haberet. His constitutis rebus, paulum supra eum locum, quo antè exercitum transduxerat, facere pontem instituit. Notā atque institutā ratiōne, magno

^a § 116. Obs. 4.^c § 117.ⁱ § 129, R.^b § 136, Obs. 5, (*in.*)^f § 123, R^k 38.^e § 145, R. & 38.^g 90, 4.^l § 114, Obs. 4, (*illis.*)^d § 121, R. XXVI.^h 38, & 91.^m 27, 10.

milītum studio, paucis diēbus opus efficitur. Firmo in Trevīris præsidio ad pontem relicto, ne quis ab iis subīto motus orirētur,^a reliquas copias equitatumque transducit. Ubiī, qui antè obsides dedērant atque in deditiōnem venērāt,^b purgandi sui causā ad eum legātos mittunt, qui doceant,^b “neque ex suā civitatē auxilia^c in Trevīros missa,^d ² neque ab se fidem læsam:^d” petunt atque orant, “ut sibi parcat,^e ³ ne commūni odio Germanōrum innocentes pro nocentibus pœnas pendant:” si amplius obsidum^f velit, dare pollicentur. ⁴ Cognitā Cæsar causā^g repērit, ab Suēvis auxilia missa esse:^d Ubiōrum satisfactiōnem accipit; aditus viasque in Suēvos perquirit.

10. Intērim paucis post diēbus fit ab Ubiis certior, Suēvos^c omnes unum in locum copias cogēre, atque iis nationibus,^h quæ sub eōrum sintⁱ imperio, denunciāre, uti auxilia pedītātūs equitātūsque mittant.^e His cognitīs rebus, rem frumentariam providet, castris^h idoneum locum deligit, Ubiis^h impērat, ut pecōra dedūcant^e suāque omnia ex agris in oppida confērant, sperans, barbāros atque ⁵imperitos homīnes,^c inopiā cibariōrum afflictos, ad inīquam pugnandi conditiōnem posse dedūci:^k mandat, ut crebros exploratōres in Suēvos mittant,^e quæque apud eos gerantur,ⁱ cognoscant.^e Illi imperāta faciunt, et, paucis diēbus intermissis, ⁶refērunt, “Suēvos^c omnes, posteāquam certiōres nuncii de exercitū Romanōrum venērint, cum omnibus suis sociorumque copiis, quas coēgissent,ⁱ penītus ad extrēmos fines sese recepissee:^d silvam esse ibi ⁷infinītā magnitudīne, quæ appellātur^m Bacēnis: hanc^c longē introrsus pertinēre, et, pro natīvo muro objectam, Cheruscos^g ab Suēvis, Suevosque ab Cheruscis, injuriis incursionibusque prohibēre: ad ejus initium silvæ Suēvos^c adventum Romanōrum expectāre constituisse.”^d

^a § 140, 1, 2d.^c § 140, 1, 3d.ⁱ § 140, 6.^b § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.^f § 106, R. VIII.^k 87.^e § 145, R.^g 104, 1.^l § 140, 5.^d 98, 2, & 94, 1, 2d.^h § 123, R.^m § 141, Obs. 5, 1st.

11. Quoniam ad hunc locum perventum est,^a non ¹aliēnum, esse vidētur,^b de Galliæ Germaniæque moribus, et quo^c diffērant^d eæ natiōnes inter sese,² proponere. In Galliā, non solūm in omnibus civitatibus atque ³in omnibus pagis partibusque, sed pæne etiam in singulis^e domibus, factiōnes sunt: ⁴earumque factiōnum principes sunt, qui summam auctoritatem eōrum iudicio habere existimantur, quorum ad arbitrium iudiciumque summa omnium rerum consiliorumque redeat.^f ⁵Idque ejus rei causā antiquitūs institūtum vidētur, ne quis ex plebe contra potentiōrem auxilii^g egēret: ^hsuos enim ⁶quisque opprīmiⁱ et circumveniri non patitur, neque, aliter si faciant, ullam inter suos habent auctoritatem. ⁷Hæc eādem ratio est in summā totius Galliæ: namque omnes civitates in partes divīsæ sunt duas.

12. Cū Cæsar in Galliam venit, alterius^k factiōnis ⁸principes erant Ædui, alterius^k Sequāni. Hi cū per se minūs valērent, quod summa auctoritas antiquitūs erat in Æduis, magnæque eōrum¹ erant clientelæ, Germānos atque Ariovistum sibi adjunxerant, eosque ad se magnis ⁹jactūris pollicitationibusque perduxerant. Præliis verò compluribus factis secundis, atque omni nobilitate Æduōrum interfectā, ¹⁰tantum potentiā^c antecesserant, ut magnam partem clientium ab Æduis ad se transducērent, obsidesque ab iis principum filios accipērent, et publicè jurare cogērent, nihil se contra Sequānos consilii initūros; et partem finitimi agri, per vim occupatam, possidērent: Galliæque totius principatū obtinērent. Quā necessitate adductus Divitiācus, auxilii petendi causā Romam ad Senātum profectus, ¹¹infectā re rediērat. Adventu Cæsaris factā commutatiōne rerum, obsidibus Æduis redditis, veteribus clientēlis restitūtis, novis^m per Cæsārem comparātis (quod hi, qui se ad ¹²eōrum

^a 67, 5, Note.^e 26, 5.ⁱ 90.^b 51.^f § 141, Obs. 3.^k 27, 10.^c § 123, R.^g § 121, Exc. 1.^l § 108, R. XII.^d § 140, 5.^h § 140, 1, 21.^m 19, (*clientelis.*)

amicitiā aggregavērant, meliōre condiōne^a atque æquiorē imperio se^b uti vidēbant), ¹ reliquis rebus^c eōrum, gratiā, dignitatē^c amplificātā, Sequāni principātum ² dimisērant. In eōrum locum Remi successērant; ³ quos^d quod adæquāre apud Cæsārem gratiā intelligebātur, ii, qui propter ⁴ vetēres inimicitias nullo modo cum Æduis conjungi potērant, ⁵ se Remis^e in clientēlam dicābant. Hos illi diligenter tuebantur. Ita et novam et repentē collectam auctoritatē tenēbant. Eo tum statu^f res erat, ut longē principes^g haberentur^h Ædui, secundum locum dignitātis Remi obtinērent.^h

13. In omni Galliā eōrum homīnum, qui⁶ aliquo sunt numēroⁱ atque honōre,ⁱ genēra sunt duo: nam plebes pæne servōrum habētur loco,^f quæ per se nihil audet et nullo adhibētur consilio.^k Plerīque, cū aut ⁷ æreⁱ aliēno, aut magnitudīne tributōrum, aut injuriā potentiōrum premuntur, sese in servitūtem dicant nobilibus: ⁸ in hos eādē omnia sunt jura, quæ domīnis^m in servos. Sed de his duōbus generibus ⁹ altērum est Druīdum, altērum equitum. ¹⁰ Illi rebusⁿ divīnis intērsunt, sacrificia publiā ac privāta ¹¹ procūrant, religiōnes interpretantur. Ad hos magnus adolescentium numērus disciplīnæ causā^l concurrit, magnōque ¹² ii sunt apud eos honōre.^f Nam ferē de omnibus controversiis publicis privatisque constituunt; et, si quod est^o admissum facinus, si cædes facta, si de hæreditātē, si de finibus controversia est,^o iidem decernunt; præmia pœnasque constituunt: si qui aut privātus aut publicus eōrum ¹³ decrēto^p non stetit, sacrificiis interdīcunt. Hæc pœna apud eos est gravissīma. ¹⁴ Quibus ita est interdictum, ii numēro impiōrum ac sceleratōrum habentur: iis omnes decēdunt, ¹⁵ aditum eōrum sermonemque defugiunt, ne quid ex contagiōne incommōdi ac

^a § 121, R. XXVI.

^f § 136, Obs. 5, (in.)

¹ § 129, R.

^b § 145, R.

^g § 103, R. & Obs. 2.

^m § 112, R. II.

^c 109, 2. & § 98, Obs. 4.

^h § 140, 1, 1st.

ⁿ § 112, R. I.

^d 39, & 91.

ⁱ § 106, R. VII.

^o § 140, Obs. 2.

^e § 123, R.

^k § 126, R. III.

^p § 112, R. V.

cipiant : neque iis petentibus jus redditur, neque honos ullus communicatur. His autem omnibus Druidibus præest unus, qui ¹summam inter eos habet auctoritatem. Hoc mortuo, si qui ex reliquis excellit dignitate, succedit ; at, si sunt plures pares, suffragio ^a Druidum deligitur, nonnunquam etiam armis ^a de principatu contendunt. Hi certo anni tempore in finibus Carnutum, ²quæ regio totius Galliæ media ^b habetur, considunt in loco consecrato. Huc omnes undique, qui controversias habent, conveniunt, eorumque decretis ^c judiciisque ³ parent. ⁴Disciplina in Britannia reperta atque inde in Galliam translata esse existimatur : et nunc, qui ^d ^e diligentius eam rem cognoscere volunt, plerumque illò discendi causâ proficiscuntur.

14. Druides a bello abesse consueverunt, neque tributa unâ cum reliquis pendunt ; ⁶ militiae vacationem ⁷ omniumque rerum habent immunitatem. Tantis excitati ⁸ præmiis, ^a et suâ sponte ^a multi in disciplinam conveniunt, et a parentibus propinquisque mittuntur. Magnum ibi numerum versuum ⁹ ediscere dicuntur : itaque annos nonnulli vicenos ^c in disciplinâ permanent. Neque fas esse existimant, ¹⁰ ea literis mandare, cum in reliquis ferè rebus, publicis privatisque rationibus, Græcis utantur ^f literis. ¹¹ Id mihi duabus de causis instituisse videntur ; quòd neque in vulgum ¹² disciplinam efferri velint, neque eos, qui discant, ^g literis ^c confisos, minùs memoriæ ^c studere : quod ^h ferè plerisque accidit, ut præsidio literarum diligentiam in perdiscendo ac memoriam remittant. ¹ ¹³ In primis hoc volunt persuadere, ¹⁴ non interire animas, sed ab aliis post mortem transire ad alios : atque hoc ^a maxime ad virtutem excitari putant, metu mortis neglecto. Multa præterea de sideribus atque eorum motu, de mundi ac terrarum magnitudine, de rerum naturâ, de Deorum immortalium vi ac potestate ¹⁵ disputant et juventuti tradunt.

^a § 129, R.^d 37, (ii.)^e § 141, Obs. 3.^b § 103, R. & Obs. 2.^e 26, 1.^h 37, 9, Note 3.^c § 112, R. V.^f § 140, Obs. 3.ⁱ § 140, 1, 4th.

15. Alterum genus est equitum. Hi, ¹ cum est usus, atque aliquod bellum incidit (quod ^a ante Cæsaris adventum ferè quotannis accidere solēbat, uti aut ipsi ^b injurias inferrent, aut illatas propulsarent), omnes in bello ² versantur: atque eorum ut quisque est genere ^c copiisque amplissimus, ita plurimos circum se ³ ambactos clientesque habent. Hanc unam gratiam potentiamque novērunt.

16. Natio est omnium Gallorum admōdum ⁴ dedita religionibus, ^d atque ob eam causam, qui sunt affecti gravioribus morbis, quique in præliis periculisque versantur, aut pro victimis homines immolant, aut se immolaturos vovent, administrisque ad ea sacrificia Druidibus utuntur; quod, pro vitâ hominis nisi hominis vita reddatur, non posse aliter Deorum immortalium numen placari arbitrantur: publicèque ejusdem generis habent instituta sacrificia. Alii immāni magnitudine ^e simulacra habent, quorum ⁵ contexta viminibus membra vivis hominibus ^f complent, quibus succensis, circumventi flammâ exanimantur homines. Supplicia eorum, qui in furto, aut in latrocinio, aut aliquâ noxâ sint comprehensi, ^g gratiōra Diis ^d immortalibus esse arbitrantur: sed, cum ⁶ ejus generis copia deficit, ad innocentium supplicia descendunt.

17. ⁷ Deum maximè Mercurium colunt: hujus sunt plurima simulacra, hunc ^h omnium inventorem artium ferunt, hunc ^h viarum atque itinerum ducem, hunc ^h ad quæstus pecuniæ mercaturasque habere vim maximam arbitrantur. Post hunc, ⁸ Apollinem et Martem et Jovem et Minervam: de his eandem ferè, quam reliquæ gentes, ⁱ habent opinionem; Apollinem ^h morbos depellere, Minervam ^h operum atque artificiorum ⁹ initia tradere; Jovem ^h imperium cælestium tenere; Martem ^h bella regere. Huic, cum prælio dimicare constituērunt, ea, quæ bello cepērint, plerumque de-

^a 37, 9, Note 3.

^b 32, 3.

^c § 128, R.

^d § 111, R.

^e § 106, R. VII.

^f § 125, R.

^g § 141, Obs. 8.

^h § 145, R.

ⁱ § 101, Obs. 4.

vōvent. ⁱ Quæ superavērīnt,^a animalia capta immōlant; reliquas res in unum locum confērunt. Multis in civitatibus harum rerum exstructos tumūlos locis^b consecrātis conspici cāri licet: neque sæpe accidit, ut, neglectā quispiam religiōne,^c aut capta^d apud se occultāre, aut ² posita^d tollere auderet: gravissimumque ei rei^e supplicium cum cruciātū constitūtum est.

18. Galli se omnes ab Dite patre prognātos prædicant, idque ab Druidibus proditum dicunt. Ob eam causam, ³ spatia omnis temporis non numēro diērum, sed noctium, finiunt; dies natāles et mensium et annōrum initia sic observant, ⁴ ut noctem dies subsequatur.^f In reliquis vitæ institūtis, hōc^g ferè ab reliquis diffērunt, quòd suos libēros, nisi cūm adolevērīnt, ut munus militiæ sustinēre possint, ⁵ palām ad se adīre non patiuntur; filiumque puerili ætate in publico, in conspectu patris assistere, turpe^h ducunt.

19. Viri, quantas pecunias ab uxoribus dotis nomīne accepērunt, tantas ex suis bonis, æstimatiōne factā, cum dotibus communicant. Hujus omnis pecuniæ ⁶ conjunctim ratio habētur, ⁷ fructusque servantur: uter eōrum ⁸ vitā superārit, ad eum pars utriusque cūm fructibus superiōrum temporum pervēnit. Viri in uxōres, sicut in libēros, vitæ necisque habent potestatem: et, cūm pater familiæ, illustriōre loco natus, decessit, ejus propinqui conveniunt, et, de morte si res in suspiciōnem venit, ⁹ de uxoribus in servilem modum quæstiōnem habent, et, ¹⁰ si compertum est, igni atque omnibus tormentis excruciatas interficiunt. Funēra sunt ¹¹ pro cultu Gallōrum magnifica et sumtuōsa; omniāque, quæ ¹² vivis cordiⁱ fuisse arbitrantur, in ignem infērunt, etiam animalia: ac paulo supra hanc memoriā servi et cliētes, quos ab iis dilectos esse constābat, justis funeribus confectis, unā cremabantur.

^a § 141, Obs. 3.^d 19, (*animalia.*)^z § 128, R.^b § 136, Obs. 5, (*in.*)^e § 126, R. III.^h § 98, Obs. 6.^c 109, 2.^f § 140, 1, 1st.ⁱ § 114, R. & 19

20. Quæ^a civitatēs¹ commodiūs suam rem publicam administrāre existimantur, habent legīb^b sanctum, si quis quid de republicā a finitīmis rumōre ac famā accepērit, uti ad magistrātum defērat,^c neve cum quo alio communicet:^c quòd sæpē homīnes temerarios atque imperītos falsis rumorīb^b terrēri, et ad faciūsus impelli, et de summis rebus consilium capēre cognitum est. Magistrātus, ²quæ visa sunt, occultant; quæque^d esse ex usu judicavērint, multitudīni produnt. De republicā nisi ³per concilium loqui non conceditur.

21. Germāni multūm ab hac consuetudīne diffērunt: nam neque Druīdes habent, qui rebus divīnis præsint,^e ⁴neque sacrificiis^f student. Deōrum numēro eos solos ducunt, quos cernunt, et ⁵quorum apertē opīb^b juvantur, Solem et ⁶Vulcānum et Lunam: reliquos ne famā quidem accepērunt. Vita omnis in venationīb^b atque in studiis rei militāris consistit: ⁷ab parvūlis labōri^f ac duritiæ^f student. Qui diutissimē ⁸impubēres permansērunt, maxīmam inter suos ferunt laudem: hōc ali statūrā,^g ali hōc vires^g nervosque confirmāri, putant. Intra annum verò vicissimūm femīnæ notitiam habuisse, in turpissimis habent rebus: cujus rei nulla est occultatio, quòd et promiscuē in fluminīb^b perluuntur, et pellīb^b aut parvis ⁹rhenōnum tegimentis utuntur, magnā corpōris partē nudā.

22. Agricultūræ^f non student; majorque pars victūs eōrum in lacte, caseo, carne consistit: neque quisquam agri modum certum aut fines habet proprios; sed magistrātus ac princīpes in annos singūlos gentīb^b^h cognationibusque homīnum, qui unā coiērint, ¹⁰quantum,ⁱ et quo loco visum est, agri attribuunt, atque anno pōst aliò transire cogunt. ¹¹Ejus rei multas affērunt causas; ne assiduā consuetudīne capti, studium belli gerendi agricultūrā commū-

^a 37, 4, (*civitatēs*.) ^d § 141, Obs. 3.

^e § 145, R.

^b § 129, R.

^o § 141, R. II.

^h § 123, R.

^c § 140, 1, 3d.

^f § 112, R. V.

ⁱ § 46, 1.

tent;^a ne latos fines parāre studeant,^a potentioresque humil-
iōres possessionībus^b expellant;^a ne¹ accuratiūs ad frigōra
atque æstus vitandos^c ædificent;^a ne qua oriātur^a pecuniæ
cupiditas, quā ex re factiōnes dissensionesque nascuntur; ut
²anīmi æquitāte plebem contineant, cū suas quisque opes
cum potentissimis æquāri videat.^d

23. Civitatibus^e maxīma laus est, quā latissimas circum
se vastātis finibus solitudines habere. Hoc³ proprium virtū-
tis^f existīmant, expulsos agris^g finitimos^h cedere, neque
quenquam^h prope audere consistere: simul hoc se^h fore tu-
tiōres arbitrantur, repentinæ incursiōnis timoreⁱ sublato.
Cū bellum civitas aut illātum defendit, aut infert; magis-
trātus, qui ei bello^k præsint,¹ ut vitæ necisque habeant potes-
tatem, deliguntur. In pace nullus est communis magistrā-
tus, sed principes regiōnum atque pagōrum inter suos⁴ jus
dicunt, controversiasque minuunt. Latrocinia nullam habent
infamiam, quæ extra fines cujusque civitātis fiunt; atque ea
juventutis exercendæ^m ac desidiæ minuendæ causā fieri præ-
dicant. Atque, ubi quis ex principibus in concilio dixit,
“se ducem fore; ⁵quiⁿ sequi velint, profiteantur; ^o” consur-
gunt ii, qui et causam et hominem probant, suumque auxil-
ium pollicentur, atque ab multitudine collaudantur: qui ex
iis secūti non sunt, in desertorum ac proditorum numēro
ducuntur, omniumque iis^p rerum postea fides derogatur.
Hospites violāre, fas non putant; quiⁿ quāque de causā ad
eos venērint, ab injuriā prohibent, sanctosque habent; iis
omnium domus patent, victusque communicatur.

24. ⁶Ac fuit antea tempus, cū Germānos Galli virtute
superārent,⁷ ultro bella inferrent, propter hominum multitu-
dinem agrīque inopiam trans Rhenum colonias mittērent.

^a § 140, 1, 2d.

^f § 107, R. IX.

¹ § 141, R.II.Obs.2,4th.

^b § 136, R. LII.

^g § 136, R. LII.

^m 112, 5.

^c § 98, Obs.2,& 112,7.

^h § 145, R.

ⁿ § 141, Obs. 3.

^d § 140, Obs. 3.

ⁱ 109, 2.

^o § 45, I. 1.

^e § 110, Obs. 1.

^k § 112, R. I.

^p § 126, R. V.

Itaque ea, quæ fertilissima sunt, Germaniæ loca circum Hercyniam silvam (quam^a Eratosthēni et quibusdam Græcis famâ notam esse video, quam illi Orcyniam appellant), Volcæ Tectosages occupaverunt, atque ibi consederunt. Quæ^b gens ad hoc tempus iis sedibus sese continet, ¹ summamque habet justitiæ et bellicæ laudis opiniōnem: nunc quodque in eadem inopiâ, egestate, patientiâ, quâ Germāni, permānent, eodem victu^c et cultu corporis utuntur; ²Gallis^d autem Provinciæ propinquitas, et transmarinarum rerum notitia, ³ multa ad copiam atque usus largitur. Paulatim assuefacti superari, multisque victi præliis, ne se quidem ipsi^e cum illis virtute comparant.

25. Hujus Hercyniæ silvæ, quæ suprâ demonstrata est, latitudo novem diērum iter^f ⁴expedito^g patet: non enim aliter^h finiri potest, neque mensuras itinērum novērunt. Orietur ab Helvetiōrum et Nemētum et Rauracōrum finibus, rectaque fluminis Danubii regiōne^h pertinet ad fines Dacōrum et Anartium: hinc se flectit ⁶sinistrorsus, diversis ab flumine regionibus, multarumque gentium fines propter magnitudinem attingit: neque quisquam est hujus Germaniæ, qui se aut adisse ad initium ejus silvæ dicat,ⁱ cū diērum iter^f sexaginta processerit,^k aut quo ex loco oriatur,^l acceperit. Multa in eâ genera^a ferarum nasci constat, quæ reliquis in locis visa non sint: ^m ex quibus, quæ maximè differant ab ceteris et ⁷memoriæⁿ prodenda^o videantur, hæc sunt.

26. ⁸Est bos cervi figurâ^p cujus a mediâ fronte inter aures unum cornu existit, excelsius magisque directum his, quæ nobis nota sunt, cornibus. Ab ejus summo, ⁹sicut palmæ, rami quàm latè diffunduntur. Eadem est feminae marisque natūra, eadem forma magnitudōque cornuum.

^a § 145, R.

^b 38, 2.

^c § 121, R. XXVI.

^d § 110, R.

• 33, 1.

^f § 132, R. XLII.

^g § 112, R. XVII.

^h § 129, R.

ⁱ § 141, R. I.

^k § 140, Obs. 3.

^l § 140, 5.

^m § 141, Obs. 3.

ⁿ § 126, R. III.

^o 108, 6.

^p § 106, R. VII.

27. Sunt item, quæ appellantur ¹Alces.^a Harum est consimilis capreis^b figurâ et ²variëtas pellium; sed magnitudîne^c paulo antecêdunt, mutilæque sunt cornibus,^c et crura sine nodis articulisque habent; neque quiëtis causâ procumbunt, neque, si ³quo afflictæ casu concidêrint, erigere sese aut sublevare possunt. His^d sunt arbôres pro cubilibus: ⁴ad eas se applicant, atque ita, paulum modò reclinatæ, quiëtem capiunt: quarum ex vestigiis cùm est animadversum a venatoribus, quò se recipere consuêrint,^e omnes eo loco aut a radicibus subruunt, aut accidunt arbôres tantùm, ut summa species eârûm stantium relinquâtur. Huc cùm se consuetudîne reclinavêrint, ⁵infirmas arbôres pondere affligunt, atque unâ ipsæ concidunt.

28. Tertium est genus eôrûm, qui ⁶Uri^a appellantur. Hi sunt magnitudîne^c paulo infra elephantos, specie^f et colôre et figurâ tauri. Magna vis eôrûm, et magna velocitas: neque homîni,^g neque feræ, quam conspexêrint, parcut. Hos studiôsè foveis^h captos interficiunt. Hoc se labore^h durant adolescentes, atque hoc genêre^h venatiônis exercent; et, qui plurîmos ex his interfecêrunt, relâtis in publicum cornibus, ⁷quæ sint testimonio,ⁱ magnam ferunt laudem. Sed assuescere ad homînes, et mansuefieri, ⁸ne parvûli quidem excepti possunt. Amplitûdo cornuum et figurâ et species multùm a nostrôrûm boum cornibus differt. Hæc studiôsè conquisita ab labris argento^k circumclûdunt, atque in ⁹amplissimis epulis pro poculis utuntur.

29. ¹⁰Cæsar, postquam per Ubios exploratôres compërit, Suëvos sese in silvas recepisse,^l inopiam frumenti veritus, quòd, ut suprâ demonstravimus, minimè omnes Germâni agriculturæ student, constituit, non progrêdi longiùs: sed, ne omnîno metum redîtus sui barbaris^m tolleret, atque ut

^a § 103, R. V.^c § 140, 5.ⁱ 114, R. & Obs. 4.^b 19, *formis*, § 111, R.^f § 106, R. VII.^k § 125, R.^c § 128, R.^g 112, R. V.^l 98, 2.^d § 112, R. II.^h § 129, R.^m § 123, R. & 19,

eōrum auxilia tardāret, reducto exercītu, partem ultimam pontis, quæ ripas Ubiōrum contingēbat, in longitudinem pedum ducentōrum rescindit; atque in extrēmo ponte^a turrim tabulatōrum^b quatuor constituit, præsidiumque cohortium^b duodēcim pontis tuendi causā ponit, magnisque eum locum munitionibus firmat. Ei loco^c præsidioque Caium Volcatium Tullum adolescentem præfēcit: ipse, cū maturescēre frumenta incipērent,^d ad bellum Ambiorīgis profectus (per Arduennam silvam, quæ est totius Galliæ maxīma, atque ab ripis Rheni finibusque Trevirōrum ad Nervios pertinet, milibusque^e ampliùs^f quingentis in longitudinem patet), Lucium Minucium Basīlum cum omni equitatu præmittit, ¹ si quid celeritate itinēris atque opportunitate temporis proficēre possit; monet, ut ignes fieri in castris prohibeat,^g ne qua ejus adventus procul significatio fiat:^h sese confestim subsequiⁱ dicit.

30. Basīlus, ² ut imperātum est, facit; celeriter contrāque omnium opiniōnem confecto itinēre, multos in agris inopinantes deprehendit; eōrum indicio ad ipsum Ambiorīgem contendit, quo in loco cum paucis equitibus esse dicebātur. ³ Multum cū^k in omnibus rebus, tum^k in re militāri potest fortuna. Nam sicut magno accidit casu, ut in ipsum incautum atque etiam imparātum incidēret,¹ priusque ejus adventus ab hominibus viderētur, quā fama ac nuncijs adventus afferrētur:^m sic ⁴ magnæ fuit fortunæ,ⁿ omni militāri instrumento,^o quod circum se habēbat, erepto, rhedis equisque comprehensis, ipsum effugēre mortem. Sed hoc eo factum est, quod, ædificio circumdāto silvā (ut sunt ferè domicilia Gallōrum, qui, vitandi æstus causā. plerumque silvarum ac fluminum petunt propinquitates), comites familiaresque ejus

^a 17, 1.^f § 120, Obs. 3.¹ § 140, 1, 4th.^b § 106, R. VII.^g § 140, 1, 3d.^m § 140, 4.^c § 123, R.^h § 140, 1, 2d.ⁿ § 108, R. XII.^d § 140, Obs. 4.ⁱ 94, 3.^o 109, 2.^e § 132, R. XLII.^k 124, 7.

angusto in loco paulisper equitum nostrorum vim sustinuerunt. His pugnantibus, illum in equum quidam ex suis^a intulit: fugientem silvæ texerunt. Sic et ad subeundum periculum, et ad vitandum, ¹multum fortuna valuit.

31. Ambiorix copias suas ²judiciōne^b non conduxerit,^c quod praelio dimicandum^d non existimaret, an^b ³tempore exclusus et repente equitum adventu prohibitus, cum reliquum exercitum subsequi crederet, dubium est: ⁴sed certe, dimissis per agros nunciis, sibi^e quemque consulere jussit: quorum pars in Arduennam silvam, pars in continentes paludes profugit: qui proximi Oceanum^f fuerunt, hi insulis sese occultaverunt, quas aestus efficere consueverunt: multi, ex suis finibus egressi, se suaque omnia ⁵alienissimis crediderunt. Cativolcus, rex dimidiæ partis Eburonum, qui una cum Ambiorige consilium inierat, ætate jam confectus, cum laborem aut belli aut fugæ ferre non posset, ⁶omnibus precibus detestatus Ambiorigem, qui^g ejus consilii auctor fuisset, ⁷taxo,^h cujus magna in Galliâ Germaniâque copia est, se exanimavit.

32. Segni Condrusique ex gente et numero Germanorum, qui sunt, inter Eburones Trevirosque, legatos ad Cæsarem miserunt, oratum,ⁱ ne se in hostium numero duceret,^k neve omnium Germanorum, qui essent citra Rhenum, ⁸unam^l esse causam judicaret: ^knihil se de bello cogitavisse, nulla Ambiorigi auxilia misisse. Cæsar, exploratâ re ⁹quæstiōne captivorum, si qui ad eos Eburones ex fugâ convenissent, ad se ut reducerentur,^k imperavit: si ita fecissent,^m fines eorum se violatûrum negavit. Tum copiis in tres partes distributis, impedimenta omnium legionum Aduatucam contulit. Id castelli nomen est. Hoc ferè est in mediis Eburonum finibus, ubi Titurius atque Aurunculeius hiemandi causâ

^a § 107, Obs. 8.^b 124, 13.^c § 140, 1, 4th.^d 113, 5.^e § 112, R. V.^f § 136, Obs. 5, (ad.)^g § 141, R. III.^h § 129, R.ⁱ § 148, R. LXIII.^k § 140, 1, 3d.^l § 103, R. V. & Obs. 2.^m § 140, 2, & 80, 2.

consederant. Hunc cum reliquis rebus locum probabat, tum, quod superioris anni munitiões integræ manebant, ut militum laborem sublevaret.^a Præsidio^b impedimentis legiõnem quatuordecimam reliquit, unam ex iis tribus, quas proximè conscriptas ex Italiâ transduxerat. Ei legiõni^c castrisque Quintum Tullium Cicerõnem præficit, ducentosque equites attribuit.

33. Partito exercitu, Titum Labienum cum legionibus tribus ad Oceânus versus, in eas partes, quæ Menapios attingunt, proficisci jubet: Caium Trebonium cum pari legiõnum numëro ad eam regiõnem, quæ Aduatucis^d adjacet, depopulandam^e mittit: ipse cum reliquis tribus ad flumen Sabim, quod influit in Mosam, extremasque Arduennæ partes ire constituit, quò cum paucis equitibus profectum^f Ambiorigem audiēbat. Discēdens, ¹ post diem septimum sese reversūrum, confirmat; quam ad diem ei legiõni,^g quæ in præsidio relinquebatur, frumentum debēri sciēbat. Labienum Treboniumque hortatur, si reipublicæ commōdo^h facere possint, ad eam diem revertantur;ⁱ ut, rursus communicato consilio, exploratisque hostium rationibus, aliud belli initium capere possent.^k

34. Erat, ² ut suprâ demonstravimus, ³ manus certa nulla, non oppidum, non præsidium, quod¹ se armis defendēret; sed omnes in partes dispersa multitudo. Ubi cuique^c aut vallis abdita, aut locus silvestris, aut palus impedita, spem præsidii aut salutis aliquam offerēbat, consederat. Hæc loca ⁴ vicinitalibus^m erant nota, magnamque res diligentiam requirēbat, non in summâ exercitūs tuendâ (nullum enim poterat univērsis ab perterritis ac dispersis periculum accidere), sed in singulis militibus conservandis; quæ tamen ⁵ ex parte res ad salutem exercitūs pertinēbat. Nam et prædæ cupid-

^a § 140, 1, 1st.^b § 114, R.^c § 123, R.^d § 112, R. IV.^e 112, 7.^f 98, 2.^g § 126, R. III.^h § 129, R.ⁱ § 140, 1, 3d, & Obs. 5, (ut.)^k § 140, 1, 2d.¹ § 141, R. I.^m § 111, Obs. 1, 4th

itas multos longiùs evocābat, et silvæ incertis occultisque itineribus ¹ confertos adīre prohibēbant. ² Si negotium confici ^a stirpemque hominum sceleratorum interfici ^a vellet, dimittendæ ^b plures manus diducendique erant milites: si continēre ad signa manipulos vellet, ut ³ instituta ratio et consuetudo exercitus Romani postulabat, locus ipse erat præsidio ^c barbaris, ^c neque ex occulto insidiandi et dispersos circumveniendi singulis ^d deerat audacia. At in ejusmodi difficultatibus, quantum ^e diligentiam providēri poterat, providebatur; ut potius ⁴ in nocendo aliquid omitteretur, etsi omnium animi ad ulciscendum ardēbant, quam cum aliquo militum detrimento noceretur. Cæsar ad finitimas civitates nuncios dimittit, omnes ad se evocat spe prædæ, ad diripiendos Eburones, ut potius in silvis Gallorum vita, quam ⁵ legionarius miles, periclitetur; ^f simul ut, magnâ multitudine circumfusâ, pro tali facinore, stirps ac nomen civitatis tollatur. ^f Magnus undique numerus celeriter convēnit.

35. Hæc in omnibus Eburonum partibus gerebantur, diesque ⁶ appetēbat septimus, quem ad diem Cæsar ad impedimenta legionemque reverti constituērat. Hic, quantum ^g in bello fortuna possit ^h et ⁷ quantos ^g affērat ^h casus, cognosci potuit. Dissipatis ac perterritis hostibus, ut demonstravimus, ⁸ manus erat nulla, quæ parvam modò causam timoris afferret. ⁱ Trans Rhenum ad Germānos pervēnit fama, diripi ^k Eburones, atque ultro omnes ad prædam evocari. ^k Cogunt equitum duo millia Sigambri, qui sunt proximi Rheno, a quibus receptos ex fugâ Tenchthēros atque Usipētes ⁹ suprâ docuimus: transeunt Rhenum navibus ratibusque, triginta millibus passuum infra eum locum, ubi pons erat perfectus præsidiumque ab Cæsare relictum: primos Eburonum fines ^l adeunt, multos ex fugâ dispersos excipiunt, magno pecoris

^a 94, 3.

19, 1.

^h § 140, 5.^b 108, 2.^c 46, 1.ⁱ § 141, R. I.^c § 114, R.^f § 140, 1, 2d.^k 96, 6.^d § 112, Obs. 1, &^e 48, 4.^l § 136, R. LII.

numéro, cujus^a sunt cupidissimi barbāri, potiuntur. Invitatī prædā, longiūs procēdunt: ¹ non hos palus, in bello latrociniisque natos, non silvæ morantur: quibus in locis sit^b Cæsar, ex captivis quærunt; profectum longiūs reperiunt, omnemque exercitum discessisse cognoscunt. Atque unus ex captivis, “ Quid vos,” inquit, “ hanc miseram ac tenuem sectamini prædam, quibus licet jam esse fortunatissimis? ^c Tribus horis^d Aduatucam^e venīre potestis: huc omnes suas fortūnas exercitus Romanōrum contulit: ²præsidiū tantum est, ut ne murus^f quidem cingi possit,^g neque quisquam egrēdi extra munitiōnes audeat.”^h Oblatā spe, Germāni, quam^h nacti erant prædam, in occulto relinquunt, ipsi Aduatucam^e contendunt, usi eōdem ³duce, cujus hæc indicioⁱ cognovērunt.

36. Cicēro, qui per omnes superiōres dies præceptis Cæsaris summā diligentīā milītes in castris continuisset, ac ne calōnem^f quidem quemquam extra munitiōnem egrēdi passus esset, septimo die, diffidens de número diērum Cæsārem fidem servatūrum, quōd longiūs eum progressum audiēbat, neque ulla de reditu ejus fama afferebātur; simul eōrum permōtus vocibus, ⁴ qui illius patientiam pæne obsessiōnem appellābant, si quidem ex castris egrēdi non liceret; nullum ejusmodi casum expectans, quo, novem oppositis legionibus maximōque equitatu, dispersis ac pæne delētis hostibus, in millibus passuum tribus offendi posset; quinque cohortes frumentatum in proximās segētes misit, quas inter et castra unus omnino collis intererat. Complūres erant in castris ex legionibus ægri relictī; ex quibus ⁵ qui hoc spatio diērum convaluērāt, circiter trecenti sub vexillo unā mittuntur: magna præterea multitudo calōnum, magna vis jumentorum, quæ in castris ⁶ subsederāt, factā potestāte, sequitur.

37. Hoc ipso tempore, ⁷ casu Germāni equites interveniunt, protinusque eōdem illo, quo venērāt, cursu ab decu-

^a § 107, R. IX.

^d § 131, R. XLI.

^g § 140, 1, 1st.

^b § 140, 5.

^e § 130, 2.

^h 37, 4.

^c § 103, Obs. 7.

^f 121, Note 2.

ⁱ § 129, R.

mānâ portâ in castra irrumpere conantur: nec prius sunt visi, objectis ab eâ parte silvis, quàm castris appropinquarent, usque eo, ut, ¹ qui ^a sub vallo tenderent mercatores, recipiendi sui facultatem non haberent. Inopinantes nostri re novâ perturbantur, ac vix primum impetum cohors in statione sustinet. Circumfunduntur^b ex reliquis hostes partibus, si quem^c aditum reperire possent. Ægre portas nostri tumentur, ²reliquos aditus locus ipse per se munitioque defendit. Totis trepidatur castris, atque alius ex alio causam tumultus querit; neque quò signa ferantur,^d neque quam in partem quisque conveniat,^d provident. Alius capta jam castra^e pronunciat; alius, delēto exercitu atque imperatore, victores barbaros^e venisse contendit: ³plerique novas sibi ex loco religiones fingunt, Cottæque et Titurii calamitatem, qui in eodem occiderint^f castello, ante oculos ponunt. Tali timore omnibus perterritis, confirmatur opinio barbaris,^g ut ex captivo audierant, nullum esse intus præsidium. Perrumpere nituntur, seque ipsi^h adhortantur, ne tantam fortunam ex manibus dimittant.ⁱ

38. Erat æger in præsidio relictus Publius Sextius Baculus, ⁴ qui primum pilum ad Cæsarem duxerat, cujus mentionem ⁵superioribus præliis fecimus, ac diem^k jam quintum cibo^l caruerat. Hic, diffusus suæ atque omnium salutis,^m inermis ex tabernaculo prodit: videt imminere hostes, atque in summo esse rem^e discrimine: capit arma a proximis atque in portâ consistit. Consequuntur hunc centuriones ejus cohortis quæ in statione erat: paulisper unâ prælium sustinent. ⁶Relinquit animus Sextium, gravibus acceptis vulneribus: ægre per manus tractus servatur. Hoc spatio interposito, reliqui sese confirmant tantum, ut in munitionibus consistere audeant, speciemque defensorum præbeant.

^a 37, 4.^e § 145, R.ⁱ § 140, 1, 3d.^b 116, 6.^f § 141, R. III.^k § 131, R. XLI.^c § 35, (*siquis*.)^g § 110, Obs. 1.^l § 121, R. XXV^d § 140, 5.^h 33, 1.^m § 112, R. V.

39. Intērim confectā frumentatiōne, milītes nostri clamōrem exaudiunt; praecurrunt equītes, quanto sit ^a res in pericūlo, cognoscunt. Hīc verò nulla munitio est, quā ^b perterritos recipiat: modò conscripti, atque ¹ usūs ^c militāris imperīti, ad tribūnum milītum centurionesque ora convertunt: quid ab his praecipiat^a, expectant. Nemo est tam fortis, quin ^d rei novitate perturbetur. Barbāri, signa procul conspicāti, oppugnatione ^e desistunt: redisse primò legiōnes credunt, quas longiūs discessisse ex captivis cognoverant: postea, despectā paucitate, ex omnibus partibus impetum faciunt.

40. Calōnes in proximum tumulum procurrunt: hinc celeriter dejecti se in signa manipulosque conjiciunt: eo magis timidos perterrent milītes. Alii, ² cuneo facto ut celeriter perrumpant, ^f censent, quoniam tam propinqua sint castra; et, ³ si pars aliqua circumventa ceciderit, at reliquos servāri posse confidunt: alii, ^g ut in jugo consistent, ^f atque eundem omnes ferant ^f casum. Hoc vetēres non probant milītes, quos ^h sub vexillo unā profectos docuimus. Itaque inter se ¹ cohortāti, duce Caio Trebonio, equite Romāno, qui eis erat praepositus, per medios hostes perrumpunt, incolumesque ad unum omnes in castra perveniunt. Hos subsequēti calōnes equitesque eōdem impetu milītum virtute servantur. At ii, qui in jugo constitērant, ⁴ nullo etiam nunc usu rei militāris percepto, neque in eo, quod probaverant, consilio permanēre, ut se loco superiōre defendērent, neque eam, quam profuisse aliis ^k vim celeritatemque viderant, imitari potuerunt; sed, se in castra recipere conāti, iniquum in locum demiserant. Centuriōnes, quorum ^l nonnulli, ex inferioribus ordinibus reliquarum legiōnum, virtutis causā, ^m in superiōres erant ordines hujus legiōnis trans-

^a § 140, 5.

^b § 141, R. I.

^c § 107, R. IX.

^d § 140, 3.

^e § 136, R. LII.

^f § 140, 1, 3d.

^g § 101, Obs. 4, *censent*.

^h § 145, R. & 91, 4.

ⁱ § 28, Obs. 5.

^k § 112, R. V. 1st.

^l § 107, R. X.

^m § 129, R.

ducti ne antè partam rei militaris laudem amitterent,^a fortissimè pugnantes conciderunt. Militum pars, horum virtute submotis hostibus,^b præter spem incolūmis in castra pervēnit; pars a barbāris circumventa periit.

41. Germāni, desperatā expugnatione^b castrorum, quòd nostros jam constitisse^c in munitionibus vidēbant, cum eā prædā, quam in silvis deposuērant, trans Rhenum sese receperunt. Ac tantus fuit etiam post discessum hostium terror, ut ea nocte,^d cū Caius Volusēnus missus cum equitatu ad castra venisset,^e ¹ fidem non faceret,^f adesse cum incolūmi Cæsarem exercitū. Sic omnium animos timor præoccupaverat, ut, ² pæne alienatā mente,^b delētis omnibus copiis equitatum tantum se ex fugā recepisse,^c dicērent,^f neque, incolūmi exercitū, Germānos castra oppugnatūros fuisse contendērent. Quem ³ timōrem Cæsaris adventus sustulit.

42. Reversus ille, eventus belli non ignōrans, ³ unum, quòd cohortes ex statione et præsidio essent^h emissæ, questus, ⁴ ne minūto quidem casuⁱ locum relinqui debuisset, multum fortunam in repentinō hostium adventu potuisse indicāvit; multo etiam ampliùs, quòd pæne ab ipso vallo portisque castrorum barbāros avertisset. ⁵ Quarum ⁵ omnium rerum^k maximè admirandum videbātur, quòd Germāni, qui eo consilio Rhenum transierant, ut Ambiorigis fines depopularentur,^f ad castra Romanorum delāti, ⁶ optatissimum Ambiorigi beneficium obtulerint.¹

43. Cæsar, rursus, ⁷ ad vexandos hostes profectus, magno coacto numero^b ex finitimis civitatibus, in omnes partes dimittit. Omnes vici atque omnia ædificia, quæ quisque conspexerat, incendebantur: præda ex omnibus locis agebatur: frumenta non solūm a tantā multitudīne jumentorum atque hominum consumebantur, sed etiam anni tempore atque im-

^a § 140, 1, 2d.^c § 140, Obs. 4.ⁱ § 126, R. III.^b 109, 2.^f § 140, 1, 1st.^k § 135, R. XLVII.^e 98, 2.^g 38.¹ § 140, 1, 4th.^d § 131, R. XLI.^h § 140, 1, 3d.

bribus procubuērant; ut, si qui etiam in præsentia se occultāssent, tamen iis,^a deducto exercitū, rerum omnium inopiā pereundum viderētur. Ac sæpe in eum locum ventum est,^b tanto in omnes partes diviso equitatu, ut modò visum^c ab se Ambiorigem^d in fugā captivi, nec planē etiam abisse^e ex conspectu contendērent, ut, spe consequendi illatā atque infinito labōre suscepto, qui se summam ab Cæsare gratiam^e initūros putārent,^f ¹pæne naturam studio vincērent,^g semperque paulum ²ad summam felicitatem defuisse viderētur,^g atque ³ille latēbris aut saltibus se eripēret,^g et noctu occultatus alias regiōnes partesque petēret,^g non majōre equitum præsidio, quā quatuor, quibus^h solis vitam suā committere audēbat.

44. Tali modo vastātis regiōnibus,ⁱ exercitum Cæsar duarum cohortium damno Durocortorum^k Remōrum reducit, conciliōque in eum locum Galliæ indicto,ⁱ de conjuratione Senōnum et Carnūtum quæstiōnem habere instituit; et de Accōne, qui princeps¹ ejus consilii fuērat, graviōre sententiā¹ pronunciātā, ⁴more majōrum supplicium sumsit. Nonnulli judicium veriti profugerunt; ⁵quibus^m cū aquāⁿ atque igni^o interdixisset, duas legiōnes ad fines Trevirōrum, duas in Lingonibus, sex reliquas in Senōnum finibus Agendici in hibernis collocāvit; frumentōque ⁶exercitū^p proviso, ut instituērat, in Italiam ad conventus agendos profectus est.

^a § 147, R.

^b 67, Note.

^c 98, 2.

^d § 145, R.

^e § 136, R. LII.

^f § 141, R. III.

^g § 140, 1, 1st.

^h § 123, R.

ⁱ 109, 2.

^k § 130, 2.

¹ § 103, R. V.

^m § 112, R. IV.

ⁿ § 136, Obs. 5, (ab.)

^o § 15, 7.

^p § 126, R. III.

NOTES ON BOOK I.

PAGE 53.—1. *Quarum*, supply *partium*, of these parts.—2. (Ii) *qui appellantur Celtæ ipsorum linguâ, Galli nostrâ* (linguâ, incölunt*) *tertiâ* (partem).—3. *Institütis*, customs.—4. *Inter se*, among themselves; from each other.—5. Arrange: *Flumen Garumna dividit Gallos ab Aquitanis, Matrôna et Sequâna* (dividunt Gallos) *a Belgis*.—6. *Cultu*, civilization, mode of living—*humanitâte*, refinement, mental culture.—7. *Minimè sæpe*, least often, *i. e.* very seldom.—8. *Eos*, *i. e.* *Germânos*.—9. *Ipsi*, *i. e.* *Helvetii*.—10. *Eorum* (finium) of those confines, or territories; of that country.—11. *Eorum*, of them, *i. e.* of the three general divisions of Gaul.—12. *Vergit ad Septentriones*, it inclines, or extends towards the north.

P. 54.—1. *Ab extrêmis finibus*, from the remotest, or most distant confines of Gaul; meaning the most northern limit of the division then inhabited by the Celtæ, or Gauls, called *Gallia propria*, and here called *extrêmis*, because farthest distant from Rome.—2. *Spec-tant*, &c., they look towards—the country faces—the northeast.—3. *Ad Hispaniam*, at—next to—Spain, *viz*: the Bay of Biscay.—4. *Consûles*, See Index.—5. *Civitâti*, his state:—*Civitas* means all the people living under one government.—6. *Potiri imperio*, to obtain the government.—7. *Persuâsit id eis facilius hoc*, he persuaded them to that measure more easily, on this account.—8. *Natūrâ loci*, by the nature of the place, or, of their situation; by their natural situation.—9. *Pro multitudîne hominum*, for, in proportion to, the number of inhabitants; in proportion to the population.—10. *Bellî atque fortitudinis*, for war and bravery.—11. *Qui patêbant*, which extended.—12. *Adducti his rebus*, induced by these circumstances.—13. *Ad proficiscendum*, for their departure.—14. *Carrorum quàm maximum numërum*, as great a number of wagons as possible.—15. *Sementes quàm maximas*, as great sowings as possible.

P. 55.—1. *In tertium annum*, against the third year.—2. *Occu-pâret*, that he should take possession of:—The imperfect subjunctive here follows the present (*persuâdet*) on the principle stated,

* Latin words not in Italics, or enclosed in parentheses, are not in the text, but are here supplied, to shew the full construction of the sentence.

§ 137, Obs. 1.—3. *Principātum*, the highest power or authority.—4. *Probat illis, perficere esse factu, perficere conāta*, he (Orgetorix) assures them that the accomplishment of their designs would be easily done; that their designs would be easily accomplished.—5. *Totius Galliæ*, i. e. *civitātibus totius Galliæ*, &c., Of the states of all Gaul the Helvetii,—*possent* (facere) *plurimum*, could do most, i. e. were most powerful.—6. *Inter se*, among themselves, to each other, mutually.—7. *Per tres—populos*, viz: the Helvetii, Sequāni, and Ædui.—8. Arrange; *Sperant sese posse potiri* (imperio) *totius Galliæ*.—9. *Ea res*, this design.—10. *Per indicium*, by information. 11. *Ex vinculis*, Out of chains, i. e. in chains.—12. Arrange: *Opportebat pœnam sequi* (Orgetorigem) *damnātum, ut cremaretur igni*, it behoved this punishment to follow, overtake, Orgetorix, being condemned, that he should be burned with fire.—13. *Familiam*, household—including domestics, slaves, &c.—14. *Ad millia decem*, about ten thousand;—*Ad*, with a numeral, signifies about, near, or towards.

P. 56.—1. *Magistrātus cogērent*, the magistrates (of the Ædui) were collecting.—2. *Quin ipse*, but that he.—3. *Ad*, about.—4. *Trium mensium*, for three months.—5. *Molita cibaria*, ground provisions, i. e. meal or flour.—6. *Usi eodem consilio*, following the same counsel or design; adopting the same resolution. 7. *Boiosque*, &c.,—*receptos ad se*, &c., having received the Boii, &c., they join them to themselves as allies; Or, they receive, and join to themselves as allies, the Boii, &c. For this use of the perfect participle see Idioms, 104.—8. *Vix quā*, scil. viā, where, or, by which way. 9. *Provinciam nostram*, our province; the Roman province in the south of Gaul, afterwards called Gallia Narbonensis.—10. *Propterea quod*, because; literally, on this account that.—11. *Isque transitur vado*, and it is crossed by a ford, i. e. it is fordable.

P. 57.—1. *Bono animo*, of a good mind, friendly disposition, well affected.—2. *Diem*, see *Dies*, Index.—3. *Ante diem quintum*, &c. The fifth before the Kalends of April, i. e. the 28th March. See Gr. App. I.—4. *Lucio Pisōne*, &c., that was, A. U. C. 696, B. C. 58.—5. *Urbe*, scil. *Romā*.—6. *Galliam ulteriōrem*, farther Gaul, i. e. Gaul beyond the Alps.—7. *Provinciæ toti*, &c. he orders as many soldiers as possible from the whole province, i. e. he levies, &c.:—For explanation of this construction see § 123, Exp.—8. *Ad*, near.—9. *Facti sunt certiōres*, were made more certain; were informed. 10. *Esse sibi in animo*, that they had it in design; that it was their intention; literally, that it was in the mind to them.—11. *Voluntate*, with his consent. 12. *Sub jugum missum*, sent under the yoke:—

Two spears were set upright in the ground, and another was laid across them at top, forming what the Romans called *jugum*. Under this they who were admitted to surrender upon these terms were compelled to pass unarmed, *nudi*.—13. *Concedendum* (esse sibi,) that he ought to yield to their request.—14. *Ante diem Idus Aprilis*, i. e. the 12th April, see App. I.

P. 58.—1. *Qui in flumen*—As the Rhone flows through the lake Lemanus, and of course out of it, it is here said that the lake flows into it. 2. *Ad montem Juram*, towards mount Jura.—3. *Millia passuum novem decem*, nineteen miles in length. See App. VI. Table 5.—4. *Castella commūnit*, he strongly fortifies castles, or redoubts. § 91, Obs. 1. 5th.—5. *Se invito*, he being unwilling, i. e. against his will, or inclination.—6. *Negat se, more, &c.* he declares that he cannot, consistently with the custom, &c. *Negat* is equivalent to *dicit non*.—7. *Navibus junctis ratibusque, &c.*, some by means of boats joined together, and numerous rafts being made; before *navibus* supply *Alii*.—8. *Quā minima, &c.*, where the depth of the river was least. 9. *Perrumpere*, break through, force a passage.—10. *Eo deprecatore*, he being intercessor; by his mediation.—11. *Gratiā et largitione*, by his personal influence and liberality—*poterat facere plurimum*, could accomplish a very great deal.—12. *In matrimonium duxerat*, had married; literally, had led into matrimony. *Ducere uxorem* (domum) “to marry,” is said of the husband, because a part of the ceremony consisted in leading the wife home to his house. *Nubere* (se) *viro*, “to marry,” is said of the wife, (literally, “to veil herself to her husband,”) because during the ceremony she wore a flame-colored veil.—13. *Novis rebus studēbat*, desired, wished for, new things; aimed at, plotted, a revolution in the state.

P. 59.—1. *Sequāni* (dent obsides);—*Helvetii* (dent obsides). 2. *Ne prohibeant*, that they would not prevent, or hinder, the Helvetii from (using) this route.—3. *Cæsari renunciatur*, Intelligence is brought to Cæsar; § 126, R. III.—4. *Intelligēbat, &c.*—he perceived it would be very dangerous to the province—*ut habēret*, to have; (literally, that it should have).—5. *Proximum*, nearest, i. e. shortest.—6. *Quod est extrēmum* (oppidum) *citeriōris Provinciæ*, which is the most distant town (viz: from Rome,) of the hither province, i. e. of Cisalpine Gaul; See Index.—7. *Rogatum auxilium*, to ask assistance.

P. 60.—1. *Necessarii, &c.*, friends and relations.—2. *Sibi præter agri, &c.* that nothing was left to them except the soil of their land; except a desolate country.—3. *Flumen est Arar*, The Arar

(now the Saone,) is a river.—4. *Incredibili lenitate*, with surprising smoothness.—5. *In utram partem*, into which part; which way; in which direction.—6. *Id transibant*, were crossing that;—*lintribus*, canoes, small boats.—7. *De tertiâ vigiliâ*, at the third watch, *i. e.* midnight; See App. I.—8. *Impeditos*, encumbered with their baggage.—9. *In proximas silvas*, &c., went into the neighboring forests and hid themselves:—This expresses the force of the accusative after *in*.—10. *Princeps pœnas persolvit*, first suffered punishment; § 98, Obs. 10, *i. e.* was the first to suffer punishment.

P. 61.—1. Arrange: *Tigurini interfecērunt L. Pisōnem legātum, avum L. Pisōnis ejus (i. e. Cæsāris,) socēri eōdem prœlio quo Tigurini interfecērunt Cassium*.—2. *Consēqui*, come up with, overtake.—3. *Pontem in Arāri*, &c. that a bridge should be made over the Arar.—4. *Cassiāno bello*, in the war with Cassius; See Index, Cassius.—5. *Ita cum Cæsāre agit*, thus speaks with, or addresses Cæsar:—This address of Divico is in the form of oblique narration; See § 140, 6, & § 141, R. VI., with explanation, &c.—6. *Vetēris incommōdi*, the old disaster; alluding to the defeat of Cassius.—7.—*Tribuērat quidquam magnopēre*, &c., should ascribe any thing too greatly to his own bravery.—8. *Ne committēret*, that he should not cause; bring it to pass—*aut prodēret*, &c., or hand down to posterity the memory of such an event.—9.—*Cæsar respondit*, Cæsar replied. All that follows in this chapter is oblique narration; the the verb *respondit* being in the perfect indefinite, the leading verb governed by it in the present infinitive is translated as the perfect indicative, and the perfect infinitive as the pluperfect indicative; See Idioms, Nos. 96, 98.—10. *Qui si*, if they, viz: the Roman people.

P. 62.—1. *Non fuisse*, &c., it would not have been difficult to guard against it; the subject of *fuisse* is *cavēre*, and strictly rendered is, “that to guard against it would not have been difficult.”—2. *Sed eo deceptum esse*, &c., but that they (the Roman people) had been deceived by this, because they did not think any thing had been done by them;—Supply *quidquam* before *commissum*. 3. *Timendum (esse sibi)*, that they should fear.—4. *Quōd si vellet*, but if, even although, he were willing.—5. *Num etiā—posse*, &c.? Could he also lay aside, &c.?—6. *Eōdem pertinēre*, were to the same effect; *pertinēre* has for its subject the two preceding clauses.—7. *Secundiores res*, more prosperous things; greater prosperity.—8. *Quum ea sint ita*, although these things are so; although this is the case.—9. *Testem ejus rei*, a proof of that custom.—10. *Cupidiūs*, too eagerly.—*Aliēno loco*, in a disadvantageous, or unfavorable place.

P. 63.—1. *Novissimo agmine*, the rear, i. e. the “last line” met by an opposing enemy.—2. *Satis habēbat*, &c., considered it sufficient for the present.—3. *Nostrum primum* (agmen), our van.—4. *Quinis aut senis*, &c., five or six miles (each day).—5. *Flagitāre* (for *flagitābat*,) continued to importune—*publicē*, in the name of their state.—6. *Frigōra*, the cold; the coldness of the climate.—7. *Sub septentrionibus*, under the north; towards the north.—This must be understood in relation to Italy.—8. *Frumento*, corn:—At this time not meal or bread was served out to the Roman soldiers, but raw corn, which they themselves prepared.—9. *Conferri*, &c., that it was collecting, bringing in, at hand.—10. *Diutius*, too long; See Idioms, 22.—11. *Qui summo*, &c., who was invested with the office of chief magistrate.

P. 64.—1. *Tacuērat*, had concealed.—2. *Valēat plurimum*, is very powerful; has great influence.—3. *Privati*, though private individuals.—4. *Necessariō coactus*, compelled by necessity, (*Necessariō* for *necessitatē*.)—5. *Designāri*, was meant.—6. *Nolēbat eas res jactāri*, *multis presentibus*, he was unwilling, he did not wish, that these affairs should be discussed, so many being present; in the presence of so many.—7. *Solo*, (Lisco,) of him alone.—8. *Redempta habere*, &c., had farmed the customs, and all the other public revenues of the *Ædui*: *Portoria* means duties on exports and imports,—*vectigalia* means every other kind of tax or revenue. Those who “farmed” them bought them at the lowest price they could, from the government, and collected them for their own use.

P. 65.—1. *Facultātes magnas comparāsse*, &c., had acquired great means for bestowing presents, namely, for the purpose of extending and strengthening his influence. 2. *Largiter posse*, had great influence—*collocāsse* (nuptum), had given in marriage.—3. *Cupere* (for *bene velle*), wished well to.—4. *Si quid* (adversi) *accīdat*, if any thing unfortunate should happen; if any calamity befall.—5. *Inquirendo*, by enquiry, on enquiring.—6. *Equitatu* (the old dative for *equitatui*; § 16, Exc. 2) *præcrat*, was over, or commanded the cavalry.—7. *Certissimæ res*, most certain; most unquestionable facts.—8. *Injussu suo*, &c without his order and the order of the state (viz: of the *Ædui*).

P. 66.—1. *Voluntatem*, affection.—2. *Commonefūcit*, reminds him.—3. *Ostendit*, shews him.—4. *Causâ cognitâ*, the cause being tried or investigated.—5. *Nequid gravius*, &c. that he (*Cæsar*) should not determine any thing too severe; that he should not pass too severe a sentence.—6. *Ipse*, he himself (viz: *Divitiacus*).

7. *Ille*, he (*i. e.* Dumnorix).—8. *Fraterno amōre*, by brotherly love; by love or affection for his brother.

P. 67.—1. *Adhūbet*, brings in—*propōnit*, lays before him.—2. *Divitiāco fratri*, to his brother, *i. e.* at the request of, and for the sake of his brother, Divitiacus.—3. *Custōdes*, spies.—4. *Consedisse*, had sat down, *i. e.* had encamped.—5. *Facilem* (ascensum) *esse*, that the ascent was easy.—6. *Vigiliā*; See Index; also Appendix to Gr. I.—7. See Index, *Legātus*.—8. See Index, *Prætor*—*Legātum prætore*, his lieutenant with prætorian powers.—9. *Et iis ducibus*, and with those as guides.—10. *In* (exercitu) *M. Crassi*.—11. *Primâ luce*, at the first daylight; at the dawn of day.—12. *Ipsè*, he himself (*i. e.*) Cæsar).—13. *Equo admisso*, his horse being put to it; spurred up, *i. e.* at full gallop.

P. 68.—1. *Multo die acto*, much of the day being past; when much of the day was past.—2. *Pro viso*, literally, for seen, *i. e.* as if it had actually been seen by him.—3. *Quo consuërat intervallo*, at the distance at which he had been accustomed to follow, *i. e.* at the usual distance. 4. *Exercitu* (the old dative for *exercitui*,) *frumentum metiri*, to measure out, *i. e.* to serve out corn for the army.—5. *Rei frumentariæ prospiciendum* (*esse sibi*), that he must provide for a supply of corn.—6. *Decurio*, See Index.—7. *Discedere*, were departing from them.—8. (*Helvetii*) *confidèrent* (*Romānos*) *posse*, &c.—9. *Animum advertit*, (same as *animadvertit*,) perceives; § 44, I. 3.—10. *Qui sustineret impetum*, to sustain the charge.

P. 69.—1. *Citeriōre Galliā*, hither Gaul; the north of Italy. 2. *Complēri*, to be filled, to be covered.—3. *Eum*, it, *i. e.* the place in which the baggage was.—4. *Confertissimâ acie*, &c., in very close array—*phalange factâ*, a phalanx being made. The German phalanx consisted of a very close body of men with their shields held over their heads, and overlapping so as to form a shed or screen like the Roman *testudo*, to defend them from the missiles of the enemy. The Macedonian phalanx, on the other hand, consisted of a body of men, sixteen deep and five hundred long.—5. *Sub*, close up to.—6. *Suo* (*equo remōto*).—7. *Periculō omnium* (*i. e.* *Imperatōris et militum*) *æquāto*, the danger of all being equal; all being exposed to equal danger.—8. *Scutum*, See Index.—9. *Satis commōdè*, conveniently enough; with sufficient ease or readiness.—10. *Nudo*, naked, unprotected:—Their bodies were exposed to the darts of the enemy, from having thrown down their shields.—11. *Pedem referre*, to retreat; literally, to take back the foot.—12. *Claudēbant agmen*, closed up the rear.—13. *Bipartito*, in two parties; in two divisions.

The army was drawn up in three lines, of which the first and second lines, forming one division, made head against those who had been defeated and compelled to retreat, *i. e.* the Helvetians, who were now returning to the attack; and the third line sustained the attack of those advancing (*vepientes*,) against them, the fresh troops, *i. e.* the Boii and the Tulingi, who were coming up in the rear.

P. 70.—1. *Ancipiti prælio*, in doubtful battle, *i. e.* victory inclining to neither side.—2. *Altëri*, the one, *i. e.* the Helvetii—*altëri*, the other, *i. e.* the Boii and the Tulingi.—3. *Ab septimâ horâ*, from the seventh hour, *i. e.* onc o'clock p. m.; See Index, *hora*.—4. *Aversum*, turned away; who had turned his back; retreating; flying.—5. *Pugnâtum est ad multam noctem*, It was fought till a great part of the night was past; till late at night.—6. *Matâras ac tragûlas*, &c. continued throwing lances and javelins from beneath.—7. *Qui, si juvissent*, for, if they should aid them; See Idioms, 39.—8. Arrange: *Se habitûrum eos* (Lingönas) *eödem loco quo ille*, (Cæsar,) *habëret Helvëtios*.—9. *Qui, cùm convenissent*, and they, when they had met; See Ref.

P. 71.—1. *Occultâri*, be concealed, (*viz.* from Cæsar).—2. *Omnîno ignorâri*, be altogether unknown; remain altogether unnoticed.—3. *Primâ nocte*, at the beginning of the night.—4. Arrange: *Impërat his per quorum fines iërant, uti*, &c.—5. *Habuit*, &c., treated as enemies; *i. e.* either put them to death or sold them as slaves.—6. *Ipsos*, them, *viz.* the Helvetii, Tulingi, and Latobrigi.—7. *Vacûe*, to be empty; to be uninhabited.—8. Arrange, *Concessit Æduis petentibus, ut (Ædui) collocarent Boios in suis finibus, quòd (Boii) cogniti erant egregiâ virtûte: quibus (Scil. Boiis) illi (Ædui) dedérunt agros*.—9. *Tabulæ*, lists; literally, tablets:—These were made of wood covered with wax, on which the Romans were accustomed to write with the stylus.—10. *Confectæ Græcis litëris*, written in Greek letters.—11. *Ratio*, an account.

P. 72.—1. *Capitum*, literally, “of heads,” *i. e.* persons, souls. 2. *Censu habito*, the census having been held; the number having been taken:—This was only a numbering of the army, and consequently very different from the Roman *census*; See Index, *Census*.—3. *Gratulatum*, to congratulate him:—After *gratulatum* supply *dicentes*, expressing past time; See Idioms, 94, 4, and 1, 2d.—4. *Pro veteribus injuriis*, &c., for the ancient injuries done by the Helvetii to the Roman people. Here two genitives are governed by one noun, the one, (*Helvetiörum*) in an active sense, and the other (*Populi Români*) in a passive sense; § 106, Obs. 1, & 2.—5. *Ne quis*, &c.

that no one should disclose their deliberations, unless those to whom this charge should be given by the assembly at large.

P. 73.—1. *Non minùs*, &c.; See Note 3, preceding page. The statement of the chiefs, and of Divitiacus who spoke for them, it will be perceived, is given in the form of oblique narration—of course, the leading verbs are in the infinitive mood governed by *dicentes*, or *dicens* expressing past time, because agreeing with the subject of verbs in the perfect tense. Hence the present infinitive, with a subject, will be translated in the perfect indicative; and the perfect infinitive, in the pluperfect, as the references show; and also all the verbs in subordinate clauses are in the subjunctive; See § 140, 6, and § 141, R. VI., &c.—2. *Harum* (factiōnum) &c. that the Ædui were at the head of one of these factions, and the Averni at the head of the other.—3. *Hi cū contendērent*, &c.; since these (the Ædui and Averni) had contended for the superiority.—4. *Horum*, of the latter, (viz: the Germans).—5. *Copias*; *copia* in the singular means “abundance,” in the plural, commonly “forces,” but here, great abundance; the plural form rendering it emphatic.—6. *Neque recusatūros quo minùs essent*, &c. nor refuse to be forever under their sway and government; Idioms, 78, Note, & 7.—7. *Se unum*, that he alone (Divitiacus).

P. 74.—1. *Quibus locus*, &c. for whom a settlement and habitations were to be procured.—2. *Futūrum esse*, that it would be; that the consequence in a few years would be.—3. *Neque enim*, &c., For neither was the Gallic territory to be compared with that of the Germans.—4. *Ut semel*. when once, i. e. as soon as.—5. *Omnia exempla cruciatusque*, all manner of cruelties: by Hendiadys (§ 150, 2, 2d,) for *exempla cruciatuum*.—6. *Nisi si*, same as *nisi*, unless.—7. *Ut*, namely, that.

P. 75.—1. *Habitā*, being delivered.—2. *Exprimēre*, draw, extort.—3. *Hoc*, on this account.—4. *Præ* (fortūnā) *reliquorum*, in comparison with the fortune of the rest; or simply, than the rest.—5. *Fugæ facultas*, the means of escape.—6. *Omnes cruciātus*, all tortures, i. e. all kinds of torture.—7. *Eam rem futūram* (esse) *curæ sibi*, that that thing would be a care to him; that he would attend to that matter.—8. *Secundum ea*, &c., besides these things, many circumstances induced him—*quare putāret*, to think; literally, why he should think.

P. 76.—1. *Occurrendum*, &c., he must meet, or thwart, as early as possible.—2. *Placuit ei*, it pleased him, i. e. he resolved.—3. *Et summis utrisque rebus*, matters of the greatest importance to

both.—4. *Si quid ipsi*, &c. if any thing had been wanted by him from Cæsar, *i. e.* if he had wanted any thing from Cæsar.—5. *Si quid ille se velit*, if he (Cæsar,) wished any thing from him (Ariovistus).—6. *Sine magno commeātu atque emolumento*, (better than *emolumento*,) without great expense and trouble.—7. Arrange: *Quid negotii esset aut Cæsari*, &c.

P. 77.—1. *Hanc gratiam referret*, he should make this return—*ut gravarētur*, that he grudged, or, was reluctant.—2. *Neque*. used conjunctively, equivalent to *et non*.—3. *Dicendum sibi et cognoscendum*, &c., that he should not think it necessary for him to speak, and inform himself about a matter of common-interest.—4. *Ne quam*, &c. (equivalent to *ne aliquam*,) that he should not lead any, &c.—5. *Injuriâ* literally, with injury, *i. e.* without just cause.—6. *Quod*, *i. e. secundum id quod*, according to that which, *i. e.* as far as (equivalent to *quantum*) he could do it consistently with the interest of the republic.—7. *Item*, in like manner.—8. *Non oportere se impediri*, that he ought not to be hindered.

P. 78.—1. *Longè iis abfutūrum*, would be far from them. *i. e.* would do them no good. 2. *Quod sibi*, &c. as to what Cæsar threatened to him, namely.—3. *Inter*, during.—4. *Virtūte* (facere) *possent*, could effect by valor.—5. *Ædui* (veniēbant) *questum*.—6. *Treviri autem* (veniēbant) *questum*.—7. *Ne—minūs facile*, &c., lest—he (Ariovistus) might be less easily resisted.—8. *Re frumentariâ comparatâ*, having provided a supply of corn; Idioms, 104.—9. *Tridui viam*, a journey of three days.—10. *Contendēre*. was hastening—*processisse*, had advanced—*ad occupandum Vesontionem*, to take possession of Vesontio.—11. *Summa facultas*, the greatest abundance. 12: *Ad ducendum bellum*, for protracting the war.

P. 79.—1. *Ut circūno circumductum*, as if traced around it with a pair of compasses.—2. *Non amplius* (spatio), not more than the space.—3. *Continet*, closes, occupies.—4. *Murus, circumdātus hunc* (montem,) *efficit arcem, et conjungit* (montem) *cum oppido*, a wall, thrown around, converts this mountain into a citadel, and connects it with the town.—5. *Ex percunctatiōne*, &c., from the enquiries of our men, and the statements of the Gauls.—6. *Vultum et aciem oculorum*, their look and the fierceness of their eyes.—7. *Tribūnis,—præfectis*; See Index.—8. *Quorum alius*, &c., of whom one having assigned one reason, another, another reason, which they said was a necessary one, (or rendered it necessary,) for them to return home.—9. *Fingere vultum*, compose their countenance

P. 80.—1. *Qui*, i. e. *ii qui*, those who.—2. *Dicto audiens*, obedient to the order:—*Dicto* is governed in the dative here by *audiens*; § 111, R.: both words together commonly signify obedient, and govern a dative by the same rule; as, *Duci dicto audiens*, obedient to the general.—3. *Consilio convocato*, a council (of war) being called; or, having called a council of war.—4. *Sibi quærendum*, that they must enquire, i. e. that it was their business to enquire.—5. *Sibi quidem persuaderi*, that he was even persuaded.—6. *Suis postulatis*, &c. his demands being known, and the fairness.—7. *Suâ*, their own—*ipsius*, his.—8. *Factum (esse) periculum*, that trial had been made. 9. *Servili tumultu*, (equivalent to *servorum tumultu*) the insurrection of the slaves.

P. 81.—1. *In suis*, in their own, (i. e. the Helvetii)—*illorum* (i. e. *Germanorum*) *finibus*, in their territories.—2. *Quos*, for *aliquos*, any.—3. *Neque sui potestatem fecisset*, and had not given an opportunity of coming to an engagement with him:—*Facere potestatem sui*, means to allow one's self to be approached.—4. *Ratione et consilio*, by stratagem and cunning.—5. *Qui*, i. e. *ii qui*, those who.—6. *Quod non fore dicto*, &c., As to this, that it was said the soldiers would not be obedient to orders.—7. *Scire enim quibuscunque*, &c., for he knew, to whomsoever, (i. e. in all cases in which; § 99, Obs. 7,) an army would not be obedient, that either, &c.—8. *Itaque se, quod*, &c., that he would therefore do immediately that which he was going to put off to a more distant day.

P. 82.—1. *Prætoriam cohortem*, a body-guard.—2. *Confidebat maxime*, trusted most.—3. *Princeps*, first.—4. *Egerunt*, strove—before *se neque*, supply *dicentes* or *dixerunt*; See Idioms, 94, 4.—5. *Satisfactione*, their apology, excuse.—6. *Exquisito*, being reconnoitred.—7. (Supply *qui dicent*,) *quod*, &c., to say that that which, &c.—8. *Fore uti desisteret*, that he would desist; See Ref.

P. 83.—1. *Ne quem peditem*, &c. that Cæsar should not bring any infantry.—2. *Tolli*, should be prevented, thwarted.—3. *Commodissimum*, most expedient.—4. *Omnibus equis*, &c., All their horses being taken from the Gallic cavalry, to mount on them, (literally, thereon).—5. *Si quid opus*, &c. if there should be any need of action; § 118, R. XXII.—6. *Nunc rescribere ad equum*, he now enrolled them among the cavalry.—7. *Ex equis*, on horseback—*denos*, ten each.—8. *Ubi ventum est eò*, when they came to the place appointed; See Ref.

P. 84.—1. *Necessitudinis*, &c., of alliance existed between them and the Ædui.—2. *Nihil sui*, nothing of their own.—3. *Aucti*

ores, encreased, farther advanced.—4. *Quos ampliùs*, any more.—5. *Rogatum et arcessitum*, having been asked and sent for.

P. 85.—1. *Quòd multitudinem transducit*, as to his leading, &c.; literally, as to this that he led; See Idioms, 38, Note.—2. *Defendèrit*, had warded it off.—3. *Quid sibi vellet?* (Cæsar) What did he (Cæsar) want?—Here *sibi* refers to Cæsar, *suas* to Ariovistus.—4. *Hanc Galliam*, &c. That this Gaul (viz: Transalpine,) belonged to him (Ariovistus)—*Sicut illam nostram*, just as that Gaul (Cisalpine) belonged to us.—5. *Qui*, Since we.—6. *Quòd dicèret*, as to that which he said; or since he said.—7. *Sese facturum esse gratum*, that he would do an agreeable thing, a favor; would oblige.

P. 86.—1. *In eam sententiam*, to this effect.—2. *Esse Ariovisti*, &c., belonged to Ariovistus, rather than to the Roman people.—3. *Quodque tempus*, &c., if all ancient time—the most ancient—the most distant period ought to be regarded.—4. *Voluisset*, had decreed.—5. *Propiùs* (ad) *tumulum*.—6. *Per fidem*, by relying on his faith.—7. *Vulgus militum*, among the common soldiers.—8. *Quà arrogantia usus*, &c., using what arrogance, or with what arrogance Ariovistus had interdicted the Romans from all Gaul, and his cavalry had made an attack on our men, and how that affair had broken up the conference:—These subjunctives are all in the same construction, containing an indirect question, the first and second indicated by *quà arrògantiâ*, and the third by *ut*; § 140, 5.—9. *Injectum est*, was infused.

P. 87.—1. *Neque perfectæ essent*, and had not been completed; § 93, 1.—2. *Quin conjicerent*, from throwing; See Ref.—3. *In eo peccandi*. &c., and because in him the Germans had no cause of sinning, of committing any act of violence.—4. *Causâ speculandi?* for the sake of spying? on purpose to act as spies?

P. 88.—1. *Ei potestas non deesset*, an opportunity might not be wanting to him, i. e. he might have the opportunity.—2. *Quos ex omni*, &c., literally, whom they had selected from the whole army, each horseman one.—3. *Si quò*, &c. if they had to advance farther than usual in any direction.—4. *Cursum adæquarent*, equalled their speed.—5. *Quo in loco*, &c. in which the Germans had encamped.—6. *Quæ copiæ*, that these forces.

P. 89.—1. *Suo instituto*, according to his custom, or design.—2. *A majoribus* (castris) from the larger camp.—3. *Sortibus et vaticinationibus*, by lots and auguries.—4. *Ex usu esset*, &c., whether or not it would be of advantage that the battle should be joined.—

5. *Non esse fas*, that it was not the will of the gods.—6. *Alarios*, the auxiliaries:—So called from their being in general placed on the wings (*alæ*) of the army when in the order of battle.—7. *Pro*, in front of.—8. *Ad speciem*, for show; for appearance.—9. *Generatim*, by nations.—10. *Rhedis*, carriages,—*carris*, baggage wagons.—11. *Eð*, on them.

P. 90.—1. *Singulis legionibus*, &c., placed a lieutenant and quæstor over each legion.—2. *Minimè firmam*, least firm, weakest. 3. See Note 4, p. 69.—4. *Expediitor*, more disengaged; more at liberty.—5. *Neque destitērunt fugēre*, nor did they cease to fly; discontinue their flight.—6. *In his*, among these.—7. *Quam duxerat*, whom he had married.—8. *Duæ filiæ*, &c. the two daughters of these,—the one was killed and the other taken captive.

P. 91.—1. *In ipsum Cæsarem*, &c., fell in with Cæsar himself. 2. *Beneficio*, by the favor.—3. *Proximi*, next to; bordering upon.—4. *In citeriorem Galliam*, into hither Gaul:—The northern part of Italy, or that part of Gaul south of the Alps, was called Cisalpine, or hither Gaul, from being on *this side* of the Alps with regard to Rome.—5. *Ad agendos conventus*, to hold the assizes, or courts of justice:—This was usually attended to in the winter, when military operations could not be carried on.

NOTES ON BOOK II.

PAGE 92.—1. *Cum esset Cæsar*, &c.:—The time here indicated was in the year of the city 697, and 57 years B. C.—2. *Crebri rumōres*, frequent reports. 3. *Dixerāmus*, we had said; B. I. Ch. 1.—4. *Conjurandi*, of the conspiracy.—5. *Partim qui*, some of whom; *ut*, as on the one hand—*ita*, so, on the other.—6. *Partim qui*, while others.—7. *Novis imperiis studēbat*, were in favor of a change of government.—8. *Ab nonnullis* (solicitarentur).—9. *Qui ad conducendos*, &c., who had the means for hiring troops.—10. *Eam rem in imperio nostro consēqui potērant*, could accomplish that object under our government.—11. *Inīta æstāte*, in the beginning of summer.—12. *Dat negotium*, he gives a commission, he directs.—13. *Cognoscant*, should learn.

P. 93.—1. *Quin proficisceretur*, but that he should march; about marching.—2. *Celeriusque*, &c., and sooner than the expectation of all, (of any one,) i. e. than all (or any one) expected.—3. *Neque se consensisse*, that they had neither agreed; approved of the design; joined, entered into the confederacy.—4. *Furōrem*, infatuation.—5. *Ab his*, from these, viz: the ambassadors from the Remi.—6. *Quantæ*, how powerful.—7. *Omnia se habere explorata*, that they had all things fully examined.

P. 94.—1. *Divitiacum*, Divitiacus—not the Æduan.—2. *Totius belli summam*, the direction of the whole war.—3. *Longissimè ab-sunt*, are very remote.—4. *Qui appellantur uno nomine Germāni*, who are called by one name, Germans—*ad quadraginta millia* about forty thousand.—5. *Liberaliter prosecutus oratione*, having complimented them highly in a speech.—6. *Ad diem*, by the day appointed.—7. *Magno opère*, i. e. *magnopërè*, greatly—*quanto opère*, i. e. *quantopère*, how much it concerned.—8. *Ne confligendum sit*, that he might not have to contend.

P. 95.—1. *Quæ res*, this position.—2. *Cohortibus*; See Gr. App. V.—3. *Duodeviginti pedum*, (in latitudinem) eighteen feet broad.—4. *Gallōrum eadem atque*, &c. of the Gauls as well as of the Belgæ.—5. *Quod tum*, &c. this was then easily done. 6. *Potestas consistendi in muro erat nulli*, the power of standing on the wall was to none; no man was able to stand on the wall. 7. *Præerat*, was over; had the command of; was governor of.—8. *De mediâ nocte*, soon after midnight.

P. 96.—1. *Quos*, &c., which, (viz: villages and buildings,) they could reach.—2. *Et ab millibus passuum* &c., at less than two miles distant (viz: *castris*, from the camp).—3. *Prælio supersedere*, to defer a battle.—4. *Solicitationibus periclitabatur*, trial was made in skirmishes.—5. *Ex utrâque parte*, &c., had a steep descent on both sides; literally, had descents of the side on both sides.—6. *Et frontem leniter fastigatus*, and in front gently sloping.—7. *Ad extrēmas fossas*, at the extremities, or ends of the ditches.—8. *Tormenta*, military engines, viz: the *Catapulta* and the *Balista*; See Index.—9. *Quod tantum multitudine poterat*, because they could do so much by their great number; were so powerful, or strong, in numbers.—10. *Si quâ opus*, &c. if it should be needful any where.

P. 97.—1. *Non magna palus erat*, there was a small morass.—2. *Expectabant*, continued waiting to see.—3. *Secundiore nostris*, being more favorable to our men.—4. *Demonstratum est*, has been

shewn; See Ch. 5.—5. *Si minùs potuissent*, if they could not do this;—*ad gerendum bellum*, for carrying on the war; for prosecuting the war.—6. *Impeditos*, embarrassed.—7. *Quorum in fines*, into whose soever boundaries, or territory.—8. *Et domesticis copiis*, &c., and enjoy the abundance of provisions which they had at home.

P. 98.—1. *Hæc quoque ratio*, this consideration also.—2. *His persuadēri*,—*non potērat*, these could not be persuaded; See Idioms, 68, 1.—3. *Nullo certo ordine*, in no fixed, determined, regular order. 4. *Cùm sibi quisque*, &c.:—Since each one sought to be foremost on the route.—5. *Insidias veritus*, fearing a stratagem, an ambuscade,—*qui morarētur*, that they might delay; in order to delay.—6. *Cùm (illi) ab extrēmo*, &c.. when those in the rear, to which they had come.—7. *Tantam multitudinem, quantum*, &c., as great a number as the length of the day allowed.

P. 99.—1. *Vacuum ab defensoribus*, empty, unprotected by defenders.—2. *Vineas agēre*, to move forward the *vineæ*; See Index.—3. *Aggēre jacto*, a mound being thrown up; See Index.—4. *Turribusque constitutis*, and towers being erected on it; See Index, *Turris*.—5. *Potentibus Remis*, the Remi requesting it; at the request of the Remi.—6. *Impētrant*, they obtain it; viz: that they should be preserved.—7. *Majōres natu*, greater by birth, *i. e.* older, more advanced in age.—8. *Passis manibus*, with extended hands.—9. *Facit verba*; literally, makes words, *i. e.* speaks,—present tense for the past; § 44, I. 3:—The pupil may here note the difference between *facere verba*, and *dare verba*,—the first means “to make a speech;” the last, “to put off with words,” *i. e.* “to deceive.” 10. *In fide*, &c., under the protection, and in the friendship of, &c., *i. e.* had always been protected and befriended by.

P. 100.—1. *Non solùm Bellovācos*, &c., that not only the Bellovaci themselves, but also the Ædui for them, entreated that he would use.—2. *Cùm quæreret*, when he enquired; on enquiry.—3. *Nihil vini*, no wine.—4. *Increpitāre*, &c., that they inveighed against and accused.—5. *Confirmāre*, asserted, declared; were determined, it was their fixed resolution.—6. *Conditionem*, offer, proposal.—7. *Expectāre*, were expecting, were waiting.—8. *Expectāri*, were expected, were waited for.

P. 101.—1. Arrange: *Conjecisse, muliēres (et homīnes) qui viderentur inutiles*, &c.—2. *Eōrum diērum*, &c., the custom of those days in respect of the march:—*Exercitūs* is governed by *itinēris*.—3. *Neque esse quicquam*, &c., literally, and that when the first legion

had come into the camp, &c.,—to attack this legion under its baggage would be a matter of no great difficulty; *i. e.* there would be no great difficulty in attacking, &c.—4. *Quâ (legiōne) pulsâ, reliquæ (legiōnes)*.—5. *Ei rei*, to this subject, viz. the training of cavalry.—6. *Valeat (efficere)*.—7. *Incisis atque inflexis*, being cut in, and bent over.—8. *Crebris in latitudinem*, &c., numerous branches, and briars, and thorns, intervening in a lateral direction:—The young trees being gashed but not separated from the root, still continued to grow, and when bent over, their branches stood out in a lateral direction; the interstices were filled with briars and thorns, so that the whole formed a strong and impervious barrier.—9. *Loci—quem locum*, of the place which.

P. 102.—1. *Infimâ (parte) apertus*, &c., open, clear at the bottom, woody towards the top.—2. *Secundum flumen*, along the river,—*Statiōnes equitum*, troops of horse on guard.—3. *Aliter se habebat ac*, literally, had itself otherwise than; *i. e.* was different from what.—4. *Expeditas*, free from all encumbrance, *i. e.* without the load of baggage which the soldier was accustomed to carry, generally amounting in all to sixty pounds besides his arms.—5. *Idemdem*, from time to time.—6. *Quâm quem ad finem*. *i. e.* *ad finem ad quem*, to the limit to which; as far as.—7. *Quod tempus*, &c., which had been agreed upon as the time of joining battle.—8. *In manibus*, close at hand.—9. *Adverso colle*, up the hill, viz: the hill opposite that on which they had stood.

P. 103.—1. *Vexillum proponendum*, the standard had to be displayed.—2. (Ii) *qui processerant paullo longius causâ petendi aggeris*, (erant) *arcessendi*, those, who had gone to a greater distance, in order to fetch materials for the rampart were to be recalled.—3. *Successus et incursus*, the near approach and onset.—4. *Erant subsidio*, were of advantage.—5. *Singulisque legionibus*, and from their respective legions,—*singulos legatos*, every lieutenant.—6. *Nihil*, equivalent to *non* or *nullum*;—the construction is *quod ad nihil*, did not now at all wait for any order from Cæsar.—7. *Per se*, of themselves, of their own accord.—8. *Videbantur (illis)*, seemed to them proper; they thought best.—9. *Quam in partem*, into whatever part.—10. *Neu perturbarentur animo*, nor be agitated in their minds.—11. *Exiguitas*, the shortness.

P. 104.—1. *Dejectus*, declivity.—2. *Necessitas*, urgency.—3. *Prospectus impediretur*, and the view in front was obstructed.—*Neque certa*, neither with certainty; § 98, Obs. 10.—4. *In tantâ iniquitate rerum*, in such an unequal situation of affairs.—5. *In sinis*.

trâ parte acie, on the left part of the line; (*acie*) an old form of the genitive for *aciei*; § 17, Exc. If *acie* be regarded as the ablative, it will then be rendered "in the line on the left part."—6. *Exanimâtos*, out of breath, panting,—*confectos*, spent, exhausted.—7. *Nam his ea pars obvenêrat*, that party had fallen to their lot; had been accidentally opposed to them.—8. *In fugam dedêrunt*, put to flight.—9. *Diversæ legiões*, other legions, different from those mentioned before.—10. *At tum*, but at this time.—11. *Summum locum castrôrum*, literally, the top of the place of the camp, *i. e.* the summit on which the camp stood.—12. *Levisque armatûræ pedîtes*, foot soldiers of the light armor; the light armed infantry.—13. *Quos pulsos (esse)*, who had been routed.—14. *Adversis hostîbus occurrêbant*, met the enemy in front, face to face.

P. 105.—1. *Calônes*, the soldiers' servants.—2. *Decumânâ portâ*, the decuman or rear gate of the Roman camp:—So called because the tenth cohorts were situated there.—3. *Versâri*, were actively engaged.—4. *Mandâbant sese præcipîtes fugæ*, committed themselves headlong to flight.—5. *Diversos dissipatosque*, scattered in every direction.—6. *Urgêri*, were overpowered.—7. *Primopîlo*; See Index, *Primopîlus*.—8. *Confecto*, *i. e.* *ita confecto ut*.—9. *A fronte*.—in front.—10. *Subeuntes*, advancing.

P. 106.—1. *Signa inferre*, to carry forward the standards; *i. e.* to advance,—*laxâre manipûlos*, to extend the maniples.—2. *Cujus adventu*, by his arrival; 38.—3. *Pro se quisque*, they, each one for himself; *i. e.* to the best of his ability.—4. *Legiões sese conjungêrent et inferrent conversa signa*, that the legions (*viz.* the seventh and twelfth,) should advance with the standard turned two ways; *i. e.* with double front.—5. *Ne aversi*, that when turned away.—6. *Versarêtur*, were.—7. *Nihil ad celeritâtem*, &c.; Arrange: *fecêrunt nihil reliqui esse sibi*, they caused that nothing remaining was to them; they did all they could as to speed; they made all the haste they could.—8. *Omnîbus in locis*, &c., in every quarter of the fight they thrust themselves before the legionary soldiers; *i. e.* they strove to surpass them in valor.—9. *Præstitêrunt*, displayed.

P. 107.—1. *Qui superessent*, those who survived.—2. *Utî ex tumûlo*, as if from an eminence.—3. *Redegêrat*, had rendered.—4. *Prope ad interneciōnem*, almost to extermination.—5. *Æstuarîa*, &c., the low grounds and marshes.—6. *Nihil (esse) impeditum*, that nothing was a hindrance.—7. *Quos Cæsar*, &c., Cæsar, that he might appear to have exercised mercy towards the unfortunate and suppliants, preserved them, &c., (39).—8. *Altissîmas rupes despec-*

tusque, very steep rocks and commanding views of the country below.—9. *Non amplius* (quàm ad mensuram) *ducentorum pedum*.

P. 108.—1. *Iis impedimentis*, to that baggage.—2. *Cum* (hi) *aliàs inferrent bellum* (finitimis), *aliàs defendèrent* (bellum) *illatum* (sibi a finitimis), when they at one time made war on their neighbors, at another time resisted the war made on themselves by their neighbors; when, at one time they acted on the offensive, at another time, on the defensive.—3. *Duodēcim pedum*, of twelve feet.—4. *Vineis*; See Index.—5. *Quò*, for what purpose?—6. *Præ*, in comparison of.—7. *Movēri et appropinquāre*, moving and approaching; See Idioms, 89, 1.—8. *Ad hunc modum*, after this manner.—9. *Tantæ altitudinis*, of so great height.—10. *Et ex propinquitāte*, &c., and fight close at hand.—11. *Unum petēre ac deprecāri*, that they begged and earnestly entreated one thing (supply *eum*) from him.

P. 109.—1. *Sibi præstāre*, that it was better for them;—*in eum casum*, to that state.—2. *Priùsqvam aries*, &c., before the battering ram should touch their wall; See Index, *Aries*.—3. *In Nervii*, in the case of the Nervii.—4. *Muri aggerisque*, of the wall (of the town) and the agger of the Roman camp; See Index, *Agger*.—5. *Sub vespērum*, towards evening.—6. *Tertiâ vigiliâ*; See Appendix I.—7. *Ignibus*, by signal fires.

P. 110.—1. *Ita acriter ut*, &c., as fiercely as it ought to have been fought; See Idioms, 88, 7.—2. *Ad* (used adverbially) about.—3. *Sectionem*, booty:—So called, because divided into small sections or portions, to be sold.—4. *Capitum numerus millium*, &c. the number of fifty-three thousand souls.—5. *Oceānum*, the Atlantic.—6. *Certior factus est*, he was informed.—7. *Dies quindēcim supplicatio decreta est*, a thanksgiving of fifteen days was decreed.

NOTES ON BOOK III.

PAGE 111.—1. *Quo* (itinēre) by which (road).—2. *Cum magnis portoriis*, with heavy duties, or imposts:—The duty levied on goods in harbor, (*in portu*) was called *portorium*. This term was afterwards extended, as here, to denote the duty paid for liberty to carry goods through a particular country, or the tax paid at bridges.—3. *Hic vicus*, this village.—4. *Eum locum*, this part, *i. e.* the part of the village in which the cohorts were to pass the winter.

P. 112.—1. *Neque eam plenissimam*, and that not very full: See Index, *Legio*.—2. *Singillatim*, individually.—3. *Decurrerent*, should run down.—4. *Ne primum quidem posse*, &c., they thought that that legion could not withstand even the first onset:—With *posse* supply *illam legiōnem*.—5. *Accedēbat*, to this was added; another reason was.—6. *Sibi persuāsum habēbat*, literally, they had it persuaded unto themselves; they were firmly persuaded.—7. *Neque satis provisum esset*, nor had it been sufficiently provided; nor had a sufficient supply been provided.—8. *Nihil de bellum timendum*, he had thought that nothing was to be feared, *i. e.* that he had nothing to fear concerning the war.—9. *Neque subsidio veniri*, literally, neither could it be come to them with assistance, *i. e.* neither could assistance come to them.—10. *Placuit majōri parti*, it pleased the greater part; it was the opinion of the majority.

P. 113.—1. *Collocandis atque administrandis* (the dative of the end or design,) for arranging and executing.—2. *Gæsæque*, and javelins (the Gallic iron javelin).—3. *Intēgris viribus*, with fresh strength.—4. *Frustra*, in vain, without effect.—5. *Sed hoc (nostri) superāri*, but in this they (our men) were overcome, were inferior.—6. *Paucitātem*, their fewness.—7. *Non modo*, &c., an opportunity was not given not only to the wearied.—8. *Perducta ad extrēmum casum*, brought to an extreme case, to the last extremity.—9. *Quem confectum (esse)*, &c., who, we have said, was worn out; See Idioms; 96, 2, & 94, 1st).—10. *Convocatīs centurionibus celeriter* (per eos) milites, &c. the centurions being called together, he quickly, through them, directs the soldiers;—*excipērent*, to take up.—11. *Omnibus portis*, from all the gates of the camp:—Of these there were four; See Index, *Castra*.

P. 114.—1. *Ex (numēro) hominum amplius quāmillibus triginta*, literally, from a number of men more than thirty thousand; *i. e.* from more than thirty thousand men.—2. *(Parte) plus tertiā parte*, &c. literally, a part more than the third part being slain.—3. *Fusis* &c., being routed, and stripped of their arms:—Here *exūtis* agrees with *copiis*, and governs *armis* in the ablative, by § 126, R. V.—4. *Alio,—alius*, &c., with one view,—they had encountered things very different.—5. *Cæsar existimāret, de omnibus causis*, Cæsar supposed, from all reasons; Cæsar had every reason to suppose.—6. *(Ad) mare Oceānum*, to the Atlantic Ocean.—7. *Præfectos tribunosque militum*; See Index, *Legio*.

P. 115.—1. *Scientiā atque usu*, knowledge and experience.—2. *In magno impētū maris atque aperto*, in the great and open vio-

lence, force, swell (or surge) of the sea.—3. *Ipsi*, (Venēti,) they themselves, (the Veneti).—4. *Consuērunt uti*, are accustomed to use; use to trade in; or usually trade in.—5. *Vectigāles*, tributary. 6. *Ut consilia Gallōrum*, since the designs (resolves) of the Gauls. 7. *Omnis*; Accusative plural for *omnes*, the subject of *latūros* (esse). 8. *Suos*, his (Crassus') countrymen; § 28, Exc.;—*sibi*, to them, (the Veneti) the main subject of discourse.—9. *Naves longas*, ships of war,—so called from their being much longer than the ships of burden (*naves onerariæ*).—10. *Remiges*, rowers,—*institui*, to be raised. 11. *Pro magnitudine*, in proportion to the greatness.—12. *Hoc* (faciunt), this they do.—13. *Pedestria itinēra*, roads, or approaches by foot; *i. e.* by land.

P. 116.—1. *Navigatiōnem*, access by sea.—2. *Neque nostros*, &c., and they were confident that our army could not, &c. *Neque* here is copulative, and means “and not.”—3. *Opiniōnem*, the expectation.—4. *Longē aliam atque*, &c. that the navigation was far other in a confined or inland sea (such as the Mediterranean,) than, &c.—5. *Hæ erant difficultātes*, such were the difficulties, &c.—6. *Injurie retentōrum equitum* (the genitive passive; § 106, Obs. 1.) 7. *Rebellio*, a renewal of hostilities,—*defectio*, a revolt, a refusal of obedience.—8. *Ne arbitrentur*, in order that they might not think; § 140, 1, 2d.—9. *Idem* (facere) *sibi licere*, that to do the same thing would be permitted to them.—10. *Novis rebus studere*, are fond of changes.—11. *Naturā libertati studere*, are naturally fond of liberty. 12. *Conditionem servitutis*, a state of slavery.

P. 117.—1. *Auxilio* (sibi) &c., who were said to have been sent for by the Belgæ as aid to themselves.—2. *Qui eam manum*, &c., that he should take care that that body should be kept apart.—3. *Situs*, the situations.—4. *In extrēmis lingulis*, on the extreme points or tongues of land.—5. *Cum ex alto*, &c., when the tide had flowed in from the deep; *i. e.* when it was full tide, or high water. 6. *Minuente* (sese) *æstu*, the tide ebbing, or when the tide ebbs.—7. *Naves in vadis*, &c., the ships aground on the shallow places would be dashed with the waves.—8. *In utrâque re*, in either case.—9. *Aggēre ac molibus*, by a mound and dams.—10. *Appulso*, being brought up.—11. *Magnis æstibus*, &c., on account of the great tides, and there being few or almost no harbors.—12. *Factæ armatæque erant*, were built and equipped.—13. *Aliquanto planiōres*, considerably flatter.

P. 118.—1. *Excipere*, withstand, or admit of.—2. *Ad quamvis vim*, for enluring any violence and shock.—3. *Pedalibus*, &c.,

of planks a foot in breadth.—4. *Digitī pollicis crassitudine*, of the thickness of one's thumb; *i. e.* an inch thick.—5. *Pelles pro vilis*, &c., for sails there were to them (*i. e.* they had) raw hides and thin dressed skins;—*lini*, of linen, of canvass.—6. *Regi*, to be managed. 7. *Cum his navibus*, &c., the meeting of our fleet with these vessels was of such a nature, that the former had the advantage in swiftness only, and the sweep of the oars.—8. *Reliqua*, other things.—9. *Neque enim his*, &c. for our ships could not hurt them with the beak.—10. *Copūlis*, grappling irons.—11. *Savire*, to blow hard.—12. *Casus*, the chances or dangers.—13. *Neque his nocēri posse*, and that they could not be hurt.—14. *Paratissimæ atque*, &c., in the best order, and equipped in the best manner, with every kind of tackling.

P. 119.—1. *Bruto*, &c., nor was it sufficiently clear to Brutus. 2. *Aut quam ratiōnem*, &c., or what mode of fighting they would adopt.—3. *Ut*, so that.—4. *Gravius acciderent*, fell with greater force. 5. *Falces præacutæ*, hooks with sharpened edges towards the points. 6. *Muralium*, mural hooks; *i. e.* hooks used to pull down the walls in a siege; or their defenders.—7. *Comprehensi adductique*, were grappled and pulled towards us.—8. *Latere posset*, could escape notice; could pass unnoticed, or unobserved.—9. *Cum singūlas*, &c., when two or three of our ships had surrounded each one of the enemy's.—10. *Transcendere in naves hostium*, to climb over into the ships of the enemy; to board the enemy's ships.—11. *Quò ventus ferēbat* (*naves*), where, to which the wind carried them (*the ships*); *Singūlas nostri*: &c., our men having pursued, took them one by one.

P. 120.—1. *Graviōris ætātis*, of heavier, *i. e.* of more advanced age.—2. *In quos*, &c., on these Cæsar resolved to inflict severer punishment, on this account that, &c.—3. *Vendidit reliquos sub coronâ*, he sold the rest under the crown; *i. e.* he sold the rest for slaves:—Prisoners taken in war wore a chaplet (*coronâ*) on their heads when exposed to public sale. At sales by auction a spear was set up; hence, *vendere sub hastâ*, to sell by auction.—4. *Atque his paucis diebus*, and within these few days.—5. *Perditōrum hominum*, of ruined men; *i. e.* men of desperate fortunes.—6. *Nonnihil carparētur*, was in some degree carped at, railed at:—*Nihil* and *nonnihil* in such sentences may be considered as accusatives governed by *quod ad*; § 128, Exc.

P. 121.—1. *Eo absente qui tenēbat summam imperiī*, he being absent who held the supreme command; in the absence of the commander in chief.—2. *Hâc confirmatâ opinione timōris*, (the enemy's)

opinion of his fear being confirmed.—3. *Propōnit*, he lays before them, tells them of.—4. *Neque longiùs abesse*, &c.; and that it was not farther off, but that on the next night; *i. e.* at no greater distance of time than the next night.—5. *Ad castra iri oportere*, literally, that it ought to be gone to the camp; See Idioms, 67.—6. *Perfugæ confirmatio*, the assertion of the deserter.—7. *Quibus*, with which, *i. e.* that with these.—8. *Quàm minimum spatii*, as little space of time as possible.—9. *Exanimāti*, out of breath.

P. 122.—1. *Intēgris viribus*, with strength still fresh.—2. *Sabinus* (*factus est certior*) *de*, &c.—3. *Minimè resistens*, by no means firm.—4. *Ex tertiâ parte*, as the third part,—an unusual expression, and probably the text is incorrect.—5. *Non mediocrem*, &c., that more than ordinary diligence must be used by him.—6. *Quo plurimum valēbant*, in which they were very powerful.

P. 123.—1. *Cujus rei*, &c., in which art the Aquitāni are by far the most expert.—2. *Ærariæ sectūræ* copper mines.—3. *Nihil his rebus profici posse*, that they could be profited nothing by these things.—4. *Quorum hæc est conditio*, the condition of whom (*i. e.* of whose association) is this.—5. *Sibi mortem consciscant*, or make away with themselves.—6. *Barbāri*, the barbarians (referring to the Vocātes and Tarusātes).—7. *Et natūrâ loci et manu*, both by natural situation and by art.

P. 124.—1. *Citeriōris Hispaniæ*; See Index.—2. *Loca capere*, to select proper ground.—3. *Facilè*, easily; *i. e.* with safety.—4. *In dies*, every day; literally, from day to day.—5. *Hâc re delatâ ad consilium*, this matter or plan being laid before a council (of war).—6. *Sentire idem*, thought the same thing; were of the same opinion, *viz.* with himself.—7. *Duplici acie*, a double line:—The Romans usually drew up their army in three lines; on the present occasion only two were formed, probably on account of their being inferior in number to the enemy.—8. *Auxiliis*, &c., the auxiliaries being placed in the centre,—their usual place was on the wings.—9. *Cùm suâ cunctatiōne*, &c., when the enemy had by their own delay, and the opinion which was now entertained of their cowardice, made our soldiers the more eager for battle.

P. 125.—1. *Constanter et non tim'dè*, steadily and boldly.—2. *Decumânâ portâ*, at the decuman, or rear gate; See Index, *Casstra*.—3. *Intritæ*, not worn out, not fatigued.—4. *Longiøre itinēre*, by a longer route than usual.—5. *Posset planè vidēri ab iis*, it could be distinctly seen by them.—6. *Intendērunt*, strove.

P. 126.—1. *Multâ nocte*, late at night,—or *multâ nocte actâ*, much of the night being spent.—2. *Superërant*, (supply *solî*, evidently implied,—hence the subjunctive following *qui*; § 141, R. V.) alone remained.—3. *Qui longè aliâ ratiōne ac*, &c., and they resolved to prosecute the war in a very different manner from the rest of the Gauls.—4. *Continentesque silvas*, &c., and because they had extensive, uninterrupted forests:—Before *continentes* supply *quòd*.—5. *Longiùs*, too far.—6. *Inermibus*, &c., on the soldiers unarmed.—7. *Materiam*, timber.

P. 127.—1. *Conversam*, &c., turned towards, facing, the enemy.—2. *Confecto*, being cleared.—3. *Extrema*, the last of the baggage.—4. *Sub pellibus*, literally, under skins; *i. e.* in their tents:—The tents of the Roman soldiers were covered with skins. It does not appear that they ever used canvass for that purpose.—5. *Quæ proximè*, &c., which had made war upon him last.

NOTES ON BOOK IV.

P. 128.—1. *Eâ hième*, &c., the winter which followed; the next or following winter.—2. *Cneio Pompeio*, &c.:—Before Christ, 55, A. U. C. 699.—3. *Quo Rhenus*, &c. where the Rhine flows into it: near the mouth of the Rhine.—4. *Qui domi manserint*, since or because they remain at home.—5. *Nec ratio atque usus belli intermittitur*, nor are the art and practice of war disused, discontinued, forgotten.—6. *Maximam partem*, for the most part; See Ref.—7. *Nullo officio*, &c., they are trained by no duty or discipline.

P. 129.—1. *Ut quæ bello cepërint*; Arrange: *ut habeant* (eos) *quibus vendant* (ea) *quæ cepërint bello*.—2. *Jumentis importâtis*, imported cattle.—3. *Quotidianâ exercitiōne hæc prava atque deformia* (jumenta) *quæ sunt nata apud eos, ut* (hæc jumenta) *sint summi laboris*:—*Ut*. &c. that they, (these beasts) are capable of the greatest labor, *i. e.* of enduring the greatest labor.—4. *Audent adire ad quemvis numërum*, they dare to go to any number; they have courage to advance against, to attack, any number.—5. *Publicè*, to the nation.—6. *Significâri*, that proof is given.—7. *Vacâre*, to be empty, desolate, uninhabited.—8. *Ad altëram partem*, on the other side.—9. *Ut est captus Germanõrum*, as the state of the Germans is; *i. e.*—

considering the condition of the Germans.—10. *Amplitudinem gravitatemque civitatis*, the extent and populousness of their state (viz: the Ubii).

P. 130.—1. *In eâdem causâ*, in a similar case.—2. (In regiões) *quas regiões*, to the regions which.—3. *Clam*, privately, unobserved.—4. *Tridui viam*, a journey of three days.—5. *Reliquam partem hiemis*, the remaining part of the winter; the rest of the winter;—*aluērunt*, maintained, supported.—6. *Infirmiätatem*, the fickleness.—7. *Nihil his committendum* (esse), that nothing should be trusted to them.—8. *Est autem hoc*, &c., for this belongs to Gallic custom; this is one of the customs of the Gauls.

P. 131.—1. *De summis rebus*, &c., they enter into designs, concert measures, respecting the most important affairs.—2. *E vestigio*, literally, out of the footstep; i. e. speedily, instantly.—3. *Cum incertis rumoribus serviant*, since they are mere slaves to uncertain rumors.—4. *Ne graviōri bello occurreret*, that he might not meet with a more formidable war (viz: than he expected).—5. *Facta* (esse), had been done already.—6. *Dissimulanda sibi*, should be concealed by him.—7. *Resistere* (iis), to resist them and not to sue for peace.—8. *Suam gratiam*, their (the Germans') favor.—*Sibi*, to them, the Germans.—9. *Eos* (agros) *quos*, those lands which; i. e. such lands as; See Ref.—10. *Concedere*, yielded, acknowledged themselves inferior to.—11. *In terris*, upon the earth.

P. 132.—1. Arrange: *Cæsar respondit ad hæc, quæ visum est* (ei respondere).—2. *Exitus*, the conclusion.—3. *Verum*, just, reasonable, proper, right:—*Verus* has this sense chiefly when joined to the verb *esse*; as *verum est*, it is proper.—4. *Neque ullos in Galliâ*, &c., nor were there any lands vacant in Gaul.—5. *Et parte*, &c.:—This is the reading of the Bipont edition. It is adopted by Anthon, and is manifestly better than the common text.—6. *In plures diffluit partes*, divides into several branches.—7. *Multis capitibus*, by many heads, or mouths.

P. 133.—1. *Sibi jurejurando*, &c. should give them security by an oath.—2. *Eödem illo pertinere*, tended to the same end:—*Eödem* and *illo*, here used adverbially, are properly old forms of the dative from *idem* and *ille*:—3. *Sustinèrent*, should stand their ground.

P. 134.—1. *Amplissimo genere natus*, descended from a very illustrious family.—2. *Interclūso*, intercepted.—3. *Se obtulit*, presented himself; rushed against.—4. *Summæ dementiæ esse judicabat*, he judged it to be the greatest folly; literally, to belong to, or to be

the part of, the greatest folly.—5. *Ne quem diem*, &c., not to let a day pass without a battle.—6. *Omnibus principibus*, &c., all the leading men and elders being brought along; literally, being taken unto them.—7. *Sui purgandi*, for the sake of clearing, excusing themselves.—8. *Contra atque*, otherwise than; contrary to what had been said.—9. *Quos sibi Cæsar*, &c. Cæsar rejoicing that these had been cast in his way.

P. 135.—1. *Perturbantur*, &c., are thrown into confusion, so that they were at a loss whether it would be best, &c.—2. *Significaretur*, was discovered, was evident.—3. *Pristini diei*, of the day before;—for *pridie*.—4. *Clamōre*, a shout or noise, (either of the Roman cavalry attacking those with whom they came up in the rear,—or the wailing of those attacked).—5. *Ad confluentem*, at the confluence.—6. *Reliquâ fugâ desperâtâ*, despairing of making good their flight any farther.—7. *Ex tanti belli timōre*, &c., from the alarm of so great a war, since the number of the enemy had been about four hundred and thirty thousand:—Before *capitum*, supply *ad numerum*.—8. *Discedendi potestatem*, the liberty of departing.

P. 136.—1. *Suis quoque rebus eos timere voluit*, wished they should be alarmed for their own possessions.—2. *Et posse et audere*, had both the power and the courage.—3. *Accessit etiam*, it was added also; *i. e.* another reason was.—4. *Cur sui quicquam*, &c., why should he (Cæsar) demand that any command or authority should belong to him beyond the Rhine?—5. *Occupationibus reipublicæ*, by the business of the republic.—6. *Neque sui neque Populi Romani*, and thought that it became neither his own dignity nor that of the Roman people.—7. *Propōnebatur*, was placed before him, was manifest.

P. 139.—1. *Instituit*, &c., he determined on this plan of a bridge.—2. He joined together at the distance of two feet, *tigna bina*, beams, or piles, two by two, (or in pairs,) sharpened a little at the lower end, and measured, (or proportioned) to the depth of the river.—3. *Hæc cum machinationibus*, &c., when he had fastened these, being let down into the river by machines, and had driven them down with rammers (*fistūcis*).—4. *Non sublicæ*, &c., not perpendicularly after the manner of a stake, but bending forward and sloping (downward, or down the stream).—5. *Iis item contraria*, &c., likewise opposite to these, at the distance of forty feet down the river, (*ab inferiōre parte fluminis*,) he placed two others joined in the same manner, but turned (up the stream) against the force and current of the river.—6. *Hæc utraque insuper*, &c., both these

(viz: the pair above and the pair below,) were kept apart (or from falling towards each other,) by beams let in from above, two feet thick, being as much as the joining of these piles was apart, (*i. e.* as the piles, joined by the braces, were apart,)—each having two braces, one on each side near the end.—7. *Quibus disclusis*, &c., these (pairs) being kept apart, and (at the same time,) bound together in the contrary direction.—8. *Ea rerum natūra*, such the nature of the materials.—9. *Quo major vis*, &c., literally, by how much a greater force of water urged itself on; *i. e.* that the more the force of the current pressed on, the more closely were they held bound together.—10. *Hæc* (tigna, *i. e.* beams of two feet square, reaching from one pair of piles to the other below it,) *directa materie*, &c., were fastened together with timbers laid lengthwise (*directa*) of the bridge; *i. e.* from beam to beam.—11. *Longuriis*, &c., and covered over with long poles and hurdles.—12. *Ac nihilo secius*, &c., and besides all this, piles were driven in obliquely at the lower part of the stream.—13. *Pro pariēte*, for a buttress, or support.—14. *Et aliæ item*, and likewise others.—15. *Dejiciendi opēris* (causâ), for the sake of throwing down (destroying) the work,—the bridge.—16. (Ex) *Quibus materia*, &c., after the days in which, or, after that the materials had been begun to be brought together:—*Quibus*, *i. e.* *ex diebus quibus*, is here used instead of the more common expression, *postquam*, or *ex* (tempore) *quo*;—See also B. III. Chap. 23d. and Gr. § 131, Obs. 3d.—17. *Ad utramque partem*, at each end.

P. 140.—1 *Iis hortantibus*, by the advice of those.—2. *In solitudinem ac silvas abdidērant*, had gone into the deserts and forests to conceal themselves;—This rendering gives the force of the accusative after *in*, which is evidently a better reading than *in solitudine*, &c., which excludes the idea of going to;—So also, *in silvas deponēret*, below.—3. *Hunc esse delectum*, that this was selected as nearly the middle, or centre.—4. *Ulciscerētur*, that he might punish.—5. *Satis et ad laudem et ad utilitatem profectum*, that enough had been done, both for his honor and for utility, (*profectum* is from *proficio*, and means the same as *perfectum*).—6. *Matūræ*, early.—7. *Inde*, thence, *i. e.* from Britain.

P. 141.—1. *Temērè*, rashly, without good reason.—2. *Neque iis ipsis quicquam notum est*, nor is any thing known even by them.—3. *Quem usum belli*, &c., what experience they had in war, or what customs they followed.—4. *In eâ sententiâ*, in that mind, resolution.—5. *Hortēturque*, and that he should urge them.—6. *Fidem sequantur*,

to embrace the alliance; literally, should follow the faith.—7. *Quantum ei facultātis*, &c., as far as opportunity could be given; literally, with so much of opportunity as, &c.; See Idioms, 46, 1.—8. *Qui*, since he.

P. 142.—1. *De superiōris*, &c., for their past conduct.—2. *Has tantulārum*, &c., these engagements in such trifling affairs.—3. (Tot) *navibus onerariis*, so many ships of burden, &c.,—*quot*, as; See Index, *Naves*.—4. *Tertiā fere vigiliā*, near the third watch, or midnight.—5. *Solvit* (naves), looses his ships, sets sail.—6. *Conscendere naves*, to go on board; to embark.—7. *Horā quartā*, the fourth hour, i. e. 10 o'clock, A. M.; See Gr. App. I.—8. *Expositas*, drawn out, displayed.

P. 143.—1. *Adeo angustis*, so steep.—2. *Ad egrediendum*, for disembarking, for landing.—3. *Ad nonam horam*, till the ninth hour, i. e. 3 o'clock P. M.—4. *Monuitque*, &c., and warned them that all things should be done at a beck, and in a moment, as the principles, &c.—5. *Et essedariis*, and the essedarii, i. e. those who fought from the essēdum, or two wheeled chariot.—6. *Prohibēbant*, attempted to hinder; See § 44. II. 2.—7. *Militibus—desiliendum*, &c. the soldiers had to leap down from the ships.—8. *Omnibus membris expediti*, having the free use of all their limbs.—9. *Insuefactos*, accustomed to such exercise.—10. *Quarum et species*, both the appearance of which.

P. 144.—1. *Remis incitāri*, to be pushed on, rowed briskly forward, with the oars.—2. *Tormentis*, engines (for throwing heavy darts or stones, namely, the balista and catapulta).—3. *Quæ res*, this expedient.—4. *Ac paulum modò*, &c. and retreated only a little, a very little.—5. *Qui* (he), who.—6. *Ea res*, that thing (viz: which he was about to do).—7. *Magnā voce*, with a loud voice.—8. *Ex navi se projēcit*, he threw himself out of the ship, overboard.—9. *Singulāres*, one by one, one after another.—10. *Quod cūm animum, vertisset*, i. e. *Cūm vertisset animum ad quod*.—11. *Scaphas longārum navium*, the boats belonging to the vessels of war.—12. *Speculatoria navigia*, spy vessels.

P. 145.—1. *Cursum tenēre*, hold on their course;—*atque insulam capere*, and reach the island.—2. *Suprà*, viz: Ch. 21.—3. *Modo oratōris*, in the character of an ambassador.—4. *Culpam contulerunt*, laid the blame.—5. *In continentem*, to the continent, i. e. to Gaul.—6. *Imprudentiæ*, their indiscretion.—7. *Arcessitam* (esse), had been sent for.—8. *Post diem quartum*, after the fourth day i. e.,

on the fourth day after.—9. *Suprà*; See Ch. 23,—*sustulērant*, had taken on board.—10. *Quæ cùm appropinquārent*, and when they were drawing near.—11. *Quæ est. propiūs solis occāsum*, which is more to the west.—12. *Quæ, these*.—13. *Necessariò adversâ nocte in altum provectæ*, from necessity, being carried out to sea in an unfavorable, stormy, night.

P. 146.—1. (*Dies*) *qui dies*, a day which (*viz*: the day of the full moon).—2. *Nostris id incognitum erat*, to our men this (*viz*: the great rising of the tide,) was unknown:—The phenomena of the tides were but little known to the Romans, as the tides in the Mediterranean with which they were most familiar, are scarcely observable.—3. *Quæ deligatæ erant ad anchōras*, which had been tied to the anchors; which had been riding at anchor.—4. *Afflictabat*, dashed violently against; drove from their moorings.—5. *Quòd omnibus constābat*, because it was evident to all.—6. *His in locis*, in these places (*viz*: in Britain).—7, *Rem producēre*, to prolong the war.—8. *Ex eventu navium*, from what happened to, from the disaster of, the ships (the genitive passive).—9. *Et ex eo quòd, &c.*, and from this, because they had intermitted; *i. e.* and from their having intermitted.

P. 147.—1. *Ad omnes casus*, for every emergency; against all contingencies.—2. *Reliquis ut navigāri*, that it could be navigated with the rest.—3. *Dum ea geruntur*, whilst these things are carrying on, doing; during these transactions.—4. *In statione*, on guard.—5. *Quàm consuetūdo ferret*, than custom brought; *i. e.* than was usual.—6. *In stationibus*, on guard.—7. *In statione succedere*, to succeed on guard.—8. *Et, confertâ legione tela, &c.*, and that the legion being crowded together, weapons were hurled upon it from all quarters.—9. *Quòd*, because, inasmuch as.—10. *Incertis ordinibus*, on account of not knowing their ranks, (They had been scattered about, reaping, and being attacked while thus employed, they could not find their ranks).—11. *Genus hoc est, &c.*, the manner of fighting from the chariots was this.—12. *Ipsò terrōre equōrum*, by the very terror occasioned to the horses (the genitive passive); and the noise, *rotārum*, of the wheels (the genitive active); § 106, Obs. 1.

P. 148.—1. *Insinuavērint*, when they have wrought themselves in.—2. *Aurigæ*, the charioteers, or drivers:—Each chariot contained a driver called *auriga*, and one who fought, called *essedarius*.—3. *Atque ita curru se collocant*, and place themselves with the chariot in such a situation.—4. *Præstant mobilitatem equitum, &c.*, they perform, unite the swiftness of cavalry and the steadiness

of infantry.—5. *Ac efficiunt tantum*, and they acquire such dexterity.—6. *Incitātos equos sustinēre*, to rein in their horses when at full speed.—7. *Et brevi* (tempore), and in a moment.—8. *Continuos plures dies*, many days in succession.—9. *Suis* (civibus), to their own countrymen.—10. *Quanta facultas*, &c., how favorable an opportunity was presented of getting booty, and of regaining their independence forever.

P. 149.—1. *Antè dictum est*, viz: Ch. 21, & 27.—2. *Omnibus afflictis incensisque longè latèque*, having destroyed and burned every thing far and wide; See Idioms, 104, 1.—3. *Die æquinocitii*, the equinox.—4. *Hiëmi navigationem subjiendam*, that his voyage ought to be exposed to a storm (viz: the equinoctial storm).—5. *Eosdem quos reliquæ portus capere*, to make the same harbor which the rest made.—6. *Quibus ex navibus*, &c., had been landed from these ships.—7. *Non ita magno*, with not so great. i. e. with no very great number.—8. *Si nollent*, if they did not wish.—9. *Orbe facto*, forming themselves into a circle; See above, Note 2.—10. *Vertērunt terga*, turned their backs; fled.

P. 150.—1. *In densissimas silvas abdidērant*, had gone into the thickest parts of the forests to hide themselves; See Note 2, page 140.

NOTES ON BOOK V.

P. 151.—1. *Lucio Domitio*, i. e. A. U. C , 700,; B. C. 54.—2. *Quam plurimas possent*, &c., that as many new ships as possible should be built, and old ones repaired.—3. *Ad celeritatem onerandi*, &c., for despatch of lading and drawing them on shore, he builds them a little lower than those which, &c.—4. *Nostro mari*, in our sea, viz: the Mediterranean.—5. *Actuarias*, light, easily driven; See Index, *Naves*.—6. *Adjūvat multum*, contributes much,—7. *Ad armandas*, for equipping.—8. *Omnibus rationibus*, in every proper way.

P. 152.—1. *Qui litem æstiment*, to estimate the damage (Idioms, 83, 2,) and fix the compensation.—2. *Conventibus*, the assizes.—3. *Instructas*, got ready finished.—4. *Neque multum abesset*, &c., nor was much wanting but that they could be launched in a few

days; *i. e.* there was so little to do that they could, &c.—5. *Transmissum*, &c., the passage across into Britain was the most convenient, being a passage of about thirty miles.—6. *Expeditis*, unincumbered with baggage.—7. *Alter*, the one (*viz.* Cingetorix).—8. *In silvam*, &c., having gone and concealed themselves in the forest of Arduenna; See Note 2, p. 240.

P. 153.—1. *Civitāti consulere*, take measures for the state; for the common good.—2. *Laberetur*, should fall off, revolt.—3. *Permissum* (*esse*) would give up.—4. *Suam gratiam*, that his influence.—5. *Exarsit multo gravius hoc dolore*, he was much more exasperated at this affront.—6. *Non potuisse tenere cursum*, could not keep their course; could not proceed on their voyage.

P. 154.—1. *Antea dictum*; B. I. Ch. 3.—2. *Cupidum novarum rerum*, fond of changes, of insurrections, of a revolution in the state.—3. *Id factum*, this fact.—4. *Petere contendit*, endeavored to obtain,—*religionibus*, religious obligations.—5. *Non sine causâ fieri*, that it was not done without some secret motive; that Gaul was stripped of all her nobility.—6. *Fidem reliquis interponere*, that he pledged his word to the rest.—7. *Quod esse ex usu*, &c., whatever they should understand to be for the interest of Gaul.—8. *Quod tantum dignitatis*, because he had always shewn so much respect.—9. *Longius progrēdi*, was going too far.—10. *Prospiciendum*, that he ought to take care.

P. 155.—1. *Ne quid sibi*, &c. lest he (Dumnorix) should not be able, have it in his power, to do any injury to him and the state. 2. *Corus*, the northwest wind.—3. (*Ut cognosceret*, that he should find out.—4. *Omnium animis impeditis*, the minds of all being engaged.—5. *Hunc pro sano*, that he, as a man in his senses.—6. *Ille enim*, but, or nevertheless he.—7. *Consiliumque pro tempore*, &c., and that he might take measures, (form his plans,) according to time and circumstances.—8. *Pari numero equitum quem*, &c. with a like number of cavalry which; *i. e.* with a number of cavalry equal to that which he left.—9. *Longius delātus æstu*, being carried down by the tide farther than usual.—10. *Secutus*, taking advantage of.

P. 156.—1. *Virtus*, the valor, *i. e.* the efforts, the exertions, 2. *Vectoriisque navigiis*, in transports and heavy laden vessels.—3. *Accessum est* (ab illis) *ad*, they (the Romans) reached, arrived at.—4. *Cum annotinis*, with the ships of the previous year.—5. *Veritus navibus*, fearing for the ships,—instead of *de navibus*.—6. *In littore molli atque aperto*, on a smooth and open shore.—

7. *Præclusi*, blocked up.—8. *Testudinē factâ, et aggere, &c.*, a testudo being erected and a mound thrown up against their fortifications.

P. 157.—1. *Tripartitò*, in three divisions,—*milites*, the foot soldiers, the infantry.—2. *Superiøre nocte*, in the former night.—3. *Afflictas atque, &c.*—had been dashed against each other, and driven on shore.—4. *Subsistèrent*, could hold out.—5. *Ex eo concursu*, from that rencounter of the ships; from the ships running foul of one another.—6. *Incommödum*, injury, damage.—7. *Coram*, openly, with his own eyes.—8. *Res*, a work.—9. *Subdūci*, to be drawn on shore.—10. *Summa imperii, &c.* the chief command and administration of the war.—11. *Superiøre tempöre*, at a former period.

P. 158.—1. *Quos natos, &c.*, “who, they say it was handed down by tradition, were born on the island,”—an opinion prevalent among many ancient nations respecting themselves.—2. *Bello illâto*, the war having been waged, being over.—3. *Creberrîma*, very thick, close together.—4. *Fere Gallîcis consimilia*, almost like; *i. e.* closely resembling those of the Gauls.—5. *Taleis ferreis ad certum pondus, &c.*, pieces of iron tried by, *i. e.* of, a certain weight.—6. *Plumbum album*, tin (literally, white lead).—7. *Copia*, the quantity.—8. *Materia*, wood, timber.—9. *Causâ anîmi voluptatisque*, for the sake of amusement and pleasure.—10. *Loca*, places, climate.—11. *Remissioribus*, less intense.—12. *Triquetra*, triangular.—13. *Ad Cantium*, in Kent:—from Land’s end to the eastern extremity of Kent, is about 344 British miles, or 356 Roman miles in a straight line. It would be much more to follow the irregularities of the coast.—14. *Ad Hispaniam*:—This statement is erroneous, as Spain lies to the south, not to the west of Britain.—15. *Dimidio minor*, less by one half:—Great Britain is computed at 77,370 square miles,—Ireland at 30,370.—16. *Sed pari spatio transmissus*, but the passage across to Britain is the same distance as from Gaul.—17. *Mona*, the Isle of Man.—18. *Dies continuos, &c.*, that there is night for thirty successive days at the winter solstice, *i. e.* the 22d December:—This is not true in fact, unless the dark, cloudy, and foggy weather, at that season, is here improperly called “night.”—19. *Nisi certis ex aquâ, &c.* but we perceived, by accurate water measures, that the nights were shorter than on the continent.—The “water measure” is the *Clypsedra*, or water-clock,—an invention similar to the sand-glass.

P. 159.—1. *Septingentörum millium*, seven hundred miles:—The true length of the western coast is 590 British or 610 Roman

miles.—2. *Contra septentriones*, opposite the north.—This is not correct; the east is much nearer the truth.—3. *Octinginta millia passuum*, eight hundred miles:—This exceeds the true estimate 230 Roman miles.—4. *Humanissimi*, most civilized.—5. *Se vitro inficiunt*, stain themselves with woad.—6. *Capillōque sunt promisso*, and are with, *i. e.* they have, long hair.—7. *Deni et duodēni*, parties of ten and twelve,—*habent uxōres commūnes inter se*.—8. *quo primum virgo*, &c., by whom each female, when a virgin, was first married. 9. (*Ita*) *tamen ut*, in such a way however that.—10. *Submissis*, being sent to their aid,—*atque his*, and these.—11. *Constitissent*, had taken their ground.

P. 160.—1. *Cūm*, since, or as; § 140, Obs. 3.—2 *Intellectum est* (a nobis) *nostros*, we perceived (Idioms 67,) that our men.—3. *Cedentes*, those giving way.—4. *Cedērent*, gave way, yielded.—5. *Pedibus dispāri praelio*, on foot, in an unequal contest; *i. e.* with great advantage (against us).—6. *Conferti*, close, in a close body; —*rari*, scattered here and there —7. *Alios alii deinceps excipērent*, &c., and they continued one to relieve another in succession, and the vigorous and the fresh succeeded (took the place of) those fatigued.—8. *Lenius*, with less spirit.—9. *Utī non absistērent ab*, that they kept not far from, *i. e.* close to, &c.—10. *Neque post id tempus*, &c., nor after that time did the enemy ever engage us with all their forces; nor did the enemy, after that time, ever come to a general engagement with us.

P. 161.—1. *Acūtis sudibus præfixis*, with sharp stakes fixed in front.—2. *Cūm capite*, &c , when they (the soldiers) were above the water with the head alone; *i. e.* were up to the neck in the water.—3. *Ut suprā*, &c.; Ch. 17.—4. *Dimissis amplioribus copiis*, the greater part of the forces being dismissed.—5. *Ex viā excedēbat*, withdrew from the road.—6. *Relinquebātur*, &c., it remained that Cæsar did not suffer;—*discēdi* (ab militibus) that the cavalry should go; Idioms, 67.—7. *Hostibus nocerētur*, &c., that the enemy were injured by laying waste their lands and setting fire to their property, as far as the legionary soldiers could effect it in the midst of labor and on their march, *i. e.* on a laborious march.

P. 162.—1. *Atque mittat* (eum, *i. e.* Mandubratium,) *qui præsit*, &c., and send him (Mandubratius) into the state that he might rule over it, and hold the government.—2. *Ad numērum*, to the number,—*imperātum*, required,—*frumentāque*, and abundance of corn:—"Abundance" is expressed by the plural term, *frumenta*.—3. *Prohibitīs*, being protected.—4. *Vocant oppidum*, call it a town

5. *Ad mare*, on the sea shore; Ch. 13.—6. *Adoriantur atque oppugnent*, should attack and storm; take by assault.

P. 163.—1. *Motus*, disturbances, commotions, insurrections. 2. *Refectas*, repaired,—his (navibus) *deductis* (in mare), these ships being brought down into the sea; i. e. being launched.—3. *Captivorum*, of prisoners.—4. *Commeatibus*, embarkations.—5. *Navigationibus*, voyages, trips.—6. *Desiderarētur*, was missing, lost.—7. *Et prioris commeātus*, both those of the previous convoy,—et *quas*, and of those which.—8. *Perpaucae locum caperent*, very few reached their destination.—9. *Necessariò angustius milites collocavit*, from necessity stowed his soldiers more closely (than usual).—10. *Subductis navibus* (in aridum), the ships being drawn on shore. 11. *Frumentum provenerat angustius*, corn, grain had (come forth) been produced more scantily; the crop had been less abundant.—12. *In plures civitates*, among a greater number of states than usual.

P. 164.—1. *Mederi*, cure, remedy.—2. *Millibus passuum*, &c., were contained within the space of a hundred miles:—(Probably an error as to the extent.)—3. *Natus summo loco*, descended from a very noble family; of very noble birth.—4. *Tertium jam annum*, &c. killed him, (Tasgetius) now reigning the third year, many belonging to the state being the instigators.—5. *Quòd ad plures*, &c., because it pertained to more than one; i. e. more than one were concerned in it.—6. *In hiberna perventum* (esse), that they had arrived at winter quarters; literally, it had been come by them to winter quarters.

P. 165.—1. *Qui cùm ad fines*, &c., and when they had met Sabinus and Cotta at the borders of their kingdom.—2. *Desperata re*, having despaired of success.—3. *De communi re*, concerning their common interests.—4. *Minui posse*, could be adjusted; literally, diminished.—5. *Missu Cæsaris*, by the sending of Cæsar; i. e. being sent by Cæsar.—6. *Ad hunc modum*, to this purpose.—7. *Sese*, that he (Ambiorix):—This speech is given in oblique narration; § 141, R. VI. Exp.—8. *Plurimum ei debere*, that he was under very great obligations to him.—9. *De oppugnatione castrorum*, respecting the attack on the camp.—10. *Suaque esse*, &c., that his authority was of such a nature,—*multitudo*, the people.—11. *Ex humilitate sua*, from his weakness, slender circumstances.—12. *Esse Galliæ commune consilium*, &c., that it was the purpose of the whole of Gaul, that this day had been appointed by them for attacking (at once) all the winter quarters of Cæsar; so that no legion could bring aid to another.

P. 166.—1. *Quibus quoniam pro pietate*, &c., since he had done justice to them so far as affection (to his country) required, that he now had regard to the claims of duty for the kindnesses of Cæsar to him.—2. *Pro hospitio*, by the ties of friendship.—3. *Ipsorum esse consilium*, it belonged to them (Titurius and Cotta,) to consider,—*velintne*, whether they should.—4. *Quod cum faciat*, since he was doing this, *i. e.* in doing this he consulted, &c.—5. *Existit*, arises.—6. *Sustinēri*, could be withstood, resisted.—7. *Rem esse testimonio*, that fact was for proof; *i. e.* that facts proved this.

P. 167.—1. *Levius aut turpius*, weaker or more cowardly.—2. *Auctore hoste*, an enemy being the author; on the information of an enemy.—3. *Clamitabat*, kept crying out; § 44, II. 2.—4. *Cæsarem arbitrari profectum in Italiam*, that he supposed that Cæsar had gone into Italy.—5. *Non hostem auctorem*, &c., that he did not look at the enemy's being the adviser, but at the thing itself.—6. *Ardere*, burned with resentment.—7. *Sine certāre*, without certain information.—8. *Si nil sit durius*, if nothing occurred more difficult than ordinary.—9. *Unam salutem*, their only security.—10. *Præsens*, immediate.—11. *Hæc in utramque*, &c., this dispute being maintained on both sides.—12. *Primisque ordinibus*, and the chief centurions.—13. *Vincite*, prevail, carry your point:—This is spoken in the direct discourse; § 141, R. VI. Exp.—14. *Et id*, and that, *i. e. et dixit id*.—15. *Hi* (milites), these (referring to the Roman soldiers within hearing,) will understand;—*abs te rationem*, will demand satisfaction from you (Cotta); will call you to account.—16. *Nec rejecti nec relegati*, &c., and not perish with either the sword or famine, as if forced away and banished far from the rest.

P. 168.—1. *Consurgitur*, they arise, break up.—2. *Utrumque*, both; viz: Cotta and Titurius.—3. *Res disputatione ad mediam noctem*, the affair is protracted by their dispute; *i. e.* the subject is debated till midnight.—4. *Dat manus*, gives his hands; *i. e.* yields,—a mode of expression borrowed from the form of making a surrender by stretching forth, or holding up the hands.—5. *Pronunciatur*, it is published; orders are given,—*vigiliis*, without sleep.—6. *Quid*, *i. e. spectans*, or *visurus quid*, to see what.—7. *Omnia excogitantur*, &c., every reason is suggested to show,—*quare*, why.—8. *Vigiliis*, want of sleep.—9. *Ut quibus persuasum esset*, since they were persuaded.—10. *Se demisisset*, had gone down.—11. *Ut qui*, since he, or because he.—12. *Hæc tamen ipsa* (fecit) these very things however (he did),—*atque* (ita) *ut*, and so that; in such a way that.—13. *In ipso negotio*, &c., to deliberate in the very moment of action.

P. 169.—1. *Auctor*, an adviser.—2. *Possent minùs facile obire omnia per se*, they could less easily perform every thing themselves; every part of their duty could not be performed by them in person (viz: Cotta and Titurius).—3. *Jussērunt* (duces) *pronunciāre* (militibus).—4. *In orbem consistērent*, and form (Idioms, 85,) themselves into a circle.—5. *Incommōdè accidit*, it proved unfortunate.—6. *Vulgò*, every where:—7. (Ut) *quæ quisque*, &c. that whatever things any one of them considered the most valuable, these he hastened, &c.—8. *Consilium non defuit barbaris*, prudence was not wanting to the barbarians; the barbarians were not deficient in prudence, skill.—9. *Illōrum esse prædam*, &c., that the booty belonged to them, (the Gauls) and that whatever the Romans should leave would be reserved for them;(Idioms, 94, 3.)—10. *Erant et virtūte*, &c., both in valor and number, our men were a match for them in fighting.—11. *Cedant*, they should give way before them.—12. *Nihil iis nocēri posse*, that they could not be hurt:—For *nihil* see § 116, Obs. 3.

P. 170.—1. *Locum tenēre*, to keep his place (in the circle).—2. *Ad horam octāvam*, till the eighth hour (2 o'clock, P. M.)—3. *Utrumque femur tragulâ transigitur Tito Balventio*, each thigh is pierced through with a dart, to T. Balventius, a brave, &c.; a dart transfixes both the thighs of T. Balventius.—4. *Subvenit*, is bringing aid; is endeavoring to rescue.—5. *In adversum os*, full in the mouth.—6. *Ipsi vero nihil nocitum iri*, but that he should not be hurt; that no harm should be done to himself;—*se interponere*, that he pledged.—7. *Atque in eo constitit*, and persisted in it.—8. *In presentia* (tempōra), at present.

P. 171.—1. *Victoriam conclāmant*, shout victory.—2. *Illi*, they, viz, those who had retreated to the camp.—3. *Ad unum*, to a man.—4. *Sublātos*, being elated.—5. *Nihil esse negotii*, that it was an easy matter.—6. *Se profitetur*, he offers himself.—7. *Huic quoque accidit*, to him, to this officer (Cicero) it happened.

P. 172.—1. *Ægrè is dies sustentatur* (a nostris), that day is maintained by our men with difficulty; i. e. our men hold out that day with difficulty.—2. *Propositis*, being offered.—3. *Turres admōdum*, &c., one hundred and twenty towers in all, altogether.—4. *Præustæ sudes*, stakes burned at the end.—5. *Turres contabulantur*, towers of several stories are raised;—*pinnae loricaeque*, &c., battlements and parapets are constructed of interwoven hurdles.—6. *Cū esset tenuissimâ valetudinē*, though he was in a very feeble state of health.—7. *Sibi parcere*, to spare himself.—8. *Aliquem*

aditum sermōnis, any intimacy.—9. *Factâ potestâte*, leave being given.

P. 173.—1. *Ambiorigem ostentant*, &c., for the sake of gaining credit, they ostentatiously point to Ambiorix; *i. e.* they tell of his arrival.—2. *Eos*, that they; viz: Cæsar and his army.—3. *Hoc animo*, of such a disposition; are so favorably disposed.—4. *Licere illis*, that it would be permitted to them (the Romans),—*per se*, by them (the Nervii).—5. *Adjutore*, as an intercessor.—6. *Pro ejus justitiâ*, through his regard for justice.—7. *Sed nullâ ferramentorum copiâ*, but there being no quantity (or abundance) of iron tools.—8. *Sagulis* (dim. of *sagum*), short cloaks.—9. *Terram exhaurire*, to remove the earth.—10. *Millium* (passuum).—11. *Falces testudinesque*, mural hooks and sheds; See Index, *Vineæ* and *Testudo*.—12. *Ferventes glandes ex fusili argillâ*, red hot balls of cast clay.—13. *Fervefacta jacûla*, fiery javelins.—14. *Distulērunt*, spread the flames.—15. *Agere*, advance.

P. 174.—1. *Demigrandi*, of retiring from the fight, yielding.—2. *Acerrimè fortissimèque*, with the greatest ardor and bravery.—3. *Recessumque primis*, &c., and the last (the farthest off) did not give a retreat, (an opportunity of retreating,) to the foremost.—4. *Turri*, a tower, (of the enemy,)—*vallum* (our) rampart.—5. *Quorum*, of whom; viz: the enemy;—*progrēdi*, to come forth; viz: from the tower.—6. *Deturbāti*, &c., they were dislodged and the tower set on fire.—7. *Qui jam primis ordinibus*, &c., who were advancing (rising) to the first ranks.—8. *Spectas*, do you look for.—9. *Quàque*, and where.—10. *Procurrentem*, running forward (to engage him).—11. *Hunc*, him (the wounded enemy).

P. 175.—1. *In illum*, at him (*Pulſio*).—2. *Succurrit inimicus*, &c. *Varenus*, though his rival, runs up and assists him in danger.—3. *Hunc*, him, (*Varenus*).—4. *Illum*, that he (*Pulſio*).—5. *In locum dejectus*, &c., stumbling, he fell; or, he stumbled and fell into a hollow place.—6. *In contentiōne et certamine*, in this honorable rivalry and contest;—*utrumque versavit*, &c., employed, directed, both, that the one, though the rival, alternately brought aid and security to the other.—7. *Quanto gravior*, &c., the more severe and difficult,—*tanto crebriores*, the more frequently; § 98, Obs. 10.—8. *Unus Nervius*, a certain Nervian.—9. *Honesto loco*, of an honorable family.—10. *Servo* (suo) a slave of his.—11. *Periculis*, the great danger (literally, the dangers).—12. *Undecimâ horâ*, the eleventh hour, 5 o'clock, P. M.; see Gr. App. I.

P. 176.—1. *Quà sibi iter faciendum sciēbat*, where he knew he would have to pass.—2. *Si reipublicæ commōdo*, &c. if he could do it with advantage to the state.—3. *Litēras publicas*, the public documents.—4. *Tolerandæ hiēmis causâ*, for the sake of enduring the winter; for a winter supply.—5. *Rem gestam*, the things done, the course pursued.—6. *Opiniōne defectus*, disappointed in his expectation; literally, cast down from his expectation.

P. 177.—1. *Si adire non possit*, if he could not gain access (to the camp).—2. *Ad amentum deligatâ*, tied to the thong, or strap: The *amentum* was a strap fastened to the middle of a spear or javelin, by means of which it was thrown with greater force.—3. *Casu*, by chance.—4. *Perlectam*, being read over; after he had read it over himself.—5. *Expulit*, dispelled, put an end to.—6. *Tamen angustiis viarum*, nevertheless, by the narrowness of the ways (or passages) between the tents.

P. 178.—1. *Galli* (hoc faciunt) *Cæsar* (hoc facit).—2. *In suum locum*, to his own ground; *i. e.* ground favorable to him.—3. *Portasque obstrui*, &c., the gates to be blocked up, and in doing this, that they should run to and fro as much as possible:—This was designed to lead the enemy to believe that there was great trepidation and fear in the camp.—4. *Etiam de vallo deductis*, &c., and being drawn back, even from the rampart, they (the enemy,) approach nearer.—5. *Ad se*, to them, viz: from the Roman camp.—6. *Ac sic nostros contemsērunt*, and to such a degree did they show their contempt of us.—7. *Eâ* (viâ), in that way.—8. *Longiùs*, too far.—9. *Illōrum*, of them, viz: the enemy.

P. 179.—1. *Legiōne productâ*, &c., having led forth the legion; having reviewed the legion, he finds; (Idioms, 104,).—2. *Pro ejus merito*, according to his merit; as he deserved;—*appellat*, he addresses by name.—3. *Rem gestam propōnit*, he lays before them (viz: Cotta and Sabinus) the matter as it took place.—4. *Culpâ*, by the misconduct.—5. *Hoc*, on this account.—6. *Quòd*, seeing, since.—7. *Incommōdo expiâto*, &c., the loss being retrieved; the disaster having been remedied by the kindness, &c.—8. *Post horam nonam*, after 3 o'clock, P. M.; See Gr. App. I.—9. *Trinis hibernis*, in three several winter quarters; *i. e.* in three different places.—10. *Consultābant*, were consulting, deliberating; § 44, II. 2.—11. *Quid consilii reliqui capērent*, &c., what measures the rest were adopting, and when a beginning of the war would be made.—12. *Concilia*, assemblies, meetings.

P. 180.—1. *Quin aliquem*, &c., but he heard, (that he did not hear,) some intelligence.—2. *Armoricæ*, states lying along the north of Gaul, now Bretagne.—3. *Dicto audientes*, obedient:—In this phrase *audientes* governs *dicto*, by § 112, R. V.; again, the words *audientes dicto*, together, are equivalent to *obedientes*, and often govern another dative by the same Rule; as, *Nobis dicto obediens*, obedient to us.—4. *Tantum valuit*, prevailed so much; had so much influence.—5. *Attulit*, produced, caused.—6. *Præcipuo semper honore habuit*, treated always with special honor.—7. *Altēros*,—*altēros*, the former,—the latter.—8. *Nulla fere civitas*, &c., almost every state was suspected by us.—9. *Idque adeo*, &c., and I do not know whether this is to be wondered at.—10. *Quòd, qui*, &c., because they grieved most bitterly that they who were accustomed to be ranked before all nations in valor, had lost so much of that reputation that they should endure the commands of the Roman people.—*Qui* has for its antecedent *se* in the next clause.

P. 181.—1. *Lapsus hâc spe*, having fallen from this hope; *i. e.* being disappointed in this hope.—2. *Ultro ad se venire* (ab hominibus, 67, 7,) that men were coming to him of their own accord.—3. *Omnibus cruciatibus*, by every species of torture.—4. *Alterius factionis*, of the opposite faction.—5. *Secutum fidem Cæsaris*, having put himself under the protection of Cæsar.—6. *Huc*, to them.

P. 182.—1. *Sub castris*, close up to the camp.—2. *Quibuscumque potērat rebus*, by whatever means he could.—3. *Intromissis*, being let in (to the Roman camp).—4. *Quos arcessendos*, &c., who he had taken care should be sent for.—5. *Nullâ ratione*, in no way.—6. *Cum magnâ contumeliâ*, with great insult of words; with most abusive language.—7. *Dispersi ac dissipati* in a dispersed and scattered manner.—8. *Præcipit atque interdicat*, commands and forbids, —*præcipit* has for its object, *unum omnes petant Indutiomārum*; and *interdicat*, the next clause, *neu quis*, &c.—9. *Morâ reliquorum*, by the delay (of pursuing) the rest.—10. *Comprobat*, favors.

NOTES ON BOOK VI.

P. 183.—1. *Dilectum habēre*, to hold a levy; to raise forces.—2. *Quoniam ipse ad urbem*, &c., since he (Pompey) remained near the city with military command, on account of the republic (The

laws did not allow a person invested with military powers, to enter the city,) that he would order those troops which he had raised in Cisalpine Gaul (and had bound) by the oath of fidelity to the consul.—3. *Sarcīri*, &c., be repaired, but even be more than compensated by greater forces.—4. *Quod cū Pompeius*, &c., Pompey having granted this.—5. *Ut docuimus*, as we have shewn.—6. *Obsidibusque de pecuniā cavent*, secure the payment of the money by means of hostages.

P. 184.—1. *Ad imperātum*, to the thing commanded; *i. e.* to do the thing commanded.—2. *Nondum hiēme confectā*, the winter being not yet ended, *i. e.* before the end of winter.—3. *Utī instituerat*, as he had been accustomed.—4. *Omnia* every thing else.—5. *Sed ab hoc consilio abfuisse existimabantur*, but were supposed to be absent from, (not concerned in) this scheme (plot).—6. *Hāc re*, &c., this thing (the adjournment) being published from the tribunal; (an elevated place formed of turf or other material heaped up together, *suggestus*).—7. *Conantibus*, &c., to them attempting to do this.—8. *Sententiā*, from this design.—9. *Deprecandi*, of excusing their conduct.—10. *Quōd æstivum*, &c., because the summer was the time for prosecuting the war, not for legal investigations.

P. 185.—1. *Totus et mente et animo*, wholly with his mind and soul; *i. e.* with his whole heart and soul.—2. *Ne quis aut ex hujus iracundiā*, &c., that no commotion might arise, either from this man's violent temper, or from that hatred on the part of the state which he had incurred (in consequence of having been made king over it by Cæsar).—3. *Pro explorāto*, for certain.—4. *Circumspiciebat ejus* (*Ambiorīgis*) *relīqua consilia animo*, watched his other plans in his mind (*i. e.* with attention).—5. *Perpetuis paludibus*, continued, uninterrupted marshes.—6. *Illi*, from him (*Ambiorix*),—*ipsum*, (*Ambiorix*) himself.—7. *Congrēdi cum Transrhenānis*, to unite with those beyond the Rhine.—8. *Manu*, an army.—9. *Præsidio loci*, to the protection of the place, the strength of their position.—10. *Effectis*, erected, built.—11. *Adit tripartito*, marches against them in three divisions.

P. 186.—1. *Augebātur* (*hostibus*) was increased to the enemy.—2. *Loquitur*, he (*Labienus*) speaks.—3. *In dubium non devotūrum*, would not endanger, involve in doubt.—4. *Gallīcis rebus*, the interest, the affairs of the Gauls.—5. *Primis ordinibus*, the chief centurions:—6. *Longum esse*, that it would be long, too long, too late.

P. 187.—1. *Usus eâdem simulatiōe itinēris*, practising the same deception respecting his march.—2. *Facultātem*, opportunity. 3. *Præstāte*, display.—4. *Præsidio ad impedimenta dimissis*, being detached to the baggage for a guard; *i. e.* to guard the baggage.—5. *Præter spem*, contrary to expectation.—6. *Infestis signis*, with hostile standards.—7. *Cingetorigi—traditum est*, was conferred on Cingetorix; See B. V. Ch. 3. and 56.—8. *Ne Ambiōrix ad eos receptum haberet*, that Ambiorix might not have a retreat to them; a place of refuge among them.

P. 188.—1. *Causâ purgandi sui*, on purpose to clear, to justify themselves.—2. *Neque abs se fidem læsam*, nor had their promise been violated by them.—3. *Ne commūni odio*, &c., lest in his common hatred of the Germans.—4. *Causâ cognitâ*, on enquiry.—5. *Imperitos* ignorant.—6. *Refērunt*, report.—7. *Infinītâ*, of vast extent.—8. *Ab Suevis*, on the side of the Suevi.

P. 189.—1. *Aliēnum*, improper, foreign to the purpose.—2. *Proponēre*, to treat of, lay before, to give some account of.—3. *In omnibus pagis partibusque*, in all the cantons and parts of cantons.—4. *Principes eārum factiōnum*, &c., the heads of these factions are (persons) who in their opinion are considered to have the greatest interest, on whose will and decision all their most important affairs and resolutions hinge, depend.—5. *Idque ejus rei causâ*, &c., and this custom seems to have been instituted from early times, for this reason.—6. *Quisque non patitur*,—*neque habent*, each leader (patron),—neither do they have:—The pupil may here notice the transition from the singular, *patitur*, with *quisque*, to the plural, *habent*; § 102, Obs. 5.—7. *Hæc eâdem ratio est*, &c., this same principle exists, prevails. in the government of all Gaul.—8. *Principes*, chief, at the head of.—9. *Jactūris*, expenses, gifts:—This is a pure use of the word, which denotes a present loss in expectation of future benefit.—10. *Tantum potentiâ antecesserant*, they (the Sequani) so far excelled (the Ædui) in power.—11. *Re infectâ*, the business, his object, being accomplished.—12. *Eōrum amicitiam* their (the Ædui's) friendship.

P. 190.—1. *Reliquis rebus*, &c., here the participle, *amplificatâ*, agrees with the nearest noun; See § 98, Obs. 4.—2. *Dimiserant*, (for *amisērant*,) had lost.—3. *Quos quod adæquāre*, &c., and because it was understood that they (the Remi) equalled the Ædui in Cæsar's favor; *i. e.* had an equal share of Cæsar's favor with the Ædui; stood as high in &c.—4. *Vetēres inimicitias*, ancient feuds.—5. *Dicābant se Remis in clientelam*, gave up themselves to the Re-

mi for protection; put themselves under the protection of the Remi, 6. *Aliquo numëro*, of any note;—*genëra*, classes.—7. *Aere aliëno*, by debt, literally, the money of another.—8. *In hos eãdem*, &c., over these the nobles have all the same rights as masters have over their slaves.—9. *Altërum est Druïdum*, one is that of the Druids (See Index)—the other, that of the knights.—10. *Illi*, the former;—*ad hos*, to the latter.—11. *Procürant*, have charge of.—12. *Ii* (Druïdes) *sunt apud eos* (adolescentes) they (the Druids) are in great honor among them, viz: their pupils.—13. *Non stetit decreto*, &c., has not stood by, has violated their decree,—they exclude them from the public rites, excommunicate them.—14. *Ii quibus ita interdictum est*, those who are thus excommunicated (Idioms, 66,).—15. *Defugiunt aditum eõrum*, &c., shun their company and conversation.

P. 191.—1. *Habet summam auctoritatem*, possesses the supreme authority; whose authority is absolute.—2. Arrange: *Quæ regio habëtur media* (regio) *totius Galliæ*, which is esteemed the middle, or central region of all Gaul.—3. *Parent*, obey, abide by, acquiesce in.—4. *Disciplina*, &c. this institution is thought to have originated in Britain.—5. *Diligentiùs*, more accurately.—6. *Militiæ vacatiõnem*, exemption from military service.—7. *Immunitatem omnium rerum*, immunity, privilege, free use, enjoyment, of all things; all immunities.—8. *Præmiis*, rewards, advantages, privileges.—9. *Ediscëre*, to learn by heart; to commit to memory.—10. *Ea litëris mandãre*, to commit these things to writing.—11. *Instituisse id*, to have instituted this custom.—12. *Disciplinam efferri*, that their doctrine should be spread abroad.—13. *In primis hoc volunt*, &c., they (the Druids) in particular wish to inculcate this idea; it is a favorite maxim of the Druids.—14. *Anïmas nōn interire*, &c., that souls do not die, but pass from one body to another.—15. *Dispütant*, &c., they reason and impart their reflections to the young.

P. 192.—1. *Cùm est usus*, when there is need.—2. *Versantur*, are engaged.—3. *Ambactos*, retainers.—4. *Dedita religionibus*, given, addicted to religious rites, to superstitions.—5. *Contexta viminibus*, interwoven with twigs.—6. *Ejus genëris* (nocentium), of this class of offenders.—7. *Deum maximè Mercurium colunt*, they (the Gauls) worship chiefly the god Mercury; i. e. Mercury is the chief or favorite deity of the Gauls:—Not however the Mercury of the Grecian mythology, but a Gallic deity.—8. (Colunt) *Apollinem*, &c.—9. *Initia*, the beginnings, the first knowledge.

P. 193.—1. *Quæ superaverint*, &c. they sacrifice the captured animals which remain.—2. *Posita*, deposited (in sacred places).—3. *Spatia omnis temporis*, all their periods or divisions of time.—4. *Ut noctem dies subsequatur*, that the day follows the night; *i. e.* their day is from sunset to sunset as among the Jews.—5. *Palam*, openly; *i. e.* publicly, in public.—6. *Conjunctim ratio habetur*, a joint account is kept.—7. *Fructusque servatur*, and the interest is laid up.—8. *Vitâ superârit*, shall survive the other.—9. *Habent questionem de uxoribus in servilem modum*, they examine their wives by torture, after the manner of slaves; like slaves.—10. *Si comperit est*, if any discovery is made.—11. *Pro cultu*, considering their mode of life.—12. *Vivis cordi fuisse*, to have been pleasing to them living.

P. 194.—1. *Commodius*, to greater advantage than others; more judiciously.—2. *Quæ visa sunt*, what seemed proper to them; *i. e.* what they thought proper.—3. *Per consilium*, through, or during; *i. e.* in the time of the council.—4. *Neque student*, nor do they pay attention to.—5. *Opibus quorum*, &c., by whose power they are manifestly benefited.—6. *Vulcânium*, fire.—7. *Constitit*, is spent.—8. *Impubères*, chaste.—9. *Rhenonum*, of deer's hides.—10. *Quantum et quo loco*, &c., as much land as, and where they think proper.—11. *Afferunt multas causas ejus rei*, they produce many reasons for this practice.

P. 195.—1. *Accuratiùs*, with greater care.—2. *Animi æquitâte*, in evenness of mind, contentment.—3. *Proprium virtutis*, peculiar to, or a proof of, their valor.—4. *Dicunt jus, controversiasque minuunt* administer justice and decide controversies.—5. *Qui velint sequi profiteantur*, let those who wish to follow signify it, give their names.—6. *Ac tempus fuit antea*, but there was a time formerly.—7. *Ultro bella inferrent*, they (the Gauls) without provocation brought war:—*Germânis*, upon the Germans.

P. 196.—1. *Summam opinionem*, a very high character, reputation for justice, and military glory.—2. *Gallis autem*, &c., the nearness of the (Roman) province to the Gauls, and their acquaintance with foreign commodities.—3. *Largitur multa ad copiam atque usus*, supplies many articles of luxury and convenience.—4. *Expedito*, to a traveller without baggage; to an expeditious traveller.—5. *Finiri*, be measured.—6. *Sinistrorsus*, to the left hand (*viz.* of the Danube,) stretches northward from the Danube.—7. *Memoriæ prodenda videantur*, seem worthy to be handed down to remembrance.—8. *Bos*, See Index, *Bison*.—9. *Sicut palmæ*, like palms.

P. 197.—1. *Alces*, elk; See *Alce*.—2. *Varietas pellium*, the spots, varied color, of their skins.—3. *Si afflictæ quo casu conciderint*, if, being thrown down by any accident, they have fallen.—4. *Applicant se ad eas*, they lean themselves against these.—5. *Infirmas*, being weakened.—6. *Uri*; See *Urus*.—7. *Quæ sunt testimonio*, to serve as a proof.—8. *Ne parvuli quidem excepti*, not even those caught young.—9. *Amplissimis*, their most splendid.—10. *Cæsar*:—Cæsar having finished his digression, respecting the manners of the Gauls and Germans, (Ch. 11—28,) here resumes his narrative.

P. 198.—1. *Si quid celeritate*, &c., to see if he may be able to gain any thing by rapidity of march and favorable opportunity.—2. *Ut imperatum est*, as was ordered.—3. *Fortuna potest* (facere) *multum*, &c. fortune can do much; *i. e.* has great influence, not only, &c.—4. *Magnæ fuit fortunæ*, it was a piece of great good fortune.

P. 199.—1. *Multum fortuna valuit*, fortune can do much, has great power or influence.—2. *Judicio*, from choice, designedly.—3. *Exclusus tempore*, prevented by want of time.—4. *Sed certè*, but it is certain.—5. *Alienissimis* to total strangers.—6. *Omnibus precibus*, with every sort of execration.—7. *Taxo*, with yew; *i. e.* with a decoction of the leaves or berry, both of which were regarded as poisonous.—8. *Causam omnium Germanorum esse unam*, that the cause of all the Germans was one and the same.—9. *Questiōne captivorum*, from an examination of the captives.

P. 200.—1. *Post diem septimum* (inchoatum), after the seventh day was begun; *i. e.* on the seventh day;—2. *Ut suprà*, Ch. 31.—3. *Nulla certa manus*, no regular force.—4. *Vicinitatibus*, to the neighborhoods; *i. e.* to the people in the neighborhood:—a very common mode of speech in our own language.—5. *Ex parte*, partly, in a measure.

P. 201.—1. *Confertos*, in large parties.—2. *Si vellet*, if he (Cæsar) wished.—3. *Instituta ratio*, established discipline.—4. *Ut potius in nocendo*, &c., that some opportunity of injuring the enemy should be omitted, rather than that this injury should be inflicted with any danger to his soldiers.—5. *Legionarius miles*, the legionary soldiery; the soldiers of the legion; *i. e.* the regular troops.—6. *Appetebat*, was drawing near.—7. *Quantos casus afferat*, how great accidents she brings; *i. e.* how great changes she brings about.—8. *Manus erat nulla*, there was no collected body.—9. *Suprà docuimus*, we have shewn above; B. IV. Ch. 16.

P. 202.—1. *Non palus non silvæ morantur hos*, &c., no marsh, no woods hinder these men, &c.—2. *Tantum præsidii ut ne*, &c., so little of garrison that not even the walls could be surrounded with men; *i. e.* could be manned.—3. *Duce*, guide,—*indicio*, information. 4. *Qui illius patientiam pæne obsessiōnem*, &c., who called his forbearance almost a siege, since they were not permitted to go out of the camp.—5. *Qui convaluērant*, &c., those who had recovered during this interval.—6. *Subsidērat*, had remained.—7. *Casu*, by chance, by accident.

P. 203.—1. *Mercatōres qui sub vallo tendērent*, the suttlers who pitched their tents close to the ramparts.—2. *Relīquos aditus*, and other places of entrance.—3. *Plerīque novas sibi*, &c., most of them form to themselves strange superstitious notions from the place; and they place before their eyes the disaster of Cotta and Titurius, since they were overthrown in that fort.—4. *Qui primum pilum*, &c., who had led the first rank with Cæsar; *i. e.* who had been his chief centurion.—5. *Superioribus præliis*; See B. II. Ch. 25, and B. III. Ch. 5.—6. *Relinquit animus Sextium*, Sextius faints.

P. 204.—1. *Imperiti usus militāris*, not acquainted with the usages of war.—2. *Cuneo facto*, a wedge being made; being drawn up in the form of a wedge.—3. *Si*, if, even if:—*at*, still, yet.—4. *Nullo usu militāris rei percepto*, &c., no experience in military affairs being yet acquired.

P. 205.—1. *Non faceret fidem*, he did not gain credit, was not believed.—2. *Pæne alienātâ mente*, with a mind almost alienated; devoid of reason.—3. *Questus unum*, having complained of only one thing.—4. *Locum debuisse relinqui, ne minimo quidem casu*, that a place, or occasion, ought not to have been left, for even the smallest accident; See § 16; Exc. 2.—5. *Quarum omnium rerum maxime*, &c., of all these things it seemed the most astonishing.—6. *Obtulērint optatissimum beneficium Ambiorigi*, rendered the most acceptable service to Ambiorix.—7. *Ad vexandos hostes*, to annoy the enemy.

P. 206.—1. *Pæne natūram studio vincērent*, they almost overcame nature by exertion.—2. *Ad summam felicitātem*, to complete success.—3. *Ille eripēret*, &c., he continued to snatch himself from them; to escape from them by the aid of lurking places and forests: 4. *Sumsit supplicium more majōrum*, he inflicted punishment according to the practice of their ancestors.—5. *Cùm interdixisset quibus aquâ atque igni*, when he had interdicted them from water and fire;

i. e. had banished them:—This was the Roman judicial mode of inflicting the sentence of banishment, “To forbid the use of water and fire”—6. *Frumento proviso exercitui*, having provided corn for the army.

[END OF NOTES.]

INDEX,

HISTORICAL, GEOGRAPHICAL AND ARCHÆOLOGICAL,

FOR THE FIRST SIX BOOKS OF

CÆSAR'S COMMENTARIES ON THE GALLIC WAR.

Acco, ōnis, a general of the Gauls, who was at the head of the confederacy formed against the Senōnes, Carnūtes, and Trevīri. Cæsar, by the rapidity of his marches, prevented the execution of his plans, and ordered a general assembly of Gaul to inquire into the conduct of these nations, in which he pronounced sentence of death on Acco, who was instantly executed; B. VI. Ch. 4, and 44.

Adcantuannus, Adiomātus, vel, Adbuātus, i, the chief man, for many years, among the Allobrōges.

Aduatūca, æ, f. a fort nearly in the middle of the country possessed by the Eburōnes,—a different place from Aduatūcum, the capital of the Aduatūci, now called *Tongres*, with which it appears to have been confounded by Ptolemy;—A small part of the town only may have been built when Cæsar was in that country. Hence he mentioned it as a castle, or fort. It stood near the river Mosa, (*Mæse*,) between Liege and Mæstricht.

Aduatūci, ōrum, m. a people of Gallia Belgica, whose country lay on the west bank of the Mosa, (*Mæse*,) between Namur and Liege.

Ædui, ōrum, (*sing.* Æduus, i.), v. Hedui, ōrum, one of the most powerful and wealthy nations of Gallia Celtica. Their territory lay on the W. of the Arar, (*Soane*,) between that river and the Ligēris, (*Loire*,) a little to the N. of the junction of the former with the Rhodānus, (*Rhone*,) At an early period they became the allies of Rome, to which, in some degree, their influence among the other nations of Gaul may be attributed. See Sequāni.

Æmilius, i, (Lucius), an officer in Cæsar's army, who commanded a part of the Gallic cavalry.

Æquinoctium, i, n. (from *Æquus*, equal, and *Nox*, night,) the Equinox, or time when the days and nights are equal, all over the globe. This happens twice a year, on 22d March, and 22d September. The former is called the Vernal, the latter the Autumnal Equinox. The circle, which passes through the place of the sun at these two periods of the year, has, from the phenomenon above mentioned, received the name of the Equinoctial, or Equinoctial Line, and is directly over the Equator.

Agendicum, i, n. (now *Sens*,) the chief city of the Senōnes, a brave and powerful people of Gaul, who inhabited the left bank of the Sequāna, (*Seine*). It stood below the confluence of the Vanne and Icauna, vel, Itumna, (*Yonne*,) a southern branch of the Seine.

Agger, is, the name of a mound raised by the Romans in besieging cities. It was composed of earth, wood, hurdles, stone, &c. The agger commenced at a distance from the walls, gradually advanced towards the town, always increasing in height, till it equalled or overtopped the walls. This mound was secured by towers of different stories, (See *Turris*,) from which showers of missiles were discharged on the defenders by means of engines, and from which, when advanced near enough, a temporary platform or bridge was sometimes thrown to the top of the wall, on which the soldiers marched into the city.

Ala, æ, the wing of an army, properly the cavalry, so called from being placed on the right and left of the infantry. In the plural this term is often used to designate the troops of the allies, which (both infantry and cavalry,) were stationed on the right and left of the Roman army.

Alarii, ōrum, those belonging to the *Alæ*, or wings.

Allobrōges, um, (sing. *Allobrox*, ōgis,) a people of Gaul, whose country lay between the Isāra, (*Isere*,) and the river Rhodānus, (*Rhone*.) They bravely, and for a long time, resisted the power of the Roman legions, but were at last defeated by Pomtinus. Cicero extols them for their fidelity to his countrymen, of which they gave a remarkable proof in Catiline's conspiracy (See Sallust, B. C.) Horacē censures them for their love of novelty, which seems characteristic of the inhabitants of that country, both in ancient and modern times. Cæsar De Bel. Gal. IV. 5. The chief town of the Allobrōges was Vienna, (*Vienne*,) on the left bank of the Rhone, 13 miles below Lugdunum, (*Lyon*.)

Alpes, ium, a chain of mountains separating Italy from Gaul and Germany. They are in the form of a crescent, and extend from the Sinus Flanaticus, (the gulf of *Quarnero*,) at the top of the

gulf of Venice, to Vada Sabatia, (*Savona*,) on the gulf of Genoa, a distance of 600 miles. They have been divided into different portions, the principal of which are the following: 1. *Alpes Maritimæ*, (or Maritime Alps,) extending from the vicinity of Nice to Monte Viso. 2. *Alpes Cottæ*, (or Cottian Alps,) from Monte Viso to Mont Cenis. 3. *Alpes Graiæ*, (or Graian Alps,) between Mont Iseran and Little St. Bernard. 4. *Alpes Penninæ*, (or Pennine Alps,) from Great St. Bernard to the sources of the Rhone and Rhine. To this range belongs Mt. Blanc, 14,676 feet high. 5. *Alpes Ræticae*, (or Rætian Alps,) from St. Gothard to Mount Brenner in the Tyrol. 6. *Alpes Noricæ*, (or Noric Alps,) from Mount Brenner to the head of the river Plavis. 7. *Alpes Carnicæ*, sive *Julia*, (the Carnic or Julian Alps,) from the head of the river Plavis to the confines of Illyricum. Over these mountains there are several passes, of which the principal are, that over the Great St. Bernard, that over Mont Simphon, and that over Mont St. Gothard.

Ambarri, ōrum, a people of Gaul, related to the Ædui, supposed to have lived on the Arar, (*Saone*,) a little to the N. of its Junction with the Rhodānus, (*Rhone*.)

Ambiānum, i, n. anciently Samarobrīva, now *Amiens*, a town of the Belgæ.

Ambiani, ōrum, the inhabitants of Ambiānum. They entered into a conspiracy against Cæsar, (B. G. II. 4,) and appear to have held a considerable rank among the Belgic tribes.

Ambiliāti, ōrum, m. a nation of Gallia Celtica whose geographical position is not precisely ascertained. They are mentioned (B. G. III. 9,) along with the Osismii, Lexovii, Nannētes, &c., and therefore their country must have been included in the province of Bretagne or Normandy. Some editions have Ambiani.

Ambiōrix, īgis, king of the Eburōnes, was a great enemy to the Romans. After many narrow escapes, he at last evaded the pursuit of Cæsar's men who followed him too closely, when only four of his attendants remained.

Ambivariti, ōrum, a nation of Gaul, between the Mosa, (*Mæse*,) and the Rhēnus, (*Rhine*,) who were subject to the Ædui. B. IV. Ch. 9.)

Anartes, ium; et Anarti, v. Anartii, ōrum, a people of Dacia, who inhabited the east bank of the river Tibiscus, (*Teissk*, or *Teyss*,) one of the northern branches of the Danube. Their country now forms part of Hungary.

Ancalītes, ium, a people of South Britain, who were neighbors to

the Trinobantes. Some have thought the Atrebates of Ptolemy and Antonine's Itinerary, the same with the Ancalites of Cæsar. See Horsley's *Brittania Romana*, p. 17, and Gale's *Anton. Itiner.* p. 105, 106.

Andes, ium, ĩbus, a nation of the Celtæ in Gaul. Their territory lay on the north bank, and near the mouth, of the river Ligēris, (*Loir..*)

Annus, i, m. a year. See Gr. App. I.

Antebrogius, i, m. a man of great influence amongst the Rhemi, who was sent ambassador to Cæsar in the second year of the Gallic war.

Antesignāni, ōrum, (*Ante* and *signum*,) a name given to the soldiers who fought *before* the standards, or in the first line, as those who were stationed behind the standards were called *Postsignāni*, or *Subsignāni*.

Antistius, i, (Caius A. Rhegīnus), one of Cæsar's lieutenants in Gaul. Cæsar, in consequence of his expecting greater commotions in that country, gave orders in the sixth year of the war, to Marcus Silānus, C. Antistius Rhegīnus, and T. Sextius, to levy troops. We find him, at other times, appointing this lieutenant to honorable commissions.

Antistius, (See Turpio.)

Apollo, ĩnis, the son of Jupiter and Latōna, the god of music, medicine, augury, painting, poetry, and all the fine arts. He was born at the same birth with his sister Diāna, near the foot of Cynthus, a mountain in Delos, an island in Mare Ægeum, (*Archipelago.*) Hence he was called Cynthius and Delius; and Diana, Cynthia and Delia. Among beasts, the wolf; among insects, the grass-hopper; among birds, the cock, the crow, the swan, and the hawk; and among trees, the palm, the olive, and the laurel, were sacred to Apollo. He was represented as a tall beardless young man, of handsome shape, holding in his hand a bow, hence called *Deus Arcitēns*, or a lyre, and his head surrounded with rays of light.

Aquila, æ, m. an eagle, also the standard of a Roman Legion. From the second consulship of Marius, and under the Emperors, the standards were most commonly of silver, seldom of gold, in the form of an eagle, from which the name is derived. The preference was given to the former metal, according to Pliny, because it is seen at a greater distance than the latter. But though the figure of the Roman ensigns was always that of an eagle, they were not always precisely alike. Sometimes they resembled an

eagle in a standing posture, at others, with outstretched wings, which was the most common form, and not unfrequently with a turret on their backs. The Roman standard, at first, was a bundle of hay fixed to a pole, *Manipulus*,—a term afterward used to denote the third part of a cohort, then of wood, sometimes of silver, and more rarely of gold, in different forms. Marius, during his second consulship, introduced into the Roman army the eagle, which continued to be ensign till the destruction of the empire. The merit of originality does not belong to the Romans, for we have the authority of Xenophon to maintain, that it was first used as a military standard by the Persians.

Aquilifer, féri, m. standard-bearer, whose office seems, in some degree, to correspond to that of ensign with us. His place was in the first line. To allow the standard to fall into the hands of the enemy was reckoned highly disgraceful to the whole legion, which is still the case in modern times, but particularly to the person who carried it. In one instance recorded by Livy, the standard-bearer was, for this crime, put to death. But the centurions suffered the same punishment at that time, and the army was decimated for cowardice and treachery.—It does not appear from Roman history, that recourse was had to such severity, unless in instances of wilful dereliction of duty, proceeding either from unmanly timidity or treacherous intention.

Aquilëia, æ, f. a famous seaport belonging to the Venëti on Mare Hadriaticum, (*Gulf of Venice*.) Strabo says it was built by the Romans, to repel the inroads of the barbarians, when their territory on that coast did not extend farther north. The name has been thought to be derived from an eagle, *Aquila*, flying over the site at the time the foundation was laid; but more probably from the Roman standard, in consequence of two legions having been long stationed in that place. From its splendor and magnificence, it was sometimes called *Roma Secunda*. Altilla, king of the Huns, after a long and obstinate siege, plundered it, A. D. 452, and so completely was the city destroyed, that the next generation could scarcely discover its ruins. Since that time, a few fishermen's huts point out the place near which it stood. Aquilëia, according to Pliny, was at the distance of 1500 paces from the coast.

Aquitania, æ, f. one of the three principal divisions of Gallia, (*France*,) bounded on the east by Provincia, (*Languedoc, Provence*, and *Dauphiné*; on the north by the river Garumna, (*Garonne*,) which separates it from Gallia Celtica, on the west by Oceānus Cantabricus, (*Bay of Biscay*,) and on the south by Py-

renæi Montes, (*Pyrenees*, or *Pyrenean Mountains*,) which divide Gallia from Hispania, (*Spain*.) As Aquitania was much less than either of the other two divisions, Augustus extended its northern boundary to the river Ligëris, (*Loire*.)

Aquitani, ōrum, (sing. Aquitanus, i,) the inhabitants of Aquitania. Arar, āris, m. (*Saone*,) a smooth flowing river of Gaul, which takes its rise near Mount Vosëgus, (*Vosge*,) runs southward, and after receiving several streams, falls into the river Rhodānus, (*Rhone*,) at Lugdūnum, (*Lyon*, or *Lyons*.) B. I. Ch. 12.

Arduenna, æ, f. *Ardennes*, a forest of Gaul, the largest in that country, reaching, according to Cæsar, from the Rhenus, (*Rhine*,) to the territory of the Remi, upwards of fifty miles in length. Others make the extent of this forest much larger. If it reached from the territory of the Treviri to that of the Remi, it would greatly exceed fifty miles. The ground is now in many places cleared, and cities built upon it. Strabo says, the trees of this forest were not of a great height, and its length did not exceed forty miles.

Arecomīci, ōrum, a people of Gaul, who lived on the Gallicus Sinus, (*Gulf of Lyons*,) to the west of the river Rhodānus, (*Rhone*.) See Volcæ.

Aries, ëtis, m. a ram:—also a military engine for battering down walls. It is said to have been first used by the Carthaginians at the siege of Gades, (*Cadiz*.) This instrument was originally very simple. To the end of a beam, varying in length and thickness according to circumstances, was affixed a piece of iron in the form of a ram's head, to which it owes its name. This powerful engine of war rested on the arms of the soldiers who worked it. The first improvement made on the battering ram, was to suspend it by a chain or a rope from the top of two logs of wood, having the lower ends fixed firmly in the ground at a considerable distance from each other, and terminating in a point at the upper, by which contrivance the men who wrought it were wholly relieved of its weight. To protect them from the destructive weapons thrown by the besieged, a shed or mantlet, with a strong roof, was formed around it. The whole stood on wheels, so that the besiegers easily moved the engine at pleasure. It does not appear from ancient history, that the battering ram received any important improvement after the one just stated. The discovery of gunpowder and introduction of artillery have quite superseded the use of this military engine, which the Romans long held in great esteem.

The number of men employed at once in working the ram, and the length of time they continued, would vary according to the number of the troops, the magnitude of the beam, the thickness of the wall, &c. It is certain that in some instances, upwards of fifty men plied on each side, and from the severity of the labor, they must, in ordinary cases, have been frequently relieved. The following wood cut represents the battering ram protected by the *Testudo*, or *vineæ*, under which the men employed in working it were protected from the missiles of the enemy.

ARIES.



Ariovistus, i, king of the Germans, who invaded Gallia, (*France*), conquered a considerable part of that country, and subjected the inhabitants to the most cruel and oppressive treatment. Cæsar marched up to his very camp, compelled him to fight, and gained such a complete victory, that a very few only, among whom was

Ariovistus himself, escaped. These continued their flight, until they reached the banks of the Rhine, which they crossed, some by swimming, others by boats. Ariovistus, in a little vessel, got safely to the other side. From this period nothing of his history is known.

Armoricæ civitates, Armoric States, namely, those of the Rhedōnes Namnētes, Venēti, Curiosolites, Osismii, Corisopiti, Unelli, Ambrincatui, Bajocasses, Viducasses, and Lexovii, who inhabited the western part of the countries, between the Ligēris, (*Loire*,) and the Sequāna, (*Seine*.) They had this name from their situation on the sea coast; *Armor* signifying, in the language of the ancient Gauls, *on the sea*.

Armorici, ōrum, the inhabitants of Armoricæ.

Arpinus, i, (Caius,) a Roman knight whom Cæsar sent along with Quintus Junius to Ambiōrix, after he himself had declined an interview with that prince.

Arverni, ōrum, a people of Galliæ Celtica, whose territories lay between the sources of the Eleāver, (*Allier*,) and Duranius, (*Dordogne*,) branches of the Ligēris and Garumna. From the numerous wars which they had carried on against the Romans, Strabo infers their power and resources must, in former ages, have been very great. Like the Romans, they boasted of being descended from the Trojans.

Atrebātes, ium, a people of Galliæ Belgica, the neighbors of the Morini whose country lay along the English Channel, opposite to Dover.

Atrius, i, (Quintus,) an officer to whom Cæsar gave the command of the shipping, which had carried him and his army to the coast of Britain.

Atuatūci, v. Aduatūci. ōrum, a people of Belgic Gaul, whose territories lay between the rivers Mosa, (*Mæse*,) and the Scaldis, (*Scheldt*,) adjoining to those of the Nervii and Toxarari. Their capital was Atuatūca, æ, f. *Tongres*, in Brabant.

Aulerci, ōrum; of this name Cæsar mentions four nations of Gaul. *Aulerci Brannovices*, whose territories, (*Morienne*,) were adjoining to those of the Ædui, Segusiāni, and Ambivariti; *Aulerci Cenomanni*, whose country, (*Mans*,) lay between the rivers Sarta (*Sarte*,) and Lædus, two of the northern branches of the Loire. Suindinum, vel, Subdinium, afterwards Cenomanni, on the Sarte was their chief city; *Aulerci Eburovices* inhabited the left bank of the Sequāna, (*Seine*,) below Lutetia, (*Paris*.) Their chief town was Mediolanum, afterwards Eburovices, (*Evreux*.)

The *Aulerci Diablintes*, *Diablitiæ*, et *Diaulitiæ*, lived between the two last mentioned nations. Neodunum, afterwards Diablintes, (*Jublens*,) was their largest town. These three, probably, formed but one people, and might, with more propriety, have been denominated tribes, than separate or distinct nations.

Aurunculeius, i, (Lucius A. Cotta) one of Cæsar's lieutenants in the Gallic War. He opposed the rash measure of his colleague, in wishing to leave their winter quarters, at the deceitful suggestion of Ambiorix, but at last yielded to the timidity of Titurius, which cost him his life. He is frequently called L. Cotta, and sometimes Cotta.

Ausci, ōrum, a people of Aquitania in Gaul. Their capital was Climberis, v. Climberrum, Augusta, and at a latter period, Auci, (*Auch*,) which stood on the west branch of the Ger, one of the southern branches of the river Garumna, (*Garonne*.)

Auxilia, ōrum, troops sent by foreign kings and states. They usually received pay and clothing from the republic, although sometimes they were supported by those who sent them.

Axōna, æ, m. (*Aine*, or *Aisne*,) a river of Gaul, which Ausonius calls *Præceps*, from its rapidity. Its source was in the territories of the Rhemi, which form the department of the Meuse. It runs in a southwest direction, joins the Isāra, (*Isere*,) a little below Campaigne, and both fall into the Sequāna, (*Seine*,) about five miles south of Pointoise.

B.

BACENIS, is, f. a forest of Germany, forming part of the Hercynia Silva, or *Black Forest*. Cæsar says it was of prodigious extent, (*infinitæ magnitudinis*,) and like a natural wall, prevented the mutual incursions of the Suēvi and Cherusci.

Bacūlus; See Sextius.

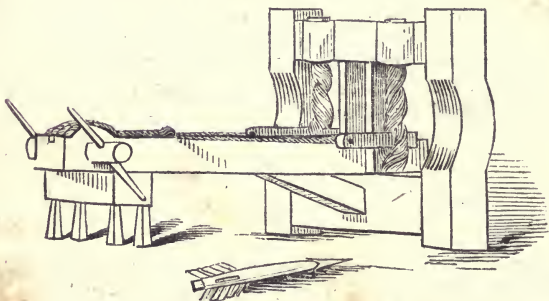
Baleāres, ium, a name anciently given to the islands of *Majorca* and *Minorca* off the coast of Spain, the inhabitants of which were celebrated for their skill in the use of the sling.

Baleāris, e, adj. of or belonging to the Balearic isles.

Balista, æ, (from the Greek βάλλω to throw,) a species of military engine used by the Romans for throwing darts, arrows, and stones. These were of different sizes, and were used with great effect both in battles and sieges. Stones of great weight were often

thrown by these engines to a great distance, by which battlements were thrown down and whole files of men swept from the deepest phalanx. Their effect is said to have been little inferior in sieges to that of artillery. The balista used for throwing darts or javelins, represented in the following wood cut, taken from Folard's commentary on Polybius, resembled in its operation an immense crossbow, the two ends of which consisted of two levers so twisted in coils of ropes as to acquire a powerful spring. The extreme ends were united by a strong rope which was drawn back by means of a windlass after the manner of a bowstring, bringing the ends of the lever back and closer together, thereby twisting the coils of ropes to their greatest tension. When thus drawn back, the javelin or dart was placed in the shaft, directed to the object aimed at, and, at the pleasure of the operator, letting go the rope, was hurled with prodigious force from the engine by the recoil of the levers.

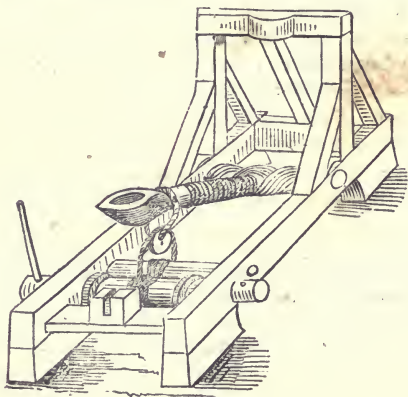
BALISTA FOR THROWING DARTS AND JAVELINS.



The balista for throwing stones, (represented in the following wood cut,) consisted of a strong lever, one end of which was made fast in a twist of ropes, and the other scooped out in the form of a spoon, for containing the stone &c. to be thrown. When unbent the lever stood perpendicular. In working it, the end of the lever was brought down, by means of a windlass, to a horizontal position, by which the ropes were twisted to their greatest tension; the stone or missile was laid on in its proper place and thrown by the recoil of the lever to a great distance, often with tremendous effect. Engines of both kinds, of a larger size, were

more commonly called *Balistæ*, those of a smaller size, *Catapultæ*, which see

BALISTA FOR THROWING STONES OR OTHER HEAVY BODIES.



Balventius, i, (Titus, i,) a man of distinguished courage, who had both his thighs pierced with a dart, in the attack which Ambiörix made upon the legions which he had deceitfully persuaded to leave their camp.

Basīlus; See Minucius.

Batavia, æ, f. v. Insūla Batavōrum, (*United Provinces*,) often called *Holland*, from its being the largest of them; a country at the mouth of the Rhine. It was denominated an island, from being bounded on two sides, by the southern and northern branches of the Rhine, and on the third by the sea. B. IV. Ch. 10.

Batāvi, ōrum, the people of Batavia, originally a branch of the Catti, a German nation.

Belgæ, ārum, a people originally of German extraction, who inhabited the third division of Gaul, which was bounded on the south by the Matrōna, (*Marne*,) and the Sequāna, (*Seine*;) on the east and north by the Rhēnus, (*Rhine*,) and on the west by Fretum Britannicūm, (*English Channel*.) Strictly speaking, Fretum Britannicūm, v. Gallicūm, was confined to the *Straits of Dover*, but seems generally to have had a more extended signification, and to have nearly corresponded to the modern appellation, the *English Channel*. Cæsar calls it Oceānus, i. e. *Atlantīcus*, of which the

English Channel and the German Sea form only a very small part. In the division of Gaul made by Augustus, whose object was to render the different provinces more equal in point of extent, the countries of the Helvetii and Sequāni, which till that time were included in Gallia Celtica, were added to Gallia Belgica. According to Cæsar, the Belgæ were, of all the Gauls, the most warlike; and he attributes their superiority in arms to their being strangers to luxury and refinement. B. I. Ch. 1.

Belgium, i, n. is, in general, used by Cæsar to denote a part of Gallia Belgica, not the whole country. See Belgæ.

Bellovaci, ōrum, a numerous and powerful tribe of the Belgæ, adjoining the Bellocassi. Calēti, Ambiāni, Veromandui, and Silvanectes.

Bibracte, is, n. afterwards Angustodūnum, i, n. (*Autun*), a town of the Ædui, upon the Arroux, one of the northern branches of the Ligēris, (*Loire*), towards the source of that river. At this town in the 7th year of the Gallic war a general assembly of the whole country was held, to choose a commander in chief, on whom the uncontrolled direction of all their military operations should be conferred. The Ædui, who claimed that honor, had to submit to the unanimous election of Vercingetōrix, q. v.

Bibrax, acis, f. (*Bievre*), a town of the Remi on the Axōna, (*Aisne*.)

Bibrōci, ōrum, a British nation, inhabiting what now forms the N. W. part of Berkshire. Their chief town was Bibracte, (*Bray*.) At the time Cæsar invaded Britain, they, with the Cenomāgni, Ancalītes, and Cassii, seem to have been subject to Cassivellaunus.

Bigerriōnes, v. Bigerrōnes, ium, a people of Aquitania, who, with several other adjoining tribes, surrendered to Crassus, one of Cæsar's lieutenants. Their territory was bounded on the south by the Pyrenees, and was nearly at equal distances from the Mediterranean and the Bay of Biscay.

Bison, ontis, v. ōnis, m. a buffalo, a kind of wild ox, of which Cæsar has given the best description to be found in the writings of the ancients, (B. G. VI. 25.) The natural history of this animal is unknown.

Bituriges, um, a nation of Gallia Celtica, on the west side of the river Ligēris, (*Loire*.) Their chief city, Avaricum, was afterwards called by the name of its inhabitants, (now *Bourges*.)

Boduognātus, i, the commander of the Nervii, at the time they attacked the Roman army under Cæsar.

Boii, ðrum, a people of Gallia Celtica, who came originally from beyond the Rhine and settled in the country south and west of the Ædui on the banks of the Liger and Eläver,—a territory originally belonging to the Ædui, but which they gave up to the Boii with the consent of Cæsar; B. I. Ch. 28. There were several tribes of the Boii, who lived in different parts of Gaul and Germany. In the latter country their name is still recognized in the districts, *Bavaria*, and *Bohemia*, in the German language, *Boierheim*, i. e. the residence of the Boii.

Bratuspantium, i, n. a town of the Bellovaci. It is supposed to have stood between Cæsaromagnus, afterwards Belvæcus, or Belvæcum, (*Beauvais*,) and Samarobriva, (*Amiens*.) This town is not mentioned by any writer after the commencement of the Christian Æra.

Britannia, æ, f. *Britain*, or *Great Britain*, (anciently called *Albion*,) is the largest island in Mare Atlanticum, (*Atlantic Ocean*,) belonging to Euröpa, (*Europe*.) That part of the Atlantic which separates Britain from France, was called Fretum Britannicum, (strictly speaking, *Strait of Dover*,) but its signification seems often to have been more extensive, and to have corresponded nearly with the modern appellation, English Channel. Oceänus Verginius, (*St. George's Channel*,) lies between Britain and Hibernia, (*Ireland*.) On the west, Oceänus Calydonicus, (*Scottish Sea*,) washed the west and northwest parts of Scotland, Oceänus Hyperboreus, (*Northern Sea*,) the northern coast, and Oceänus Germanicus, (the *German Ocean*,—which is more properly called a sea,)—formed its boundary on the east. Cæsar's account, both of the form and extent of this island, is not very far from the truth. But of the characters, manners and customs, of the Britons, a very general description only is to be found in the writings of the ancients. Little was known, to the Romans, of this island until the invasion of Cæsar. This commander endeavored, although ineffectually, to reduce it. After a long interval, Ostorius, in the reign of Claudius, subjugated the southern part; and Agricola, subsequently, in the reign of Domitian, extended the Roman dominion to the Frith of Forth and Clyde. The whole force of the empire, although exerted to the utmost under Severus, could not, however, reduce to subjection the hardy natives of the highlands. Britain continued a Roman province, until A. D. 426, when the troops were in a great measure withdrawn, to assist Valentinian III. against the Huns, and never returned. The Britons had become so enervated under the Roman yoke, as to be unable to repel

the incursions of the inhabitants of the north. They invoked, therefore, the aid of the Saxons, by whom they were themselves subjugated, and compelled at last to take refuge among the mountains of Wales.

Britanni, ōrum, (sing. Britannus, i,) et Britōnes, v. Brittōnes, um, (sing. Britto, ōnis, v. ōnis,) the people of Britania.

Britannus, et, Britannīcus, a um, adj. of, or belonging to Britain.

Brutus, i, (Decīmus, i,) one of Cæsar's officers, to whom he gave the command of his fleet in the Gallic war, with which he defeated the Venetians, (B. G. III. 15,) and afterwards the people of Marseilles, in two engagements during the civil war.

C.

CÆRÆSI, ōrum, a nation of Gallia Belgica, who, with the Condrūsi, Eburōnes, and Pāmāni, went under the general appellation of Germans, and were supposed to send 40,000 men to the Belgic army, which was raised against the Roman dominion in Gaul, (B. G. II. 4.) Their country was situated between that of the Trevīri and the river Mosa, (*Meuse*.)

Cæsar, āris, (Caius Julius,) the first distinguished character of the Cæsars, was the son of Caius Cæsar and Aurelia the daughter of Cotta. He was born in the sixth consulship of Marius, 99 years B. C. He lost his father in the 16th year of his age, and the following year obtained the office of Flamen Dialīs, (*High Priest of Jupiter*.) He procured many friends by his eloquence, and after passing through the different offices of Quæstor, Edile, High Priest, (*Pontifex Maximus*,) &c., he was sent as governor into Spain, and upon his return, being elected Consul, he entered into an agreement with Pompey and Crassus, that nothing should be done in the state without their joint concurrence. This was called the First Triumvirate, and was in fact a conspiracy against the liberties of Rome.

Previous to the expiration of his consulship, he obtained from the people the province of Cisalpine Gaul and Illyricum, with three legions for five years; and the Senate, at the desire of Cæsar, added Transalpine Gaul and another legion. These legions were gradually increased to thirteen.

Cæsar set out for Transalpine Gaul in the end of March, B. C. 57, in the 42d year of his age. With wonderful conduct and

bravery he subdued this country in about ten years, and carried the terror of his arms into Germany and Britain, till then unknown to the Romans. The account of these wars is given by Cæsar himself, in his Commentaries on the Gallic war, in seven books. These Commentaries, or Journals, were composed on the spot where his battles were fought. The purity and neatness of his style, notwithstanding the rapidity with which they must have been written, have not been surpassed by any Roman writer. His narrative is perspicuous, simple, and natural. It is at once chaste and animated. His lucid and picturesque description places the whole scene distinctly before the reader, who accompanies him in all his marches, and is a witness of every engagement. No passage occurs in all his writings, which the most illiterate do not understand, and the most polished do not approve. To compose a simple narrative of his campaigns, for the amusement of himself and his friends, seems rather to have been his object, than to give a specimen of his talents as a profound historian, or deep politician. Hence, it were absurd to expect in the Commentaries, a finished history. They are mere outlines, which he perhaps entertained the hope of seeing filled up, either by himself, or by some other hand.

These Commentaries in seven books, and three books concerning the civil war, are the only genuine writings of Cæsar which now remain. Of the character of Cæsar as a general and historian, Dunlop, in his History of Roman Literature, Vol. II. p. 171, &c., speaks thus:

“Though the Commentaries on the Gallic War comprehend but a small extent of time, and are not the general history of a nation, they embrace events of the highest importance, and detail, perhaps, the greatest military operations to be found in ancient story. We see in them all that is great and consummate in the art of war. The ablest commander of the most warlike people on earth records the history of his own campaigns. Placed at the head of the finest army ever formed in the world, and one devoted to his fortunes, but opposed by prowess only second to their own, he and the soldiers he commanded may be praised almost in the words in which Nestor praised the heroes who had gone before him; for the Gauls and Germans were among the bravest and most warlike nations then on earth. In his clear and scientific details of military operations, Cæsar is reckoned superior to every one, except, perhaps, Polybius. In general, too, when he speaks of himself, it is without affectation or arrogance. He talks

of Cæsar as of an indifferent person, and always maintains the character which he has thus assumed; indeed, it can hardly be conceived that he had so small a share in the great actions he describes, as would appear from his own representations. With the exception of the false colors with which he disguises his ambitious projects against the liberties of his country, every thing seems to be told with fidelity and candor."

Respecting the future history of this illustrious man the following notices may here suffice. After the conquest of Gaul, Pompey, having become jealous of Cæsar's power, induced the Senate to order him to lay down his command; upon which Cæsar crossed the Rubicon, the boundary of his province, and led his army to Rome, Pompey and all the friends of liberty fleeing before him. Having subdued Italy in sixty days, Cæsar entered Rome, and seized upon the money in the public treasury. He then went to Spain, where he conquered the partizans of Pompey, and at his return was created Dictator, and soon after Consul. Leaving Rome and going in search of Pompey, the two hostile generals engaged on the plains of Pharsalia. The army of Cæsar amounted to 22,000 men, while that of Pompey amounted to 45,000; but the superior generalship of Cæsar prevailed, and he was victorious. Making a generous use of his victory, Cæsar followed Pompey into Egypt, where he heard of his murder, and making the country tributary to his power, he hastened to suppress the remainder of Pompey's party in Africa and Spain. Thus triumphing over all his enemies, he was created perpetual Dictator, received the names of *Imperâtor* and *Pater Patriæ*, and governed the people with justice. The consequence, however, of his engrossing all the powers of the state and ruling with absolute authority, engendered a spirit of opposition and general disgust; a conspiracy was formed against him by more than sixty senators, the chief of whom were Brutus and Cassius. Accordingly, on the 15th of March, 44 years B. C., and in the 56th year of his age, on his entrance into the Senate house, he was stabbed, and fell, pierced with twenty-three wounds, at the foot of Pompey's statue.

Of Cæsar's intrepidity as a soldier, and abilities as a commander, the armies which he defeated and the countries which he conquered are sufficient proofs. To the talents of a consummate general he added those of an elegant historian and a persuasive orator. He spoke with the same spirit with which he fought,

and had he devoted himself to the bar, he would have been the only man capable of rivalling Cicero.

Calētes, ium, v. Calēti, ōrum, a people of Gaul, whose country lay a little to the north of the mouth of the Sequāna, (*Seine*.)

Cantābri, ōrum, (sing. Cantāber, ri,) a very brave and warlike people, who inhabited the northern part of Spain. They seem to have extended from the mouths of Ibērus, (*Ebro*,) to the shores of the Bay of Biscay, which was, from them, called *Oceānus Cantabriticus*. The term is often used to denote the Spaniards in general.

Cantium, i, n. (*Kent*,) a district of England which, in modern times, is bounded by the Strait of Dover, (*Fretum Gallicum*, vel, *Britannicum*) on the east, by Sussex on the south, on the west by Surry, and on the north by the Thames, (*Tamesis*,) which separates it from Essex. But the ancient boundaries of Kent are not precisely ascertained.

Carcāso, ōnis, f. *Carcassonne*, a town of that part of Provincia, now called Languedoc, on the river Atax, (*Aude*.) Here are preserved some records of the place, written upon the bark of trees.

Carfulēnus, i, an officer of Cæsar, who was dispatched to attack the highest part of the camp of the Alexandrians, which he carried. He was afterwards killed in an engagement at Mutīna, fighting against Anthony.

Carnūtes, um, v. ti, ōrum, a powerful nation of Gaul, between the rivers Sequāna, (*Seine*,) and Ligēris, (*Loire*,) south of Lutetia, (*Paris*.)

Carvilius, i, one of the four kings of Cantium, (*Kent*,) who, at the command of Cassivelaunus, made an attack on Cæsar's naval camp, in which they were repulsed, and lost a great number of men.

Cassi, ōrum, *the hundred of Caishow*, a British nation, supposed to be subject to Cassivelaunus at the time Cæsar invaded Britain, who submitted to that conqueror

Cassius, i, (Lucius, i,) a Roman consul, who was killed by the Helvetii, who defeated his army and obliged it to pass under the yoke.

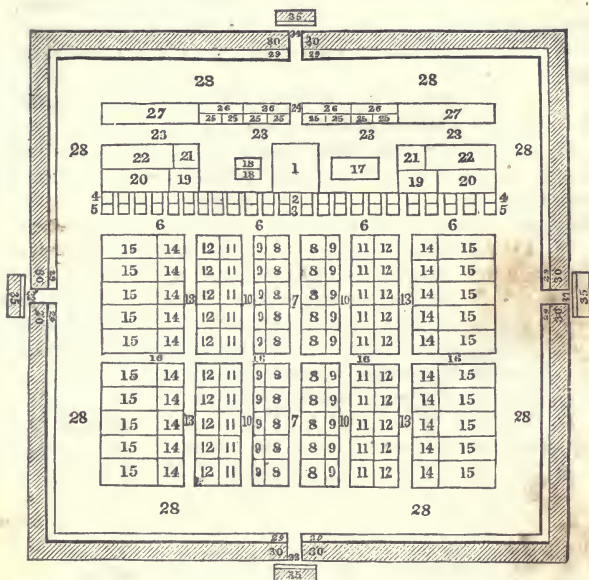
Cassivelaunus, i, one of the British kings, whose territories lay on the north bank of the Tamēsis, (*Thames*,) towards the mouth of that river. On the arrival of the Roman forces in Britain under Cæsar, he was, by common consent, appointed Commander-in-chief. After making some attempts to check the progress of the

enemy, he was obliged to submit, and accept of such terms as Cæsar chose to offer.

Casticus, i, one of the Sequāni, the son of Catamantalēdis, whom Orgetōrix persuaded to seize on the sovereignty of the state, which his father had formerly held.

Castra, ōrum, a camp. The discipline of the Romans was chiefly conspicuous in their marches and encampments. They never passed a night, even in the longest marches, without pitching a camp, and fortifying it with a rampart and ditch. The form of the Roman camp, till later ages, was square, and was always of the same figure. It was surrounded by a ditch, usually nine feet deep, and twelve feet broad, and by a rampart or *vallum*, composed of the earth dug from the ditch, and having sharp stakes stuck into it. The camp had four gates, one on each side. They were called *porta PRÆTORIA*, next the enemy; *DESUMANA*, opposite to the former; *porta PRINCIPALIS DEXTRA*, on the right side of the camp, at one end of the main street called *PRINCIPIA*; and *PRINCIPALIS SINISTRA*, on the left side, at the other end. The camp was divided into two parts, called the upper and lower, by the main street just mentioned. In the lower part the troops were disposed in the following order. The cavalry were in the middle; on both sides of them were the *triarii*, *principes*, and *hastāti*, or the third, second, and first Roman ranks; and next to these, on both sides, were the cavalry and foot of the allies, who were always posted in separate places, lest they should form any plots by being united. The *velites* commonly occupied the empty space between the ramparts and tents, which was 200 feet broad. The tents were covered with leather or skins, extended by means of ropes. In each tent were usually ten soldiers, with their *decanus* or petty officer who commanded them. The different divisions of the troops were separated by intervals called *VIAE*. Of these there were five longwise, *i. e.* running from the *decuman* towards the *prætorian* side; and three across, one in the lower part of the camp, called *quintāna*, and two in the upper, namely, the *principia*, and another between the *prætorium* and the prætorian gate. The following wood cut and illustration will give a good idea of its shape and arrangements.

GROUND PLAN OF THE ROMAN CAMP.



1. The *Prætorium*, or general's tent, with a sufficient space around for the tents of his suite.
2. Ground behind the tents of the *Tribunes*, for their horses, baggage, &c.
3. The tents of the *Tribunes*.
4. Ground behind the tents of the *Præfects of the Allies*, for their horses, baggage, &c.
5. The tents of the *Præfects of the Allies*.
6. A cross street, one hundred feet wide, called *Principia*. (*Vid. PRINCIPIA.*)
7. A cross street, fifty feet wide, on both sides of which were the tents of the *Roman horse*.
8. The *Horse* of two Roman legions, in ten *turmæ* or troops each.
9. The *Triarii* of two Roman legions (*Vid. TRIarii*), in ten maniples each, facing on two different streets.

10. Two streets, each fifty feet wide, between the *Triarii* and *Principes* of two legions.

11. The *Principes* of two Roman legions (*Vid. PRINCIPES*), in ten maniples each.

12. The *Hastati* of two Roman legions (*Vid. HASTATI*), in ten maniples each.

13. Two streets, each fifty feet wide, between the *Hastati* of the two Roman legions and the Horse of the Allies.

14. The Horse of the Allies, wanting the *Extraordinarii* (*Vid. No. 25*), and placed in two different parts of the camp. The forces of the allies, both cavalry and infantry, were always separated in this manner, to prevent plotting, as remarked above.

15. The Infantry of the Allies, wanting the *Extraordinarii*, and, like the horse, placed in two different parts of the camp.

16. The *Quintāna* (scil. *via*), a street fifty feet wide, running across the camp, between the fifth and sixth maniples of each line. Hence, as it comes after the fifth maniple, reckoned from the *Principia*, it received the name of *Quintāna*.

17. The *Quæstorium*, or Quæstor's tent.

18. The tents of the *Legati*. The space in front of these and the *Quæstorium* was called the *Forum*, where things were sold, &c.

19. *Evocāti Equites*, or Veteran Horse. (*Vid. EVOCATI*.)

20. *Evocāti Pedites*, or Veteran Foot.

21. *Ablecti Equites* (*Vid. No. 25*), or Horse of the Consular life-guards.

22. *Ablecti Pedites*, or foot of the Consular life-guards.

23. A cross street one hundred feet wide.

24. A street fifty feet wide.

25. *Extraordinarii Equites*. A third part of the allied horse, and a fifth part of the allied foot, were selected, and posted near the consul, under the name of *Extraordinarii*, and one troop of horse, and maniple of foot, called *ABLECTI*, or *Selecti*, to serve as his life-guard.

26. *Extraordinarii Pedites*.

27. Quarters for strangers coming to the camp.

28. A space two hundred feet broad, between the outermost tents and the rampart.

29. Rampart, or *Vallum*.

30. Ditch, usually nine feet deep and twelve feet broad.

31. *Porta Principālis Dextra*.

32. *Porta Principālis Sinistra*.

33. *Porta Decumāna* (i. e. *Decimāna*, from *decem*, ten,) so called because all the *tens* of the maniples end here.

34. *Porta Prætoria*.

35. A traverse breastwork, with a ditch, opposite to, and protecting, each of the gates. (*Anthon's Cæsar*.)

Catapulta, a military engine for discharging stones, arrows, and other missiles. (*Vid. BALISTA*.)

Catamantalēdes, is, a nobleman of the nation of the Sequāni, who, for many years, enjoyed the supreme authority over that people.

Cativolcus, i, a nobleman of the nation of the Eburōnes. He and Ambiōrix, at the instigation of Indutiomārus, excited the people to take up arms against the Romans. Having made an unsuccessful attack upon the Roman camp under the lieutenants, Titurius Sabīnus, and L. Aurunculēius Cotta, they demanded a conference, in which Ambiōrix stated, that from gratitude to Cæsar, he considered himself bound to inform his lieutenant, that all the states of Gaul had agreed to attack the Roman camp in one day, that a great body of Germans had passed the Rhine, and that no time was to be lost in joining Cicēro or Labiēnus, neither of whom were fifty miles distant. At the same time, he gave his solemn promise, that they should have a secure retreat through his territories. This artifice, through the folly or cowardice of Sabīnus, succeeded. They left their camp, were attacked by a powerful army under Ambiōrix and Cativolcus, and were almost to a man cut in pieces. Cæsar afterwards completely routed them; and Cativolcus, from his great age, being unable to bear the fatigues of war, poisoned himself by drinking the juice of the yew-tree.

Caturīges, gum, a people of Gaul, who lived near the Alpes Maritimæ, at the S. E. extremity of Dauphiné.

Cavarinus, i, a nobleman whom Cæsar, in prejudice of his brother Moritasgus, the reigning sovereign, appointed king over his countrymen, the Senōnes, an honor which his ancestors had long enjoyed. The Senōnes formed the design of publicly assassinating him, but having received intelligence of the plot, he saved his life by fleeing to the camp of Cæsar.

Celtæ, arum, the most powerful and numerous of all the nations of Gaul, who occupied nearly one-half of the country, and from whom that division was called *Celtica*. Their territories were bounded by the river Garumna, (*Garonne*,) on the south; the Sequāna, (*Seine*,) and the Matrōna, (*Marne*,) on the north; by Mount Jura on the east; and Mare Atlantīcum, (*Atlantic Ocean*,) on the west.

Cenimagni, ōrum, an ancient people of Britain, who, with the Se-gontiāci, Ancalites, Bibrōci, and Cassi, followed the example of the Trinobantes, and submitted to Cæsar. These nations are supposed to have inhabited the counties of *Essex, Middlesex, Norfolk, Hertford, Buckingham, Oxford, and Berkshire.*

Censor, is, a Censor, a Roman magistrate whose number from first to last was uniformly two. They were appointed (A. U. 312,) to take an account of the number of the people, and the value of their fortunes, and superintend the public morals. They were chosen from the most reputable persons of consular rank, at first only from the patricians but afterwards likewise from the plebians. They were chosen every five years, but continued in office only a year and a half. For any dishonorable action they had the power to erase the name of a Senator from the list, deprive an eques of his horse and ring, and any other citizen they could degrade and deprive of all the privileges of a Roman citizen, except liberty.

The title of Censor was even more honorable than that of Consul, though attended with less power. No one could be elected a second time, and those who filled it were remarkable for leading an irreproachable life; so that to be descended from a censorian family was considered a distinguished ornament of nobility.

Census, ūs, m. was a general review of the people, estimating their estates, and proportioning their share of the public taxes. Every man was obliged to give in to the Censors his own name, residence and occupation, his wife's name, and the names of his children with their ages, the number of his slaves, and a minute and accurate account of his property. The goods of the person, who made a false return, were confiscated, and he himself, after being scourged, was sold for a slave. By that act he had, in the opinion of the state, deemed himself unworthy of the privileges and honors of a Roman citizen. Servius Tullius, the 6th king of Rome, appointed the Census, in order to ascertain the number of men able to bear arms, and the amount of the whole wealth possessed by the citizens, and consequently what sums could be levied from them. It was held in the Campus Martius, where the Censors, seated in curule chairs, attended by their clerks and public officers, commanded the citizens to be called before them, each in his own tribe. If nothing immoral or improper could be charged against a senator or knight, they passed without remark; but if otherwise, the senators were expelled the senate, and the public horse taken from the knight. The other citizens were raised to a higher tribe, if their wealth had increased, or sunk to a lower

tribe, if diminished; improper conduct deprived them of their right of voting, or subjected them to be taxed like strangers. A minute register of the whole was kept, and must have been of great advantage to the whole community, as determining with precision not only their number, but also their wealth. It ought to have been held at the end of every five years; but it is manifest from Roman history, that this period was not pointedly observed. At the end of this survey of the people they were ordered to attend a lustration, called, from sacrificing, a sow, a sheep, and a bull, *Suovetaurilia*. The precedence at this sacrifice was decided by lot, and he on whom the lot fell was at the conclusion said "*lustrum condere*."

Centurio, *ōnis*, *f*, (from *centum*, a hundred,) a centurion or commander of a *hundred* men. The constitution of the Roman legion admitted of a gradation from the lowest centurion of the *Hastāti*, up to the first of the *Triarii*, who was called *Primipilus*, *q. v.* To the first captaincy, the meanest common soldier might aspire. Promotion in the Roman army could be obtained only by merit; appointments by purchase were unknown. This wise regulation produced the happiest effects. Besides each cohort having six centurions, and consequently each legion sixty, opened a wide field for promotion, and suggested numerous excitements to valor and heroism.

Centrōnes, *um* (B. G. I. 5,) a nation of Gaul in the Alpes Graiæ, who, along with the *Garocēli* and *Caturīges*, were defeated by Cæsar in several engagements. There was another tribe, or horde, of this name, who were subject to the *Nervii*, a nation of *Gallia Belgica*, (B. G. Ch. V. 38.)

Cherusci, *ōrum*, *m.* a nation of Germany, between the rivers *Albis*, (*Elbe*,) and the *Visurgis*, (*Weser*.)

Cicēro, *ōnis*, (Quintus Tullius,) the brother of Marcus Tullius Cicēro, the celebrated orator, was, after the expiration of his prætorship, proconsul of Asia for three years. He gained considerable reputation as one of Cæsar's lieutenants in Gaul. At the commencement of the civil war, he, in opposition to the advice of his brother, attached himself to Pompey. After Cæsar had defeated the republicans at *Pharsalia*, both Quintus and his son solicited the favor of the conqueror, by unjustly imputing their misconduct to the orator. So far was Cicero from resenting this injustice, that he used his utmost efforts for their safety and interest. Both perished in the proscription of the second triumvirate.

Cimberius, i, the brother of Nasua, who headed the 100 cantons of the Suēvi, who had left their native country, and encamped on the banks of the river Rhenus, (*Rhine*,) with the view of crossing that river, and settling in Gaul.

Cimbri, ōrum, (sing. Cimber, ri,) a German nation, supposed to be descended from the Asiatic Cimmerians, whose country was, from them, called the Chersonēsus Cimbrīca, (*Jutland*,) which now forms part of the kingdom of Denmark. About 113, B. C. the Cimbri, leaving their territories, which were both narrow and barren, and being joined by the Teutōnes, a neighboring people, defeated several German nations, and a Roman consul with his army, who had been sent against them. They invaded, and seem to have overrun, a great part of Gaul; and being strengthened by the accession of many of the tribes who inhabited that country, marched against Rome. After slaughtering the whole army of Cæpio and Mallius, except ten men and two generals, C. Marius marched against them, slew 120,000 and took 60,000 prisoners. Though only an inconsiderable people in the days of Tacitus, it is manifest, that the sagacity of that profound historian was apprehensive of the final destruction of the Roman state by the hordes of Germany, which actually happened about 300 years after his death.

Cingetōrix, īgis, a nobleman who headed that party in the state of the Trevīri, which was formerly attached to Cæsar. In consequence of his fidelity to the Romans, he was, by means of his father-in-law, Indutiomārus, declared a public enemy, and his estate confiscated.

Cingetōrix, īgis, one of the four kings of Cantium, (*Kent*,) who, by order of Cassivelaunus, made an attack on Cæsar's naval camp.

Clepsydra, æ, f. an instrument contrived to measure time by water. The merit of this invention belongs to the Egyptians, as well as the discovery of the sun-dial.

There were different kinds of Clepsydræ among the ancients; which, however, were all constructed on this principle, that the water ran through a narrow passage from one vessel to another, and that on the surface of the water in the lower vessel, to the side of which a scale of hours was affixed, floated a piece of cork, which shewed the hour. It is manifest the water would be discharged with a rapidity proportioned to the quantity, and that, of course, it ran fastest when the vessel was full, and gradually became slower as the less water remained. Hence if the upper vessel discharged its water in twelve hours, and the under one

was an exact cylinder having its height divided into 144 equal parts, the water in the first hour would rise twenty-three of these parts, in the second hour, twenty-one, in the third, nineteen, &c., and the last or twelfth hour only one part. The state of the atmosphere would have considerable influence on the clepsydra, a defect which the ingenuity of a modern French philosopher, William Amontons, has completely remedied. By means of several important inventions he also freed it from other less inconveniences to which it was subject; and rendered it a very accurate divisor of time.

Cocosātes, um, a people of Aquitania in Gaul, whose country lay along the coast of Oceānus Cantabricus, (*Bay of Biscay*.) to the north of the territories of the Tarbelli. Their chief town was Cocōsa.

Clypeus, i. a round shield of a smaller size than the *Scutum*, which see.

Cohors, tis, a division of the Roman legion. See *Legio*.

Comius, i, one of the nation of the Atrēbātes, hence called Comius Atrēbas, whom Cæsar appointed king over that people in return for his important services. He afterwards fell under the suspicion of Labiēnus, who employed C. Volusēnus Quādrātus to kill him in an interview. This perfidious design did not succeed. But in the scuffle, Comius was wounded in the head. He was, from that period, a violent enemy to the Romans. Being at last defeated, he was obliged to submit to Antony, which he did, on condition that he should not appear before any Roman. On these terms, Antony granted him peace.

Condrūsi, ōrum, a people of Belgic Gaul, who lived on the river Mosa, (*Mæse*, or *Meuse*,) north of Silva Arduenna.

Considius Longus, (Caius, i,) a partisan of Pompey, who was at one time the governor of Adrumētum. He committed several acts of enormous cruelty. Considius afterwards commanded at Tisdra a garrison of Gætulians, and, on hearing of the defeat of his party, fled from that town with his treasures. Escaping from these barbarians and taking the road for Numidia, he was pursued by them, and to obtain possession of his money, they put him to death.

Consul, ūlis, a consul; the official title of the two chief magistrates of the Roman state. They were first created after the expulsion of the kings, A. U. 244. They had the same badges as the kings, except the crown, and nearly the same power. In time of war they had supreme command; one accompanied the army as com-

mander-in-chief, and the other remained at Rome; or, if necessary, commanded another army, leaving the government in charge of the *Prætor*. They levied soldiers, appointed the greater part of the officers, and provided what was necessary for their support.

When any dangerous conjuncture arose, the consuls were armed with absolute power by the Senate, which solemnly decreed that they should take care that the republic received no harm. If any serious tumult or sedition occurred, they called the citizens to arms by proclaiming "Let those who wish to save the republic follow me;" and this was usually sufficient to check it.

The authority of the consuls was first impaired by the creation of Tribunes of the people, and afterwards by the Emperors. The office however was retained, and the consuls, after their power was gone, were still employed in consulting the Senate, administering justice, managing the public games and the like; and the year was usually characterized by their names.

At first the consuls were chosen from the Patricians only, but afterwards from the Plebians also. They were elected annually, and to be a candidate it was necessary to be forty-three years of age,—to have gone through the inferior offices of *Quæstor*, *Ædile*, and *Prætor*,—and to be present in a private station.

Proconsul, *ûlis*, a proconsul, a person invested with consular authority for the government of a conquered country. The consuls, at the expiration of their offices, were generally appointed proconsuls, and soon after quitted the city to take charge of their province. Their powers, though subject to the will of the senate and authority of the people, were very extensive. They had the appointment of the taxes and of the contributions imposed on the country, and it cannot be denied, that avarice and rapacity too often trampled on the principles of justice and humanity. To the honor of the Senate it must be mentioned, that they frequently punished acts both of extortion and cruelty. These crimes, however, were generally very flagrant before they became the subject of prosecution.

Proconsulâris, *is*, *e*, of or belonging to a proconsul, or the proconsulship, proconsular.

Consulâris, *e*, *adj.* of or belonging to a consul; consular; one who had been a consul; a man of consular rank.

Cotta, *æ*, (*Lucius Aurunculæius*,) a lieutenant in Cæsar's army, who suspected the stratagem of *Ambiörix*, and therefore endeavored to convince his colleague *Sabinus* of the impropriety of following the treacherous advice of that crafty Gaul, but without

effect. Unwilling that any enmity, from difference of opinion, should exist between them, he at last yielded, and his compliance cost him his life. Ambiōrix, at the distance of two miles from the camp, lay in ambuscade, and when crossing a large valley, made a furious attack on the Roman forces, in which Cotta, after displaying singular bravery, was killed, and almost the whole of the two legions.

Crassus, i, (Marcus Licinius,) surnamed *Dives*, on account of his prodigious wealth, was, in early life, very poor, but by trafficking in slaves, and by other dishonorable practices, soon acquired great riches. To escape the cruelties of Cinna, he fled to Spain, where he had formerly passed some years with his father, when governor of that country; and remained eight months concealed in a cave. On hearing of Cinna's death, he raised 2,500 men, for whom he procured shipping, sailed to Africa, and attached himself to Metellus Pius. The friendship of Crassus with Metellus was not of long continuance. He then formed an alliance with Sulla, and was of great service to him in the civil war. The military talents of Crassus were greatly inferior to those of Pompey, who, on that account, necessarily stood higher in the favor of Sulla. Hence the enmity of these two powerful citizens, which all the address and eloquence of Cæsar could scarcely subdue. The great object of Crassus seems to have been the accumulation of wealth. Besides buying the estates of the proscribed, he had recourse to other base and scandalous means in order to increase his overgrown fortune.

Crassus was not however, destitute of bravery or generosity. He was honored with an ovation for putting an end to the war with Spartacus by a decisive engagement, in which 12,000 of the slaves were killed. He used frequently to lend money to his friends without interest. After entertaining the populace at 10,000 tables, giving to every citizen corn to support him for three months, and consecrating the tenth part of his property to Hercules, he was worth 7,100 talents. He used to say that no man, who could not maintain an army ought to be called rich. His slaves whom he had ingenuity enough to employ so profitably that they not only defrayed their own expenses, but added greatly to the wealth of their master, were, in number, equal to an army.

A reconciliation between Crassus and Pompey was, at last, effected by Cæsar. The iniquitous combination of these three men to destroy the liberties of their fellow-citizens, was called the first triumvirate. Less solicitous for honor than riches, Crassus,

in this division of the empire, chose Syria for his province, in expectation of making large additions to his fortune. Without the authority of the senate, he crossed the Euphrates and advanced against that country. But he was deceived by Agbārus, an Arabian, defeated by the Parthians, and his army nearly annihilated. He then fled with a small number of his soldiers to Carræ, a town of Mesopotamia, and was prevailed on to meet Surēna, on pretence of negotiating a peace, where he was treacherously put to death. The Parthians cut off his head, and, in contempt of his avarice, poured melted gold into his mouth. The bond of union between Pompey and Cæsar, which had been greatly weakened by the death of Julia, was finally dissolved by that of Crassus. They had now recourse to arms, and their struggles for the superiority terminated in the final extinction of Roman liberty.

Cretenses, ium, the inhabitants of Creta, æ, vel, Crete, es, f. a large island in the Mediterranean Sea, opposite to Mare Ægeum, (*Archipelago*.) From its principal city, it is now called *Candia*. Cres, Cretis, m. et Cressa, æ, f. a native of Crete or *Candia*. Cretis, idis, of Crete or *Candia*, with relation to a female, or to a noun feminine.

Curiosolitæ, ārum, and Curiosolites, um, a people of Gallia Celtica, among Armoricas Civitates, whose country was afterwards called *Bretagne*

D.

DACI, ōrum, the inhabitants of Dacia a country corresponding to the modern Wallachia, Transylvania, Moldavia, and that part of Hungary which lies to the east of the Tibiscus or *Teiss*; B. VI. Ch. 25.

Danubius, i, the *Danube*, the largest river in Europe, rises in the black forest in Germany, (according to Strabo and Pliny, in the mountain Abnōba,) runs in an easterly direction, through Austria, Germany, Hungary, part of Turkey in Europe, and discharges itself into Pontus Euxīnus, (the *Black Sea*.) The ancients gave the name of Ister to the eastern part of this river, after its junction with the Savus, (*Save*.) Though of great breadth and depth in many places, it is not generally navigable on account of the cataracts. Strabo, Diodōrus Sicūlus, Tacītus, and Pliny, have given descriptions of this river in many respects different, and all

exceedingly inaccurate. With the whole course of the Danube the Greeks and Romans were very imperfectly acquainted. Their knowledge of the countries to the north of this large river, was almost wholly obtained by vague report from unlettered barbarians, and, of course, very incorrect.

In the decline of the Roman empire, it became better known to that people, in consequence of almost all the barbarous nations, who assailed that state, commencing hostilities by ravaging the country on the banks of the Danube. But learning had sunk with the state, and no minute or accurate account of this river is found in classic authors.

Decumāna (*porta*), the rear gate of the Roman camp, (See *Castra*) so called because the tens of the maniples were stationed there.

Decurio, ōnis, m. (from *decem*, ten,) an officer of the cavalry among the Romans, who commanded ten men. Each *Turma*, or troop of horse, had three Decuriōnes, and each Decurio chose a subaltern, who was, on that account, called *Optio*.

Delectus, ūs, (from *deligo*, to choose,) a military term to denote the levying or enrolment of soldiers. The consuls, after they entered on their office, appointed a day, on which all who were of the military age (from 17 to 46,) should be present in the capitol. On the day appointed, the consuls seated in their curule chairs, assisted by the military or legionary tribunes, held a levy, unless hindered by the tribunes of the commons. It was determined by lot in what order the tribes should be called. The consuls ordered such as they pleased to be cited out of each tribe; and every one was obliged to answer to his name under a severe penalty. They were careful to choose those first who had what were thought lucky names; as, *Valerius*, *Sabinus*, *Statorius*, &c. Their names were written down on tables, hence, *Scribere milites*, to enlist, to levy, or to raise soldiers.

Diablintes, ium, et Diablitæ, et Dianlitæ, arum, a people of Gallia Celtica, on the river Meduāna, (*Maine*.) Their chief town was Neodūnum, afterwards Diablintes, now *Jublens*.

Dictator, ōris, m. a Dictator, an extraordinary Magistrate at Rome, who possessed absolute authority over not only the lives and fortunes of his fellow citizens, but even over the laws themselves. A free government could admit of such an officer being appointed only on important and alarming conjunctures. We find from Roman history that the first Dictator was chosen during the wars with the Latins, (499 B. C.) and that his appointment was a consequence of the plebeians refusing to enlist, and of the consuls

being unable to protect the state. Unless when threatened with imminent danger, either from domestic sedition or foreign wars, the consuls held the highest office, and the laws set bounds to their powers; but the Dictator knew no restriction. Twenty-four Lic-tors preceded him, and, whilst he remained in office, the functions of the other magistrates, with the exception of that of Tribunes of the people, were suspended. He proclaimed war, levied forces, and marched against the enemy; or made peace or disbanded them whenever he pleased. Execution followed his decision, and from his judgment lay no appeal. At the expiration of his office, which could not exceed six months, he might be called to an account for his conduct; but few instances of it occur in the annals of Rome. Bravery does not extirpate credulity, nor does greatness of mind obliterate the fictions of ignorance. Though a nation of intrepid warriors, the Romans were credulous and superstitious. Hence to avert a plague, to remove some dreadful calamity, or to stop the progress of an invading enemy, they sometimes named a Dictator to drive a nail into the temple of Jupiter, which trivial and absurd ceremony they thought possessed these virtues. They sometimes too appointed a Dictator to hold the comitia, or to celebrate public festivals, and once to choose Senators. But for these purposes, except on particular occasions, the state had seldom recourse to the election of that magistrate.

Dies, ei, m. & f. a day, or that space of time which elapses from the first appearance of light in the morning, till the return of darkness at night. It is more generally used to denote the time the sun is visible, or above the horizon, which strictly speaking constitutes a solar day. The term has frequently a more extended signification, and includes the night. This forms the Astronomical day, and has also been called the Natural or Civil day. It exceeds the Siderial day, or a complete revolution of the earth on its axis, by three minutes and fifty-six seconds. Different nations begin the day at different times. Among the Romans the natural day began when the sun first appeared above the horizon, which was called the first hour, and ended with that luminary disappearing, which was the twelfth hour. This mode of dividing that space of time during which the sun is visible into twelve parts, though still followed in Turkey, must have been attended with great inconvenience. The hours thus varied with the length of the day and those of the night were subject to the same alteration. Besides, the hours of these two portions of time could be equal only twice a year, viz: at the Equinoxes, (See Hora.) The civil day

began at midnight, when the third watch commenced. With us, and most of the nations of Europe, the day is reckoned from midnight to midnight. The Jews began their day at sun-setting, and like the Romans divided it into twelve hours; and the night with them also consisted of twelve hours. It may not be improper to observe that astronomers generally compute from noon to noon, reckoning in a numeral succession from one to twenty-four hours, and not by two twelves agreeably to common usage.

Dis, itis, the god of riches, Pluto.

Divico, ōnis, a nobleman of great influence among the Helvetii, who commanded the army in the war against Cassius, and was at the head of the embassy sent by that state to Cæsar, after three-fourths of their forces had crossed the Arar, (*Saône*), and he had attacked and killed a great part of the other fourth.

Divitiacus, i, a nobleman of the Ædui, who had great influence with Cæsar, in consequence of his steady attachment to the Romans.

Druïdes, um, v. Druïdæ, arum, (a term of doubtful etymology), Druids, the priests of the ancient Britons, Gauls, and Germans. Besides supreme authority in all matters of religion, their power extended to all public and private differences, and what is of much greater consequence, to making, explaining, and executing the laws. This exorbitant jurisdiction was necessarily attended with every mark of power. They were exempted from taxes and military service, and their persons were held sacred and inviolable. Among the Gauls there were only two classes of any note, the Druids and Equites, of which that of the Druids was the more illustrious. Their authority in many instances, surpassing that of the nobles, it is not surprising that they were, in general, sons of the first families. The worship and sacrifices of these priests were performed in deep groves, chiefly under an oak, which was their favorite tree. It was reckoned unlawful to commit any of their doctrines to writing; hence, many of their peculiar tenets are now unknown. It is generally supposed they believed in the immortality of the soul, and also the metempsychosis. Of natural philosophy, astronomy, arithmetic, and botany, it cannot be doubted their knowledge was very considerable. To the study of rhetoric they paid great attention, and to the charms of their eloquence, much of the admiration and power which they enjoyed, may be justly ascribed. Britain was, according to Cæsar, the great school of the Druids, whose chief settlement was Anglesey, called *Mona* by Tacitus. The natives of Gaul and Germany, who wished to be thoroughly versant in the mysteries of

Druidism, resorted to this island to complete their studies. At what time the Druids were wholly suppressed in Britain, is uncertain. But from the introduction of Christianity, their power and influence began to decline. It is worthy of remark, that some of their superstitious doctrines, and modes of predicting future events, are not, at this day, entirely forgotten in many parts of the island.

Dubis, is, m. the *Doux*, a river of Gallia, (*France*,) which originates in a small lake near mount Jura, and after a southwest course of sixty leagues, falls into the Arar, (*Saone*,) near to Ca-billōnum, (*Chalons*.)

Dumnōrix, īgis, one of the Ædui, and brother of Divitiācus. He persuaded the noblemen of Gallia, (*France*,) not to go with Cæsar into Britain, withdrew privately from the Roman camp, and was killed by the soldiers who were sent in pursuit of him, in consequence of his obstinacy in refusing to return. His character will be found in B. G. I. 18.

Durocortōrum, i, n. the capital of the Remi, now called *Rheims*, on the *Vesle*, one of the branches of the river Axōna, (*Aisne*.)

E.

EBURŌNES, um, (*Eburōnes*, in Greek), a people of Gallia Belgica, whose territories lay on both sides of the river Mosa, (*Mæse*, or *Meuse*,) at its junction with the Sabis, (*Sambre*.) On their being dispossessed, they were succeeded by the Tungri. They were under the vassalage of the Trevīri. Cæsar attempted to extirpate this nation; but this barbarous design, even from his own account, he was unable to carry into full effect.

Eburovīces, um, a people of Gallia, (*France*,) on the left bank of the Sequāna, (*Seine*.) The Lexovii were between them and the sea. Their chief city was at first called Mediolānum, and afterwards Eburovīces, now *Evreux*.

Elusātes, ium, a people of Aquitania, who lived on the river Atur, (*Adour*,) whose principal city was Elūsa, æ, f. (*Euse*.)

Equītes, (from *equus* and *eo*,) cavalry. Of these the number belonging to each legion was 300, called *justus equitātus*, or *ala*. They were divided into ten *turmæ*, or troops of thirty each; and each *turma* into three *decuriæ*, or bodies of ten men. The office of the Equītes at first was to serve in the army. They were sœ

lected both from the patricians and plebians; they were required, when chosen, to be 18 years of age, and to possess a fortune of 400 sestertia, (\$15,472.) See Gr. App. V.

Eratosthēnes, is, a native of Cyrēne, (Cyrenæus,) the scholar of Callimāchus, and of Aristo of Chios, and the second who was intrusted with the Alexandrian library, devoted his time to criticism and philosophy. He was eminent as a poet and mathematician, but more distinguished as an astronomer and geographer. He died in the year 194 B. C. in the 82d year of his age. B. VI. Ch. 24.

Essui, ōrum, supposed to be also called Saii, ōrum, a people of Gallia, whose territories lay on the Olēna, (*Orne*,) adjoining to the Diablintes and Auleri Eburōnes.

Esubii, ōrum. This word occurs only in B. G. III. 7, where the readings are very different. Some copies have Esubios, or Eusubios, and others Lexuvios. The Greek has Unellos, to which Dr. Clarke, in a note, seems to give the preference, although he has retained Eusubios in the text.

Evocāti, (from *evōco*, to call out,) veteran soldiers, who had served out their time and received their discharge, but who were sometimes again *called out* into public service. This class were highly respected, and were exempted from the drudgery of military service to which the other soldiers were subjected.

Excubiæ, arum, watches either by day or night. Vigiliæ, watches by night only. These were relieved at the end of every three hours; hence the night, from sunset till sunrise, was divided into four watches, called the *first, second, third, and fourth*. See Gr. App. I.

Exercitus, ūs, (from *exerceo*, to exercise,) an army, a body of men trained to, or *exercised* in military service. (*Agmen*, from *ago*, an army on the march, or in marching order. *Acies*, an army drawn up in a *line*, or in battle array.) A consular army consisted of two Roman legions, (See *Legio*,) with the proper number of cavalry, and two legions of the allies with their cavalry, making in all about 20,000 men, or in the time of Polybius, 18,600.

F.

Fabius, i, (Caius,) one of Cæsar's lieutenants.

Fabius, i, (Quintus Fabius Maximus) a Roman consul who defeated the Avernî and Rutēni.

Funditōres, um, (from *funda*, a sling.) Slingers, a class of warriors usually joined with the *Velītes*, but not properly a part of them. They were armed with slings and stones, or bullets of lead, which from practice they threw with great precision and with so much force that neither buckler nor head-piece could resist their impetuosity. They were generally obtained from the Balearic Isles, Achaia, Crete, Arabia, &c., the Balearians being considered the best. See *Velītes*.

G.

GALBA, æ, the name of a branch of the Sulpicii, v. Sulpitii, or, according to others, the surname of the founder of that tribe.

Galba, æ, the king of the Suessiōnes at the time Cæsar invaded Gaul. On account of his knowledge and love of justice, he was appointed commander-in-chief of the forces raised by the Belgian states, against the power of Rome, in the second year of the Gallic war.

Galba, æ, (Sergius) was the son of C. Galba, and grandson of Servius, or Sergius Galba, a celebrated orator and the first distinguished character of that family. He held the rank of lieutenant in Cæsar's army during the Gallic war, and afterwards joined the conspiracy, which the Republican party formed against the life of that ambitious and unprincipled general.

Galea, a helmet, a defensive piece of armor, made of brass or iron, which came down to the shoulders but left the face uncovered.

Gallia,* æ, now *France*, (See the map,) was an extensive and populous country of Europe, bounded on the north by the British Channel, on the east by the Rhine, Mount Jura and the Alps; on the south by the Mediterranean and Spain; and on the west by the Atlantic Ocean. In the time of Cæsar it was divided into three parts; Gallia Belgica, or the country of the BELGÆ (now *Belgium*) occupying the northern part; Gallia Celtica, or the country of the CELTÆ, or Celts, by far the largest, and occupying the middle portion; and AQUITANIA, lying between the Garumna (*Garonne*), and the Pyrenees,—much smaller than either of the others. Adjoining Gaul on the east, and separated from it by Mount Jura,

* Cæsar does not use this term always in precisely the same sense. In B. I. Ch. 1, it means the whole of Gaul not then subject to the Romans; and in the same chapter it is used to denote the central division, or that possessed by the Celts. It is used in the same restricted sense, B. III. Ch. 2.

lay HELVETIA, (now part of *Switzerland*,) extending from Mount Jura to the Rhine, on the east; and from Lake Lemannus (*Geneva*) and the Rhone on the south, to the Rhine on the north. On the south and eastern border of Gallia lay what was called PROVINCIA, the Roman Province. (See *Provincia*.) Each of these great divisions contained within them numerous nations or tribes, all living under their respective kings or chiefs, all of which were finally brought under subjection to the Romans. The whole of this extensive country was called by the Romans *Gallia Transalpina*, Gaul beyond the Alps, to distinguish it from the northern part of Italy, which they called *Gallia Cisalpina*.

In the 27th year before the Christian æra, and twenty years after the conquest of Gaul was completed by C. Julius Cæsar, Augustus Cæsar made a new division of the whole, including Provincia Romana and Helvetia, into four grand divisions, in which more attention was paid to equality in the extent of the provinces than to the nations that inhabited them. Aquitania was extended northward and eastward to the Liger, (*Loire*,) Gallia Belgica on its eastern border was extended southward, taking in part of Gallia Celtica, and the whole country of the Helvetii. These four divisions were Gallia Belgica, Gallia Celtica, Aquitania, and Gallia Narbonensis (formerly Provincia, or Provincia Romana). These four divisions were again subdivided into seventeen provinces in all. And it is this division which is exhibited in the maps of ancient geography commonly in use. In the map accompanying this work, the division of the country in the time of Cæsar, and the names by which these divisions were then known, have been preferred as more suitable for such a work as this.

The whole country of Gaul from the time of its conquest by Cæsar, 47 years B. C., remained subject to the Romans, and a part of their vast empire for five hundred and fifty years. On the final dismemberment of that empire, Gaul being conquered by the Franks, (or Freemen,) a confederacy of warlike nations bordering on the Rhine, was from them called France about the beginning of the sixth century.

Galli, ōrum, the Gauls, or the inhabitants of Gaul. Gallus, i, a Gaul; one of the inhabitants of Gaul.

Gallus, i, (Marcus Trebius.) a prefect or Tribune of the soldiers, sent by P. Crassus, to forage among the Curiosolitæ.

Garites, um, a people of Aquitania, to the north of the Ausci.

Garumna, æ, m. the *Garonne*, a river of France, which rises in the valley of Arran, to the south of St. Bernard, runs with rapidity N. N. E. to Tolōsa, (*Toulouse*,) afterwards N. N. W. to Guienne, and falls into Oceānus Cantabrīcus, vel, Mare Aquitanicum, (the *Bay of Biscay*.) The general course of this river, which extends to about 250 miles, is northwest. After its junction with the Duranius, (*Dordogne*,) below Burdegalia, (*Bordeaux*,) it assumes the name of *Gironde*. According to Julius Cæsar's division of Gaul, the Garonne was the boundary of Aquitania, and separated that district from Gallia Celtica, It is navigable to Toulouse, and communicates with the Mediterranean by means of the Royal Canal, about 180 miles long, made through Languedoc by Louis XIV.

Genēva, æ, f. *Geneva*, a town at the western extremity of Lacus Lemānnus, (the *Lake of Geneva*,) on the south bank of the Rhodānus, (*Rhone*.) From Genēva towards Mount Jura, Cæsar raised a mole or rampart of earth, nineteen miles in length.

In modern times, Geneva is a considerable city, nearly two miles in circumference, and contains thirty thousand inhabitants. Besides being neatly built, it is strongly fortified, and remarkable for its beautiful situation, fine walks, and delightful prospects. Calvin spent the latter part of his life at Geneva, and his followers have, ever since, held the government of the city.

Germania, æ, f. *Germany*, a large country of Europe, bounded on the south by the Danubius, (*Danube*;) on the east by the Vistūla, (*Vistula*;) on the north by Codānus Sinus, vel, Mare Suevicum, (the *Baltic Sea*;) and on the west by the Rhenus, (*Rhine*,) and Oceānus Germanicus, (the *German Sea*.)

Germānus, i, pl. i, ōrum, the people of Germany; Germans.

Getūli, ōrum, (sing. Getūlus, i,) the inhabitants of Getulia, or Gætulia, æ, f. *Biledulgerid*, a large country of Africa, to the south of Mauritania and Numidia. It formed part of the kingdom of Massinissa. Sallust, from books written in the Punic language which belonged to Hiempsal, gives the following character of the Getūli and Libyes:—"Africa was at first possessed by the Getulians and Libyans, a savage and untutored people, who lived on the flesh of wild beasts, or grass of the field, like cattle; subject to no established customs, laws or government, a race of wanderers, who had no settled habitation, and who lay down to rest wherever night overtook them."—Sal. Bel. Jug. 18.

Gladius, i, a sword. The Roman sword was short, straight, and heavy, both for cutting and thrusting. It was worn on the right

side, so as in drawing not to interfere with the shield. The long sword of the cavalry was curved, and was worn on the left side. Gordūni, ōrum, a people of the northern part of Gallia Belgica, subject to the Nervii, whose territories lay along the sea-coast, to the north of the Morīni.

Graiocēli, ōrum, an ancient nation of Gaul, whose territories seem to have been adjacent to those of the Centrōnes and Caturīges, a people who lived among the Alps.

Grudii, ōrum, a neighboring nation to the Gordūni. Their country was bounded on the north by the mouths of the Scaldis, (*Scheldt*.)

H.

Harūdes, um, a people of Germania, (*Germany*), on the north bank of the Danubius, (*Danube*), towards the source of that river.

Hastāti, ōrum, the name given to the first rank of the Roman legion (See *Légio*.)

Helvetia, æ, f. *Switzerland*, a country of a triangular form, bounded on the north by the river Rhenus, (*Rhine*), and Lacus Brigantinus, (*Lake of Constance*), which separate it from Vindelicia and Germania, *Germany*; on the south by the Rhodānus, (*Rhone*), and Lacus Lemānus, (*the Lake of Geneva*), which divides it from Provincia Romāna; and on the west by Mount Jura which protected them from the Gauls. Hence it is manifest that Helvetia was of less extent than Switzerland. Cæsar (B. G. I. 1,) seems to consider the Helvetii as Gauls. In Lib. I. cap 24, he says, *Helvetii—phalange factâ*, by which is to be understood simply, that they fought in closé order, not that they drew up their troops precisely in the form of the Macedonian Phalanx, so celebrated in ancient history.

Helvetii, ōrum, the people of Helvetia; the Helvetians.

Hercynia, æ, f. a very extensive forest of Germany, the breadth of which, according to Cæsar, was nine days journey, and its length exceeded sixty. It extended from the territories of the Helvetii, Namnētes, and Raurāci, along the Danubius, (*Danube*), to the country of the Daci and Anartes; then turning to the north, it spread over many large tracts of land, and is said to have contained many different animals, unknown in other countries, of which Cæsar describes two or three kinds. Since the other forests of Germany were only branches of the Hercynian, some writers have considered it as covering nearly the whole of that

extensive territory. As the country became more inhabited, the grounds were gradually cleared, and few vestiges of the ancient forest remain in modern times.

Hiberna, ōrum, winter quarters. The wars of the Romans were prosecuted chiefly in the summer. When the weather and the state of the country became unfavorable to military operations the troops were withdrawn from the field, and led into winter quarters, (*hiberna*.) These were strongly fortified and furnished with every accommodation, like a city, containing storehouses, (*armaria*,) workshops, (*fabricæ*;) an infirmary, (*valetudinarium*;) &c. Hence, from them many towns in Europe, and particularly in England, are supposed to have had their origin. This appears to be indicated by the terminations *cester*, or *chester*, from *castra*.

Hibernia, æ, f. *Ireland*, a considerable island in Mare Atlanticum, (the *Atlantic Ocean*.) It is washed on the east by Oceānus Virginus, (*St. George's Channel*;) which separates it from England; on the north by Mare Hibernicum, (*Irish Sea*;) which divides it from Scotland; and on all other parts by Mare Atlanticum, (the *Atlantic Ocean*;) of which St. George's Channel, and the Irish Sea, form but very small parts.

Hiberni, ōrum, the inhabitants of Hibernia.

Hispania, æ, f. *Spain*, a large country of Europe, bounded on the south by Fretum Gaditanum, or Herculeum, (the *Strait of Gibraltar*;) on the east by the Mediterranean, which was known among the Romans by the appellation of *Nostrum Mare*, and among the Greeks, of *Mare Internum*; on the north by the Pyrenæi Montes, (*Pyrenees*;) which separate it from Gallia, (*France*;) and Oceānus Cantabricus, (the *Bay of Biscay*;) on the west by Lusitania, (*Portugal*, included in Hispania Ulterior,) and Mare Atlanticum, (the *Atlantic Ocean*;) which the Greeks called *Mare Externum*. Its greatest length, from east to west, is 600 miles, and its greatest breadth 550. The superficial contents of this country are about 148,000 square miles. Spain, including Portugal, was, by the Romans, divided into two parts, Hispania Citerior, (*Hither Spain*;) and Hispania Ulterior, (*Farther Spain*;) hence, *duæ Hispaniæ*, the two Spains, or *Hispaniæ*, Spains. The former, or northern, comprehending an extent of country equal to three-fourths of modern Spain, the latter, or southern, the rest of the country. These two divisions were sometimes governed by proconsuls, but more commonly by prætors.

In the reign of Augustus, Hispania Citerior was, from Tarrāco, its principal city, called *Tarraconensis*, and Hispania Ulterior

was divided into *Lusitania and Bætica*. The former appellation was derived from the *Lusitani*, the most powerful of the nations who inhabited that country, and the latter, from *Bætis*, the *Gualquivir*, a very large river, which watered that province.

Hispani, ōrum, the people of *Hispania*.

Hora, æ, f. an hour. Among the Romans it was the twelfth part of the day. The first hour commenced with the rising of the sun, and the twelfth ended with his setting. It is manifest that the portion of time denominated an hour by them, was constantly changing, and was of equal length to our hour only at the equinoxes. At these two periods of the year, and at them only, their first hour corresponded to our 7 o'clock in the morning; the second to eight, third to 9, fourth to 10, and fifth to 11; but their sixth hour or noon (*meridies*) coincided exactly with our 12 o'clock noon, or mid-day throughout the whole year. Their 7th then answered to our 1 in the afternoon, 8th to 2, 9th to 3, 10th to 4, 11th to 5, and 12th to 6. At the summer solstice, or longest day, the sun rises at Rome a few minutes past 4 o'clock, and sets the same number of minutes before 8, consequently their hour is, at that time, nearly $\frac{1}{4}$ longer than ours, and at the winter solstice it will be as much shorter.

I.

Iccius, i, m. one of the ambassadors whom the *Rhemi* sent to *Cæsar* in the second year of the Gallic war.

Iccius, i, (sc. portus,) a harbor in the country of the *Morini*, in *Gallia Belgica*, which, according to some, was *Boulogne*, and, according to others, *Vissant*, or *Calais*. *Ptolemy* mentions it as a promontory, although it cannot be doubted that there was likewise a cognominal harbor. From his description, this seems to be the place which he had in view. It could not be *Calais*. *Cæsar* set out from *Iccius Portus*, when he sailed the second time for Britain.

Idus, uum, f. the *Ides*, one of the divisions of the Roman month. In March, July, and October, the *Ides* were on the 15th, and in the other months, on the 13th. Like the *Kalends*, and *Nones*, the *Ides* were reckoned backwards. (See *Gr. App. I.*)

Illyricum, (Croatia, Bosnia, and Slavonia,) a country opposite to Italy, bordering on the Adriatic. It was bounded on the south by Macedonia; on the east by *Mæsia* and *Pannonia*; on the north by

Noricum; and on the west by Histia and Mare Adriaticum, vel. Supërum, (the *Gulf of Venice*.)

Imanuentius, i, m. a Briton, the father of Mandubratius, and king of the Trinobantes. He was killed by Cassivellaunus.

Impedimenta, òrum, baggage; (from *impedio*, to hinder.) The heavier baggage of the Romans, such as tents, mills, &c. was carried on beasts of burden; sometimes, though more seldom, on baggage wagons, (*carri*.) Every thing else was carried by the soldiers themselves, each of whom usually carried provisions for fifteen days, usually corn, sometimes dressed food, a saw, a basket, a mattock or axe, a reaper's hook and leathern thong, a chain, a pot, usually three or four stakes, sometimes more, for the *vallum*, amounting in all, exclusive of armor, to 60 pounds; and under this load they commonly marched 20 miles a day, sometimes more.

Indutiomärus, i, a chief man among the Treviri, father-in-law to Cingetórix, who attacked Labiënus, but was repulsed, and slain.

Italia, æ, f. *Italy*, a large and celebrated country of Europe, bounded on the south by Fretum Siculum, (the *Strait of Messina*,) which separates it from Sicily; on the northeast by Mare Adriaticum, or Supërum, (the *Gulf of Venice*,) which divides it from Græcia, (*Greece*,) now part of *Turkey in Europe*. The Alps, (*Alps*,) form the boundary between Italy and Germany on the north; and on the southwest it is washed by that part of the Mediterranean, formerly called Mare Tyrrhenum, Tuscum, or Infërum, now the *Tuscan Sea*. The Appeninus, (*Appenines*,) forms a ridge of mountains which extends from the Alps to Rhegium, (*Reggio*,) the whole length of the country. The sources of all the rivers in Italy are found in these mountains. Roma, (*Rome*,) for many years the seat of universal empire, was the capital of Italy. From it, the inhabitants of Italy were frequently called Romani, a name originally given only to the natives of that city and its territory, which was long very small.

Itäli, òrum, the people of Italia; Italians.

Itius Portus, a harbor in the country of the Morini, from which Cæsar sailed on his second expedition against Britain. See Iccius.

J.

JUGUM, i, a yoke. This consisted of two spears or pieces of wood set upright in the ground, a little space apart, over which a third was laid across the top, the whole resembling the Greek II.

Under this frame the soldiers of conquered armies were often obliged to pass naked, (*nudi*,) *i. e.* without their armor, which was previously laid down.

Jumenta, ōrum, beasts of burden, (horses, mules, asses, &c.) used by the Romans for carrying their heavier baggage. (See *Impedimenta*.)

Junius, i, (Quintus, i,) a Spaniard who was frequently sent by Cæsar to converse with Ambiōrix.

Jura, æ, m. a chain of mountains which, extending from the Rhodanus, (*Rhone*,) to the Rhenus, (*Rhine*,) separated Helvetia, (*Switzerland*,) from that part of Gallia Celtica which the Sequāni possessed, now called *Franche Compté*. Vosëgus, (*Vauge*,) is a branch, or an extension of Mount Jūra.

Justus equitatus, the complement of cavalry attached to a Legion; three hundred in number, exclusive of the horsemen of the allies

K.

KALENDÆ, or Calendæ, ārum, f. the Kalends, the name given by the Romans to the first day of every month. A priest was appointed to give notice to the people of the change of the moon, or when the new moon was first visible. This term appears to be derived from the Greek verb *καλέω*, *I call*. (See Gr. App. I.)

L.

LABERIUS, (Quintus, L. Durus,) a tribune of the soldiers in Cæsar's army. He was killed in Britain, B. G. V. 15.

Labiēnus, i, (Titus, i,) one of Cæsar's lieutenants in the Gallic war. In the beginning of the Civil war he deserted to Pompey, escaped from the battle of Pharsalia, and was killed in that of Munda.

Latobrigi, ōrum, a people who appear to have been neighbors of the Helvetii Raurāci and Tulingi, but of whom little is known with certainty.

Legātus, i, m. a lieutenant-general, who was both appointed by, and acted immediately under, the consul, or Commander-in-chief. The number of these officers varied in proportion to the greatness or importance of the war. Each legion had at least one, often two. When separated from the main army, sent into win-

ter quarters, &c. the lieutenant-general, being the deputy of the commander, had the honor to be the highest officer.

At their first institution, the Legati were counsellors to the governors of provinces, and decided all causes of minor importance; but held no military rank. Hence the word primarily denoted an Ambassador. Their admission into the army naturally resulted from that place of intimacy and confidence. Under the emperors the term became a common appellation for all invested with the highest military command in foreign countries.

Legio, ōnis, f. a legion, or body of soldiers consisting of different numbers at different times. In the early part of the reign of Romulus, the legion contained 3,000 foot, and 300 horse, which he, on the increase of the citizens by the admission of the Sabines, raised to 4,000. To that number 1,000 was added during the war which Hannibal carried on in Italia, (*Italy*), about 216 years B. C. but a reduction of 500 had taken place before the time Polybius wrote his history. Livy states that the legion consisted of 5,000 foot, and Vegetius, of 6,000 foot. It cannot be doubted that these historians recorded the exact number, which constituted a complete legion in their respective times. The legion consisted of ten cohorts, each cohort of three maniples, and each manipule of two centuries; and in the order of battle the troops were drawn up in three lines, first the *Hastāti*; second, the *Prīncipes*; and third, the *Triarii*. Those who formed the first line were called *Hastāti*, from their fighting with *Hasta*, a long spear, which was afterwards laid aside on account of its being inconvenient. They were the flower of the Roman youth. The second line consisted of the same number of maniples, but of men more advanced in life, and of greater military experience, who were called *Prīncipes*, probably from their being at one time the *first* line. Their arms were heavy. The *Triarii* made up the third line, and seem to have been a body of reserve. They were frequently, from *Pilum*, a javelin, called *Pilāni*, and the *Hastāti* and *Prīncipes*, *Antepilāni*, from being stationed before them. The *Velītes* generally skirmished before the lines, sometimes between them, and appear to have been what the moderns call Irregulars. They had light armor, hence called *expediti*, *levis armaturæ*, &c. The archers and slingers were attached to this body. According to that historian, twenty *Velītes* seem to have belonged to each manipule. They were, in battle, not formed into cohorts, or maniples, but fought in such parties and in such places as the commander judged most advantageous.

In the early ages of the Roman state, their army in battle order was drawn up, like the Macedonian phalanx, in a continued line. This fact rests on the authority of Livy. The disposition into three lines, and arranging in maniples at some distance from each other seems an improvement of later times. When the *Hastāti* yielded to the superior force or bravery of the enemy, they fell back to the *Princīpes*, who filled up the spaces between the maniples, and with them they renewed the charge. If both were forced to give way, the *Triarii* came up, and a third attack was made on the enemy. Hence, *ad triarios ventum est*, it is come to the last push; matters are in the utmost danger. The cavalry fought on the wings, but their exact form or position is not certainly known. It probably did not differ very much from the practice of the moderns. If after the whole force was brought into action the enemy still prevailed, they of necessity submitted to a defeat.

All the cohorts of the legion were manifestly on an equal footing in the army of Cæsar, and no preference seems to have been either acknowledged or claimed. The only vestige of the ancient division was the officers retaining their former appellations, as *Primus hastātus*, *Primus pilus*, &c. Cæsar frequently kept the third line as a body of reserve.

Lemānus (Lacus), the *Lake of Geneva*, is a most beautiful expanse of water, in the form of a crescent, the convex side of which is upwards of fifty-four miles long. Its hollow side is towards Switzerland, and its greatest breadth measures about twelve miles. The Rhodānus, (*Rhone*), descending from the Alps, traverses the whole length of the lake, and renders the water at its entrance turbid, on account of the quantity of earth and mud brought down from these steep mountains. Like the other waters and lakes of Switzerland, for nearly an hour in the evening, after the sun is hid behind Mount Jura, it shines with a splendor resembling burnished gold, by the reflection of the solar rays from the Glaciers.

Leponti, ōrum, a people of the Alps, near the source of the Rhodānus, (*Rhone*), on the south of that river.

Levāci, ōrum, a people in the northern part of Gallia Belgica, on the Scaldiſ, (*Scheldt*), between the Nervii and Grudii. The Centrōnes, Grudii, Levāci, Pleumosii, and Gordūni. were vassals of the Nervii. B. G. V. 39.

Leuci, ōrum, a Belgic nation who lived between the Mosa, (*Meuse*), and the Mosella, (*Moselle*), near the source of that river.

Lexovii, ōrum, a people of Gallia Celtica, whose country was bounded on the north by the Sequāna, (*Seine*,) and on the west by Fretum Gallicum, or, Britannicum, (the *English Channel*.)

Liger, ěris, or Ligĕris, is, m. the *Loire*, a large river of Gaul, which takes its rise in the country of the Helvii, runs N. N. W. and after a course of 200 miles, falls into Oceānus Cantabricus, (*Bay of Biscay*.) According to the division of Gaul made by Augustus, the Loire was the northern boundary of Aquitania.

Lingōnes, um, a people of Gaul whose territories included Mount Vosegus, (*Vauge*,) consequently the sources of the rivers Mosa, (*Meuse*,) and Matrōna, (*Marne*.) Their chief town was Andomadūnum, or Andomatūnum, afterwards Lingōnes, now *Langres*.

Liscus, i, one of the Supreme magistrates of the Ædui, who along with Divitiācus and other chiefs of that nation, was in Cæsar's camp in the Gallic war, and informed him of the conduct and plans of Dumnōrix.

Lituus, i, a clarion, bent a little at the end like an augur's staff. It was used for the cavalry. The *tuba* was straight and employed by the infantry. The *cornu* was bent almost round. The *buccina* was commonly used for changing the watches.

Lorica, æ, a coat of mail, generally made of leather, covered with plates of iron in the form of scales, or iron rings twisted within one another like chains. It is also used to denote a battlement, or defence of towers and walls, constructed of stone or of hurdles.

Lucinius, i, (Quintus, i,) a centurion of the first rank, who was killed in attempting to rescue his son when surrounded by some of the troops of Ambiorix, after that king had treacherously persuaded Aurunculeius Cotta and Q. Titurius Sabīnus, lieutenants, with the army which they commanded, consisting of one legion and five cohorts, to leave their winter-quarters among the Eburōnes.

Lugotōrix, ĩgis, one of the four kings of Kantium, (*Kent*;) some copies read Cingetōrix (B. G. V. 22).

Lutetia, æ, f. Lutetia the capital of the Parisii, (*Paris*, now the capital of France,) was originally a fortress on a small island in the Sequāna, (*Seine*.) There are two other islands in the Seine at Paris covered with buildings, and connected with each other and the town, by means of bridges. Paris, situated in a plain on both sides of the Seine, is of a circular form, and upwards of eleven miles in circumference. It contains many stately edifices, and the finest collections of medals, statues, and paintings, in the

world. Every thing excellent in Rome, and in the other cities of Italy, has been conveyed to Paris to enrich these collections and to adorn the city.

M.

MAGETOBRIA, æ, f. a city of Gallia, (*France*,) at which Ariovistus defeated the combined forces of the Gauls. This victory put the country under his dominion.

Mandubratius, i, one of the nation of Trinobantes, who, on his father's being killed by Cassivellaunus, fled from Britain to Cæsar then in Gaul, who took him and the state under his protection.

Manilius, (Lucius, i,) a proconsul, who was obliged to fly from Aquitania, with the loss of all his baggage.

Manilius, i, (Tuscūlus,) one of the conspirators against Cassius Longinus, Proprætor of Farther Spain.

Manipūlus, i, (See *Legio*.)

Marcomāni, or Marcomanni, ōrum, a people of Germania, (*Germany*,) whose territories were bounded on the west by the Rhenus, (*Rhine*,) and on the south by the Danubius, (*Danube*,) corresponding to part of the modern *Circle of Swabia*. They afterwards expelled the Boii, and took possession of their country, now called *Bohemia*.

Mare Nostrum, the *Mediterranean Sea*, to which the Romans gave this name, from its bounding their native country, Italia, (*Italy*,) on three sides. By the Greeks it was called Mare Internum; and the *Atlantic Ocean*, Mare Externum. In Scripture, this collection of water is denominated the *Great Sea*, which, though of small extent, when compared with the Pacific Ocean, &c. is the largest inland sea in the world. The modern appellation is manifestly derived from its situation, being wholly surrounded by land, except the narrow strait of Gibraltar, which connects it with the Atlantic Ocean.

The length of the Mediterranean is about 2,300 miles, and its breadth varies from 900 to 300 miles. Tides are scarcely known in this sea, except in the *Gulf of Venice*, and on the coast of *Tripoli*. There is a constant influx into the Mediterranean, both from the Atlantic and Pontus Euxinus, (the *Black Sea*.) That part of it which is east of the Archipelago, or of the island Candia, is called the Levant.

The principal islands in the Mediterranean, are the Baleares,

(*Majorca and Minorca*,) *Sardinia*, (*Sardinia*,) *Corsica*, (*Corsica*,) *Sicilia*, (*Sicily*,) separated from *Italia*, (*Italy*,) by *Fretum Siculum*, (the *Strait of Messina*,) *Melita*, (*Malta*,) and *Creta*, (*Candia*,) In the *Levant*, besides some other islands of less extent, are *Rhodos*, (*Rhodes*,) and *Cyprus*, (*Cyprus*,)

Matrōna, æ, f. the *Marne*, a river of *Gallia*, (*France*,) which formed part of the ancient boundary between *Gallia Belgica* and *Gallia Celtica*. It takes its rise at *Sangres*, runs northwest to *Chalons*, then westward, passes by *Meaux*, becomes navigable at *Vitry*, and at *Charenton*, a little above *Paris*, falls into the *Sequāna*, (*Seine*,) after a course of about ninety-two leagues.

Mediomatrici, um, vel. i, ōrum, a people of *Gallia Belgica*, between the *Mosella*, (*Moselle*,) and the *Rhenus*, (*Rhine*,) The *Treviri* were their neighbors on the north. Their chief town was *Divodūrum*, afterwards *Mediomatrici*, now *Metz*. At one period they were a powerful nation, and possessed a very extensive country. But the conquest of *Gallia*, (*France*,) by the *Romans*, destroyed their power, and confined them to a narrow territory.

Meldi, ōrum, a people whose country was included between the rivers *Matrōna*, (*Marne*,) and *Sequāna*, (*Seine*,) The modern town, *Meaux*, is of some note, and contains 6,000 inhabitants. The *Meldi* mentioned *B. V. 5*, were a *Belgic* tribe living on the *Scaldis* (*Scheldt*,)

Menapii, ōrum, a people of *Gallia Belgica*, whose territory was separated from *Insula Batavorum*, (*Holland*,) by the *Mosa*, (*Meuse*,) The *Toxandri* were their neighbors on the south.

Mensis, is, m. a month; a term originally employed to denote that portion of time which elapses between two successive changes of the moon. (See *Gr. App. I.*)

Messāla, æ, (*Marcus*,) a noble *Roman* who was consul with *Marcus Puppius Piso*, in the 60th year *B. C.*

Mettius, i, (*Marcus*, i,) a man allied to *Ariovistus* by the rights of hospitality, whom *Cæsar* joined in commission with *C. Valerius Procillus*, on an embassy to that king. As soon as they entered his camp, without suffering them to speak, *Ariovistus* commanded both to be put in irons. He thrice drew lots to determine whether they should be burned alive upon the spot, or reserved for another time. The lots being always favorable, their lives were preserved. After the defeat of *Ariovistus*, *Cæsar* himself in the pursuit fell in with *Procillus*, and *Mettius* was likewise recovered and brought back to the *Roman* camp.

Minucius, i, (Lucius M. Basilius,) one of Cæsar's officers. To C. Fabius, and L. Minucius Basilius, he gave the joint command of two legions, which were stationed among the Rhemi.

Mona, æ, f. the *Isle of Man*, an island in the Irish Sea, nearly equidistant from England, Scotland, and Ireland. It is thirty miles long, and eight broad. The soil is fertile, the air salubrious, and the inhabitants live in general to a great age. The sovereignty of this island formerly belonged to the Dukes of Athol; but it was sold in 1765 to the crown. Tacitus and others call Anglesy, Mona, but Cæsar is more correct.

Morini, ōrum, a people of Gallia Belgica, whose country lay along the coast opposite to Cantium, (*Kent*.)

Moritasgus, i, the king of the Senones, at Cæsar's arrival in Gallia, (*France*.)

Mosa, æ, f. the *Mæse*, or *Meuse*, a river of Gallia, (*France*,) rising a little to the west of Mount Vosegus, (*Vauge*,) runs north, passes a number of celebrated towns, receives, at Namur, the Sabis, (*Sambre*,) joins the Vahālis, (*Wahal*, or, *Waal*,) below the island of Bommel, and falls into the German Sea. The course of this river, which extends to 160 leagues, is north.

Munatius, i, (Lucius M. Plancus), one of Cæsar's lieutenants, who, with Caius Trebonius, had the command of three legions which were settled in Belgium, during the winter.

Muscūlus, a species of moveable shed or pent-house on wheels, shaped like an arched wagon, usually sent before the large towers to prepare the way for their advance, by cutting down trees, filling up ditches, removing obstructions, and making a smooth and solid road even up to the enemy's walls.

N.

NAMEIUS, i, a nobleman of the Helvetii, who, with Verudoctius, was at the head of the embassy which that nation sent to Cæsar, to request permission to march through the Roman province.

Namnētes, or, Nannētes, um, a people of Gallia Celtica, who lived on the north bank of the Ligēris, (*Loire*,) where it falls into the sea.

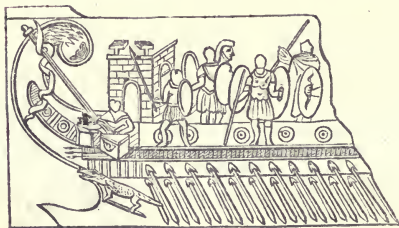
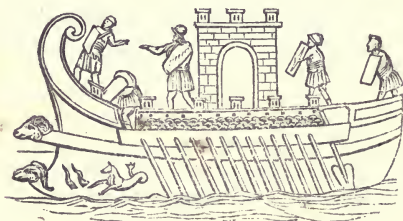
Nantuātes, um, a people, whose country lay on the south of Lacus Lemānus, (the *Lake of Geneva*.)

Narbo, ōnis. f. *Narbonne*, a town of Provincia, to the south of the river Atax, (the *Aude*,) near the sea-coast, which afterwards gave name to that division of Gallia. (*France*,) called *Narbonensis*.

Nasua, æ, the brother of Cimerius, who commanded the 100 Cantons of the Suevi, who had encamped on the bank of the Rhenus, (*Rhine*,) with the design of crossing that river.

Naves, ium, (sing. navis,) ships. The kind of ships used by the Romans were chiefly two, viz: *Naves Longæ*, ships of war, and *Naves Onerariæ*, ships of burden. The *Naves longæ* were so called because they were of a longer shape than the others. They were commonly impelled by oars, and were distinguished by a helmet at the mast head. They were also ranked as *birēmes*, *tri-rēmes*, *quadrēmes*, and *quinqvirēmes*, according as they had two, three, four, or five rows or tiers of oars. According to the generally received opinion, these rows or tiers ran from the prow to the stern, as exhibited in the following wood cuts, taken from antiques, the first of which has one row and the second two. Over these were erected decks on which sometimes towers were constructed, from which the enemy might be more conveniently and successfully assailed.

NAVES LONGÆ.



The *Naves Onerariæ*, or ships of burden, were broader and rounder than the vessels of war. They were impelled by sails

and distinguished by a basket, (*corbis*,) suspended from the mast head; whence they were sometimes called *corbitæ*.

Naves Actuariæ were ships contrived for lightness and expedition. They had but one bank of oars, or at most two, on each side. They were of different kinds, distinguished by different names; as, *Celōces*, *Lembi*, *Phasēli*, &c., but the most remarkable were the *Naves Liburnæ*, a kind of light galleys used by the Liburni.

Nemētes, um, a people of Gallia Belgica, probably a tribe of the Germans, on the west bank of the river Rhenus, (*Rhine*,) between the Tribōci and Vangiōnes. Their principal city was Noviomāgus, (*Spire*.)

Nervii, ōrum, a powerful and warlike nation of Gallia Belgica, whose country lay on both sides of the Scaldis, (*Scheldt*, near the source of that river, afterwards *Hainault*, and *Nord*. They revolted and attacked the Roman troops under Cæsar; but were totally routed. Their mode of defence against the attacks of cavalry was simple and effectual. The different readings B. G. Lib. II. 17, are numerous, yet the idea conveyed by all is not very materially different. In the place where the Nervii wished to raise a barrier, they, probably at a considerable distance from each other, half cut two rows of young trees, so that they continued to grow, bent them longitudinally, and gave their branches a lateral direction. The middle space between these rows was planted or filled up with briars and thorns, which intermixing with the trees that formed the outside of the fence, rendered the whole so close and impervious, that it not only stopped the progress, but even the view of the invaders.

After *ramis* the common text has *enatis*, which Oudendorp and others reject as a mere gloss, unnecessary to the sense. It is also wanting in the best MSS.

Nonæ, ārum, f. the Nones, the second division of the Roman month; so called, it is supposed, because from that day to the Ides nine days intervened. In the months of March, May, July, and October, the Nones fell on the seventh, and in the other months on the fifth. (See Gr. App. I.)

Noreia, æ, f. a city of Noricum, the capital of the Taurisci. B. I. 5.

Noricum, i, n. or Noricus ager, a large country of Germany, between Italia, (*Italy*,) and the Danubius, (*Danube*). It comprehended the greater part of Austria, all Saltzburg, Stiria, and Carinthia. Their chief city was Noreia, which was besieged by the

Boii, in the inroad which they had made upon Noricum, before they entered into alliance with the Helvetii.

Norici, ōrum, the people of Noricum.

Noviodunum, i, n. (B. G. II. 15,) a town of the Suessiōnes, (*Soissons*, or *Noyons*.) Another of the Ædui, (B. G. VII. 55,) now *Nevers*, on the banks of the Ligēris, (*Loire*). And a third belonged to the Bituriges, (B. G. VII. 14,) now *Neuvy* or, *Neufry*, about twenty miles west from *Nevers*.

Numidia, æ, f. *Algiers*, a country of Africa, bounded on the north by the Mediterranean; on the west by Mauritania, (*Morocco* and *Fez*;) on the south by Gætulia; and on the east by Africa Propria, (*Tunis*.)

Numidæ, arum, and, Nomādes, um, the inhabitants of Numidia, described by Sallust, in the Jugurthan war, as faithless, unsteady, and fond of revolutions in the state.

O.

OCELUM, i, n. *Oux*, or *Exilles*, a town on the frontiers of Gallia Cisalpina, Citerior, or Togata, in Alpes Graiæ.

Octodurus, i, (Octodorus, in Greek,) *Martigny*, a town, or village, of the Veragri, (*Vicus Veragrorum*, Cæsar, B. G. III. 1,) on the *Drance*, near its junction with the Rhodanus, (*Rhone*,) at a considerable distance above the entrance of the latter into Lacus Lemānus, (the *Lake of Geneva*.)

Orcynia, æ, f. a name given by Eratosthenes, and some other Greeks, to Hercynia Silva; which see.

Orgetorix, ūgis, was, according to Cæsar, the richest and most noble of the Helvetii. Prompted by a love of power, he formed a conspiracy among the nobles, and persuaded the people to quit their country. When his ambitious views were discovered by the state, he was obliged to answer to the charges preferred against him. Orgetorix, by means of his vassals and debtors, rescued himself, from the hands of his judges, and escaped. But whilst the state was endeavoring to support its authority by force, he died, as was suspected, by his own hands.

Osismii, ōrum, a people of Gallia Celtica, one of the nations which went under the general name of *Civitates Armoricæ*. Their country afterwards formed part of the province of *Bretagne*. It is now called *Finisterre*.

P.

PADUS, i, m. the *Po*, the largest river of Italy, anciently called *Eridānus*. The northern branches of the *Po*, descending from the Alps, render it largest in the warmest months of summer, by the melting of the snow towards the summit of these lofty mountains. It disembogues into *Mare Adriaticum*, or *Hadriaticum*, (the *Gulf of Venice*,) by seven mouths, of which two were formed by nature, the other five by art.

Pæmāni, ōrum, a people of Gallia Belgica, on the east bank of the *Mosa*, (*Meuse*.) They had the *Cæræsi* on the south, the *Treviri* on the east, and *Silva Arduenna* on the north.

Paludamentum, i, the military robe or cloak of the Roman commander; sometimes also worn by the chief officers. It was of a scarlet color, bordered with purple. The elevation of this upon a spear above the *Prætorium*, or general's tent, was often the signal given for commencing battle.

Parisii, ōrum, the inhabitants of *Lutetia*, from whom it was afterwards called *Parisii*, now *Paris*, the capital of France. (See *Lutetia*.)

Passus, ūs, a pace, (two steps,) was reckoned nearly equal to five feet. (See *Gr. App.* VI. 5,) Of these 125 made a stadium, and 1000 made a mile; hence, *mille passuum*, a mile.

Pedius, i, (Quintus) a grandson of one of Julius Cæsar's sisters, was one of his lieutenant-generals in the Gallic war, and appointed in his will co-heir with Octavius, who had Pedius for his colleague in his first consulship. He passed a law, from him called *Lex Pedia*, declaring the death of Julius Cæsar to have been murder, and subjecting the assassin to capital punishment.

Peligni, ōrum, a people of Italy, whose country lay between the sources of the rivers *Sagrus*, (*Sangro*,) and *Aternus*, (*Pescara*,) both of which fall into the Gulf of Venice.

Petrosidius, i, (Lucius, i,) a standard bearer of the army which, under the command of Q. Titurius Sabīnus and Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta, wintered among the *Eburōnes*. These troops were, in consequence of a stratagem of *Ambiōrix*, attacked by him on disadvantageous ground two miles from the camp, and almost wholly cut off. Petrosidius having, with a few of his men, returned to the camp, threw his standard within the rampart, and was killed fighting with great bravery before the fortifications.

Pictōnes, um, a people of Gallia Celtica, on the south bank of the Ligēris, (*Loire*,) where it falls into the sea.

Pilani. (See *Legio*.)

Pirustæ, arum, a people of Illyricum, on the east coast of Mare Hadriaticum, (*the Gulf of Venice*.)

Piso, ōnis, (Lucius Calpurnius, i,) Cæsar's father-in-law, who was consul with A. Gabinius Paulus, in the year of the city 696. In their consulship, Cicero was banished from Rome, and Clodius was supported by Piso, in procuring that disgraceful sentence, (B. G. I. 6.)

Piso, ōnis, (Lucius, i,) the grandfather of Piso above mentioned, was a lieutenant of Cassius, both of whom fell in an engagement with the Helvetii, (B. G. I. 12.)

Piso, ōnis, surnamed from his country, Aquitanus, a nobleman of Aquitania, whose father had been supreme magistrate in that country, and called *Friend* by the Romans, (B. G. IV. 12.)

Plancus, i, (L. Munatius, i,) a lieutenant in Cæsar's army, to whom he gave the joint command with C. Trebonius, of three legions cantoned in Gallia Belgica. After the death of Julius Cæsar, L. Munatius Plancus joined Antony and Lepidus. With the latter he was consul. He is said to have founded Lugdunum, (*Lyons*.)

Pleumosii, ōrum, a people of Gallia Belgica, supposed to have lived on the Scaldis, (*Scheldt*,) near the place where the city *Tournay* now stands.

Pluteus, i, a kind of moveable gallery on wheels, in form resembling the Musculus, (which see,) but used chiefly to protect the archers stationed in it, in order to clear the walls with their arrows, and so facilitate the approach of storming parties and the erection of scaling ladders.

Pompeius, i, (Cneius,) a Roman who was well skilled in the language of the Gauls, and acted as interpreter to Quintus Titurius. After the credulity of that lieutenant had placed himself and his men at the mercy of Ambiōrix, he sent Cneius Pompeius to the king of the Eburōnes, begging him to spare their lives. (See *Titurius*.)

Præconinus, i, a lieutenant who was himself killed, and his army defeated at Apollōnia.

Præfectus, i, an officer who commanded the allies, and who in the extent of his command resembled the legionary tribune. The commander of the cavalry of a legion was called *præfectus alæ*.

Prætor, ōris, m. a Prætor; (from *Præ* and *eo*,) literally, one who goes before. In the early ages of the Roman State, this term is

supposed by some to have been a general appellation of all the Roman Magistrates, afterwards of the general of the army; even the Emperors were ambitious to include it among their other titles. But the word commonly denoted a Roman judge who administered justice both among his fellow-citizens, and also among the foreigners who resided in Rome. In dignity the Prætor ranked next to the Consul. He had power to alter laws, repeal them, and enact new at pleasure.

Prætorια cohors, Prætorian cohort, a select band of troops forming the general's body guard.

Preciāni, ōrum, a people of Aquitania, who are supposed to have lived at the foot of the Pyrenæi Montes, (*Pyrenees*,) near Mare Cantabriceum, (the *Bay of Biscay*.)

Primopilus, i, (sometimes primus pilus,) the chief centurion of the legion. This name belonged to the first centurion of the first manipule of the Triarii. He was entrusted with the eagle or main standard of the legion; in pay he ranked among the equites, and had a place in the council of war with the consul and tribunes.

Provincia Romana, the Roman Province; that part of Transalpine Gaul in the possession of the Romans previous to the conquests of Cæsar. It extended along the shore of the Mediterranean, from the Pyrenees to the Alps, and was bounded on its northwest side by the Mount Cebenna, (or *Cevennes*,) and on the north, eastward, by the Ambāni, Sequāri, and Helvetii. In the new division of Gaul afterwards made by Augustus, its boundaries remained as before, but as all Gaul was now become a Roman Province it ceased to be distinguished by that name, and was called Narbo-nensis, from Narbo its principal city. (See *Narbo*.)

Pulſio, ōnis, (Titus, i,) a Roman centurion of distinguished valor, who, to decide a dispute with L. Varēnus respecting superiority of courage, rushed forth from the camp, when attacked by the Nervii, and displayed great bravery without the fortifications. Nor was his rival for military fame, inferior to him either in bravery or generosity; B. V. Ch. 44. (See *Varenius*.)

R.

RAURACI, ōrum, a people of Gallia Celtica. on the northern extremity of Mount Jura. The Rhenus, (*Rhine*,) was their boundary on the east.

Remi, ōrum, a people of Gallia Belgica, whose country lay to the north of the Matrōna, (*Marne*). Their chief town was Durocor-tum, now *Rheims*.

Rhedōnes, um, a people of Gallia Celtica. The Rhedōnes were one of those nations reckoned among the *Civitates Armoricae*. Their country is now called *Bretagne*.

Rhenus, i, m. the *Rhine*, a celebrated river of Europe, which takes its rise in Mount Adūla, (*St. Gothard*.) in the country of the Grissons, passes Lacus Brigantinus, (*Lake of Constance*,) and continues to run nearly west about 75 miles, when it reaches Basti. On leaving this city, it takes a northerly direction and becomes the boundary between France, or the Netherlands, and Germany, till it divides into two branches, which, with the German Sea, formed, what was anciently called, Insūla Batavōrum, (*Holland*, or the *United Provinces*.) After a course of 600 miles, and receiving several rivers on both banks, the Rhine discharges itself into that part of Mare Atlanticum, (the *Atlantic Ocean*,) called Oceānus Germanicus, (the *German Sea*.)

Rhodānus, i. m. the *Rhone*, a large and rapid river of Europe, which has its source in Mount la Fourche, near *St. Gothard*, in the canton of Uri, not more than two leagues south from that of the Rhenus, (*Rhine*,) passes Lacus Lemānus, (the *Lake of Geneva*,) five leagues below which it disappears between two rocks for a considerable way, rises again, flows with great rapidity in a southern direction, and discharges itself by three mouths into that part of the Mediterranean formerly called Gallicus Sinus, (the *Gulf of Lyons*.) The course of the Rhone is about 400 miles, during which it falls 5,400 feet. In Strabo's time it was navigable a good way up; but its mouths are now so full of rocks brought down from the mountain by its impetuous current, that no ship can enter them. The Rhone is largest in summer, and is at its greatest height soon after the longest day. This is most probably occasioned by the heat of the sun melting part of the snow on the Alps during the summer months.

Roma, æ, f. *Rome*, one of the most celebrated cities of antiquity, stood on the banks of the Tiber, about fifteen miles from the sea. Romūlus, from whom the name is derived, laid the foundation of this city on Mons Palatinus, 15th April, 753 B. C. From a very small beginning it gradually increased, until its circumference, according to Pliny, was not less than twenty miles. After the lapse of many years, Rome became the capital of Italia. (*Italy*,) and, at the commencement of the Christian Era, the known world was in subjection to that gigantic power. It was divided into twenty-four regions or wards, had seven great, and thirteen smaller aqueducts, thirty-seven gates, and six hundred and forty-four tow

ers on the walls. To ascertain its population when in the height of power, is perhaps impossible; but it could not fall much below four millions.

Roscius, i, (Lucius, i,) a lieutenant, to whom Cæsar gave the command of the third legion, which he was to march into the territories of the Essui.

Rufus, i, (P. Sulpicius, i,) one of Cæsar's lieutenants, to whom he gave the charge of the port in Gallia, (*France*), from which he sailed for Britannia, (*Britain*), and a garrison sufficient to protect it during his absence.

Rutēni, ōrum, a people of Aquitania, on the river Tarnis, (*Tarne*.)

Rutīlus, i, (M. Sempronius, i,) an officer of Cæsar, who had, with T. Labiēnus, the joint command of the two legions which that general ordered to march into the territories of the Sequāni.

S.

Sabinus, i, (Caius Calvisius,) an officer in Cæsar's army, whom he sent into Ætolia, in Græcia, (*Greece*), with five cohorts and a few men.

Sabīnus, i, (Q. Titurius, i,) a lieutenant in Cæsar's army. He, and L. Aurunculeius Cotta, had the command of the troops which were stationed among the Menapii, and in other parts of Gallia Belgica. When in their quarters on the frontiers of the Eburōnes, the artful stratagem of Ambiorix, king of that tribe, to cut off these lieutenants and their two legions succeeded, through the credulity and obstinacy of Sabinus. A few of the private soldiers escaped the sword of the Gauls. (See *Cotta*.) This officer is sometimes called simply Titurius, or, Sabīnus.

Sabis, is, m. the *Sambre*, a river of Gallia Belgica, which has its rise in what is now called *Picardy*, runs northeast and falls into the Mosa, (*Meuse*), near *Namur*.

Sagittarii, ōrum, archers; men who fought with bows and arrows, attached to the *velites*. (See *Legio*.) The best archers were the Cretans. The Romans did not use the bow in the early times of the republic, and when introduced they had scarcely any archers except those of the auxiliary troops.

Samarobrīva, æ, f. (*i. e.* the bridge of the Samāra.) *Amiens*, a town of Gallia Belgica, on the south bank of the river Samāra, (*Somme*.) It was afterwards called Ambianum, from its inhabitants; hence the present name

Santōnes, um, a people of Gallia Celtica, to the north of the river Carantōnus, (*Charente*.) Their chief town was Mediolanum, afterwards Santones, now *Saintes*.

Scaldis, is, the *Scheld*, or the *Scheldt*, a river of Gallia Belgica, which takes its rise about fifteen miles south of Camaracum, (*Cambray*), in the province of Picardy, runs north, and dividing into two branches, falls into the German Sea. Cæsar erroneously makes it a branch of the Mosa, (*Meuse*), (B. G. VI. 33.)

Scorpiōnes, a species of military engine for throwing darts and javelins, similar to the Balista, or probably only another name for the same. (See *Balista*.)

Scutum, i. m. a shield; a part of the defensive armor of the Roman infantry, which they wore on their left arms to protect their bodies against the arrows, darts, and other missile weapons thrown by the enemy. It consisted of thin pieces of wood joined by plates of iron, and covered with thick skin or hide. The most common form was oval, extending to four feet in length and two and a half in breadth. When a soldier had not his shield he was said to fight *nudo corpore*.

Sedūni, ōrum, a nation of Helvetia, (*Switzerland*), on the north bank of the Rhodānus, (*Rhone*), above Lacus Lemānus, (the *Lake of Geneva*.)

Sedusii, ōrum, a nation of Germany, on the northeast bank of the Rhēnus, (*Rhine*.) Their country was watered by the Mœnus, (*Maine*.)

Segōnax, ācis, one of the four kings who reigned in Cantium, (*Kent*), at the time Cæsar invaded Britain.

Segontiāci, ōrum, a British nation on the south of the river Tamēsis, (*Thames*.) They appear to have been subject to Cassivellaunus, at the time Cæsar attempted to add this island to the Roman empire. (B. V. Ch. 21.)

Segusiani, ōrum, a people of Gallia Celtica, to the west of the Rhodānus, (*Rhone*.) Their country was traversed by the Ligēris, (*Loire*), towards the source of that river.

Senōnes, um, a warlike nation of Gallia Celtica, who lived on the Sequāna, (*Seine*), about 70 miles above Paris.

Septimius, i, (Lucius, i,) a tribune of the soldiers, sent along with Achillas, by Ptolemæus king of Egypt, to murder Pompey, in whose army he had formerly been a centurion.

Sequāna, æ, the *Seine*, a river of Gallia, (*France*), has its source near Nevers in Bourgogne, runs in a northwest direction, and falls into that part of the Atlantic called Fretum Britannicum, (the *British Channel*), at Havre de Grace. The course of this beautiful and picturesque river extends to 250 miles. Paris, the capital of France, originally a fort on a small island in the Seine, above 120 miles from the sea, now stands on both sides of this river, over which there are, in that city, 12 bridges.

Sequāna, æ, f. a district of Gallia, (*France*), bounded on the east by Mons Jura, (*Mount Jura*), which separated it from the country of the Helvetii; on the north by Mount Vosegus, (*Vauge*), which divided it from that of the Leuci; on the west by the country of the Ædui and Lingōnes; and on the south by that of the Ambarri and Allobroges.

Sequāni ōrum, (sing. Sequānus, i,) the people of Sequāna. This nation headed one of the factions of the Gallic states, and the Ædui the other.

Sesuvii, ōrum, (or Sesovii,) one of the Armoric states in Gaul, the situation of which is not known.

Sextius, i, (Publius S. Bacūlus,) a centurion of the first rank in Cæsar's army, in the Gallic wars.

Sextius, i, (Titus, i,) one of the three lieutenants whom Cæsar sent to augment his army, in the sixth year of the war in Gallia, (*France.*)

Sibutzātes, um, a people of Aquitania, whose country lay along the Atur, (*Adour.*) Of their history nothing is known.

Sigambri, ōrum, a German nation, who lived on the east bank of the Rhine, to the south of the river Rura, (*Roir.*)

Sifanus, i, (Marcus, i,) one of Cæsar's lieutenants, whom he ordered to levy troops for the war in Gallia, (*France.*)

Silius, i, (Titus, i,) an officer whom P. Crassus sent to the Venēti, to procure grain and forage with Velanius. But the Venēti, seized them in expectation of regaining their hostages by this measure.

Sotiates, ium, a people of Aquitania, whose country extended along the Garumna, (*Garonne.*) Their territories formed part of what was afterwards called Novempopulana, bounded by the Garonne, Pyrenees, and Bay of Biscay.

Suessiōnes, Suessōnes, um, a people of Gallia Belgica, whose country was bounded on the south by the Matrōna, (*Marne.*) Although a brave and powerful nation, they were obliged to submit to the arms of Cæsar.

Suevi, ōrum, a nation of Germania, (*Germany,*) who inhabited a large tract of country, Suevia, æ, f. lying between the Albis, *Elbe*, and the Vistula, (*Vistula,*) on the northern side of Silva, Hercynia. They made many inroads on the Roman territories.

Sulpitius, i, (Publius, i,) one of Cæsar's lieutenants. Q. Tullius, Cicero, and P. Sulpitius, were stationed among the Ædui, at Cabillo, v. Cabillōnum, (*Chalons,*) and Matisco, (*Mascon,*) on the Arar, (*Saone.*) These two officers were entrusted with the care of provisions.

T.

TAMESIS, or Thamesis, is, m. the *Thames*, one of the largest rivers of England, rises in Cotswold hills in the western extremity of Gloucestershire, runs eastward, and after passing through London, falls into the German Sea. With respect to commerce, this is the first river in the world. It is navigable about 130 miles, and the tide flows up as far as Richmond in Surrey, which taking the course of the river, is 70 miles.

Tarbelli. ōrum, a people of Aquitania, whose country extended along the sea-coast, from the Pyrenæi Montes, (*Pyrenees,*) to the territories of the Cocosātes.

Tarusātes, ium, a people of Aquitania. The Tarbelli were between them and the Bay of Biscay.

Tasgetius, i, a nobleman of the nation of the Carnūtes, whose forefathers had possessed the sovereignty of that state.

Taximagūlus, i, one of the four kings who reigned over Cantium. (*Kent.*) They seem to have all been under the power of Cassivellaunus.

Tectosāges, um, and **Tectosāgi, ōrum**, a very valiant people of Gallia, a branch of the Volcæ, near the Pyrenees. (See *Volcæ.*)

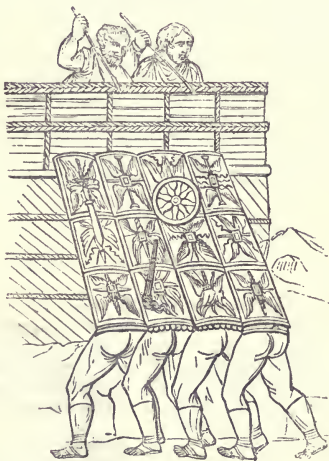
Tenchterī, ōrum, a people of Germany, on the river Rhenus, (*Rhine*,) south of the Sigambri.

Terrasidius, i, (**Titus, i**,) one of Cæsar's lieutenants, whom he sent into the country of the Esubii.

Testūdo, īnis, f. I. A wooden tower used by the Romans for protecting the soldiers when employed in undermining the walls of a town, or in battering them with the ram, (See *Aries.*) It was erected of wood, and covered with hides, earth, or any other kind of substance which is with difficulty set on fire.

II. When the soldiers of a company advanced to an assault, they frequently stood close together, and formed a shade or screen of their shields, to protect their bodies against the missile weapons, thrown by the enemy from the walls. This defence they also called *Testudo*, from the resemblance which the locked shields had to the shell or covering of the tortoise, (See the following wood cut,) but it must not be confounded with the tower or mantelet just described.

TESTUDO.



Tigurinus Pagus, one of the four cantons or districts, into which Helvetia (*Switzerland*,) is divided according to Cæsar, compre-

hending the modern cantons *Zurich, Schwitz, Schaffhausen*, and the lands of the *Abbey of St. Gal*.

Tigurini, ōrum, the people of Pagus Tigurinus.

Titus, i, a common prænomen among the Romans.

Titurius, i, (Quintus T. Sabinus,) one of Cæsar's lieutenants, often called simply, Titurius, killed by Ambiorix. (See *Aurunculeius*.)

Tolōsa, æ, *Thoulouse*, or *Toulouse*, a town of Aquitania, beautifully situated on the north bank of Garumna. Tolōsa was one of the most flourishing cities of Gaul, afterwards the residence of a Roman colony, and, at a later period, the metropolis of the Visogoths.

Tolosates, ium, the inhabitants of Tolōsa.

Trebius, i, (Marcus T. Gallius,) an officer sent by Cæsar to the *Curiosolitæ*, to procure provisions.

Treviri, ōrum, or (sing. *Trevir*, īri,) a nation of Gallia Belgica, between the Mosella, (*Moselle*,) and Silva Arduenna. Their chief city, Augusta Trevirōrum, now *Triers*, or *Treves*, stands on the east bank of the Moselle, over which it has a large bridge.

Tribuni, ōrum, (sing. *Tribunus*, i,) militum, Tribunes of the soldiers; officers in the Roman army, who had the command of a division of a legion. To take care of the works and camp, to communicate the watchword to the guards, and to give judgment in certain cases, formed the duty of the military tribunes. Romulus first appointed the tribunes, to whom he gave that name from their being only *three* in number, one out of each *tribe*. But afterwards, each legion had six tribunes. The right of nomination belonged first to the kings, then to the consuls, or dictators, and, at a later period, to the people.

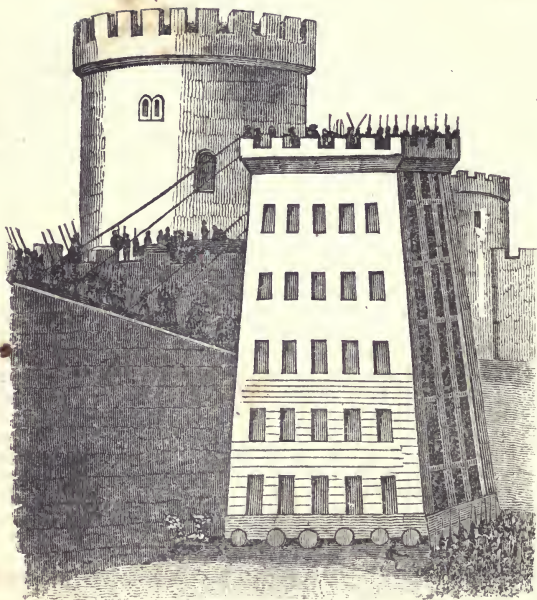
Trinobantes, um, a nation of ancient Britain, inhabiting the counties now called *Essex* and *Middlesex*. Cassivellaunus was their king at the time Cæsar invaded this island.

Tulingi, ōrum, a people of Germany, between the rivers Danubius, (*Danube*,) and Rhenus, (*Rhine*.)

Turōnes, um, or, i, ōrum, a people of Gallia Celtica, on the banks of the river *Loire*, about 140 miles from the sea. Their name is perpetuated by the modern appellation of the country, *Touraine*, and their city *Tours*, anciently Turōnes.

Turris, is, a tower. The towers used in the Roman military works were of two kinds, the fixed and the moveable. The fixed towers were erected on the *agger*, or mound, and were raised sufficiently high to overlook and command the enemy's ramparts, and from them showers of arrows, darts, and other missiles were thrown by means of various engines. The moveable towers (See wood cut, next page,) were pushed forward on rollers or wheels fixed below. To prevent them from being set on fire they were covered with raw hides and pieces of coarse woollen cloth. They were of immense size, sometimes forty or fifty feet square, and higher than the walls, or even the towers of the city. When brought up against the walls, a place was seldom able to stand out long. Sometimes they were provided with a species of drop or platform, which being let down reached from the tower to the top of the wall and formed a species of bridge by which the assailants took possession of the walls.

TURRIS.



U.

UBII, ōrum, a people of Germany, whose territories were on the Rhine opposite to the Sigambri.

Unelli, ōrum, a people of Gallia Celtica, on the northwest of what is now called *Normandy*. Their country was bounded on three sides by the sea. Their chief town was Coriallum, (*Gouril*.) Off the coast of the Unelli, lay the islands of Cæsarea, (*Jersey*,) Sarnia, (*Guernsey*,) and Redūna, (*Alderney*,) which have long been in possession of the British.

Usipètes, um, or Usipii, ōrum, a people of Germany, on the right bank of the Rhenus, (*Rhine*.)

V.

VAHALIS, is, m. *Wahal*, or, *Waal*, the left branch of the Rhenus. (*Rhine*.) It joins the Mosa, (*Meuse*,) at the island of Voorn, and falls into the German sea below the Breil.

Valerius, i, (Caius V. Cabūrus,) a chief man among the Gauls in Provincia, whose original name appears to have been Cabūrus.

- On being made a Roman citizen, by C. Valerius Flaccus, he, as was usual, took the name of his patron.
- Valerius, i, (Caius, V. Flaccus,) a noble Roman, who conferred the freedom of the city on C. Valerius Cabūrus.
- Valerius i, (Caius V. Procillus,) the son of C. Valerius Cabūrus, was the chief man in Provincia. Cæsar, on account of his knowledge of the Gallic language, sent him and M. Mettius to hold an interview with Ariovistus, king of Germany. The German king imprisoned them both, but they were afterwards rescued by the Romans during the flight of their army.
- Vallum, the ramparts of a Roman encampment, composed of the earth dug out from the ditch, and having sharp stakes stuck into it to keep it together. (See *Castra*.)
- Vangiōnes, um, a people of Gallia Belgica, on the west bank of the Rhenus, (*Rhine*.) They were originally from Germany, and, at one time, had probably lands on both sides of that river. Their chief town was Borbetomagus, now *Worms*.
- Velanĭus, i, (Quintus, i,) sent by Cæsar with Silius to procure corn from the Venēti, who detained them in order to receive the hostages which they had given to that general.
- Velauni, ōrum, a small tribe in Gallia Celtica, on the sources of the Ligēris. Their chief city was Anderitium, now *Javoli*, or *Javoux*.
- Velites, light-armed troops. They were equipped with bows, slings, seven javelins or spears with slender points like arrows, so that, when thrown, they bent, and could not easily be returned by the enemy; a spanish sword, having both edge and point; a round buckler (*parma*), about three feet in diameter, made of wood and covered with leather; and a helmet or casque for the head, generally made of the skin of some wild beast. When the army was drawn up in order of battle, the *velites* were placed in the spaces or intervals between the maniples, or else on the wings. (See *Legio*.)
- Velocasses. (See *Bellocasses*.)
- Venēti, ōrum, a nation in the west part of Gallia Celtica, whose chief town was Venetiā. Their country lay on the sea coast, northwest from the mouth of the Liger, (*Loire*.)
- Verāgri, ōrum, a people who lived in that part of Provincia, now called *Dauphine*, on the south bank of the Rhodanus, (*Rhone*,) above Lacus Lemanus, (the *Lake of Geneva*.)
- Verbigēnus, i, (sc. pagus,) or, Urbigēnus, one of the four divisions of Helvetia, (*Switzerland*,) included the cantons of *Friburg* and *Bern*, with the districts of *Neufchatel* and *Vallengin*.
- Vergobretus, i, the title of the supreme magistrate among the Ædui, who was created yearly, and had the power of life and death over his countrymen.
- Veromandui, ōrum, a people of Gallia Belgica, between the Nervii and Suessiones. Their chief town was Augusta Veromanduorum, (*St. Quentin*,) on the right bank of the Samāra, (*Somme*.) Like most of the other nations of Gallia Belgica, they were originally from Germany.
- Vertico. ōnis, a nobleman of the Nervii, who was in Cicero's camp, when attacked by the Eburōnes, and prevailed on a slave to carry a letter to Cæsar, communicating information of that event.

Verudoctius, i, one of the Helvetii. He and Nameius were at the head of the embassy sent to Cæsar, requesting permission to march through Provincia.

Vesontio, ōnis, f. *Besançon*, the chief town of the Sequāni. on the east bank of the river Dubis, (*Doux*.)

Vigilia, æ, f. a watch, the time a Roman soldier remained on guard during the night. Of these there were four, each three hours long. (See Gr. App. I.

Vineæ, arum, f. a shed, used by the Romans for protecting the soldiers in besieging towns. It consisted of four upright posts, upon which was fixed a roof of hurdle or wicker-work. Above the hurdles were spread raw hides, a little earth, &c. to protect it from fire. The size of the vineæ differed according to circumstances. The whole rested upon wheels, so that this mantelet would be easily moved, and under it the besiegers either worked the ram, (See *Aries*,) or tried to undermine the walls. (See *Pluteus*.)

Virdomārus, one of the Ædui, more distinguished by political influence, than by noble birth. Cæsar, at the request of Divitiācus, raised him to the highest dignity in the state.

Viridōvix, icis, the leading man among the Unelli, who headed a powerful army in an attack on Sabīnus, one of Cæsar's lieutenants stationed among them, who defeated Viridōvix by an artful stratagem.

Vocātes, ium, a people of Aquitania, supposed by some to be the same with Vasātes, whose territories lay on the south bank of the *Garonne*, about ninety miles from the mouth of that river. Their chief town was *Cossio*.

Vocio, ōnis, king of the Norīci, to whose sister Ariovistus was married.

Vocontii, ōrum, a nation of Gaul, on the banks of a small stream called Druna, (*Drome*,) which falls into the Rhodānus, (*Rhone*,) about 100 miles from the mouth of that river. Their chief town was Dia, *Die*.

Vosēgus, i, or Vogēsus, m. *Vauge*, is a branch of Mount Jura, stretching in a northern direction, in which are the sources of the Arar, (*Saone*,) the Mosa, (*Meuse*,) and the Mosella, (*Moselle*.)

Volcatius Tullus, Volcatii Tulli, an officer, who, according to Cæsar, sustained, at Dyrrachium, (*Durazzo*,) with three cohorts, the charge of a whole legion.

Volcæ, arum, a numerous and powerful nation of Gaul, between the Garumna, (*Garonne*,) and the Rhodānus, (*Rhone*,) divided into the Arecomīci, and Tectosāges, q. v.

Volusēnus, i, (Caius, i,) an officer whom Cæsar sent with a galley to survey the coast of Britain opposite Gaul, and to acquire as correct information as he could, respecting the harbors and landing places, previously to his sailing against that island.

BULLIONS'
SERIES OF GRAMMARS,
ENGLISH, LATIN AND GREEK,
ON THE SAME PLAN,

FOR THE USE OF

Colleges, Academies & Common Schools.

(Published by Pratt, Woodford & Co., N. Y.)

In preparing this series, the main object has been, First: To provide for the use of schools a set of class books on this important branch of study, more simple in their arrangement, more complete in their parts, and better adapted to the purposes of public instruction, than any heretofore in use in our public Seminaries: and Secondly, to give the whole a uniform character by following, in each, substantially, the same arrangement of parts, using the same grammatical terms, and expressing the definitions, rules, and leading parts, as nearly as the nature of the case would admit in the same language; and thus to render the study of one Grammar a more profitable introduction to the study of another than it can be, when the books used differ so widely from each other in their whole style and arrangement, as those now in use commonly do. By this means, it is believed, much time and labor will be saved, both to teacher and pupil,—the analogy and peculiarities of the different languages being constantly kept in view, will show what is common to all, or peculiar to each,—the confusion and difficulty unnecessarily occasioned by the use of

elementary works, differing widely from each other in language and structure will be avoided,—and the progress of the student rendered much more rapid, easy and satisfactory.

These works form a complete series of elementary books, in which the substance of the best Grammars in each language has been compressed into a volume of convenient size, handsomely printed on a fine paper, neatly and strongly bound, and at a moderate price. The whole series is now submitted to the judgment of a discerning public, and especially to teachers and superintendents of schools, and seminaries of learning throughout the United States.

The following notices and recommendations of the works separately, and of the series, both from individuals of the highest standing in the community, and from the public press, will furnish some idea of the plan proposed, and of the manner in which it has been executed

I. THE PRINCIPLES OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR

Comprising the substance of the most approved English Grammars extant—with copious exercises in PARSING and SYNTAX. Fifth edition with an APPENDIX, of various and useful matter, pp. 216, 12 mo. New-York, Robinson, Pratt & Co.

This work, on the plan of Murray's Grammar, has been prepared with much care, and with special reference to the wants of our Common Schools. It comprises in a condensed form, and expressed in plain and perspicuous language, all that is useful and important in the works of the latest and best writers on this subject,—an advantage possessed in an equal degree by no similar work now in use. It is the result not only of much study and careful comparison, but of nearly twenty-five years experience in the school room, during which, the wants of the pupil and the character of books best adapted to those wants, have been carefully noted; and its adaptation to the purpose of instruction has now been thoroughly tested and approved in some of the best schools in this country. It is beautifully printed on a fine strong paper, neatly and firmly

bound, and forms one of the most complete, useful, and economical school books ever offered to the public. The following are a few extracts from,

NOTICES AND RECOMMENDATIONS.

The undersigned have great satisfaction in recommending to the public, "The Principles of English Grammar," by Prof. BULLIONS, of the Albany Academy. Proceeding upon the plan of Murray, he has availed himself of the labors of the most distinguished grammarians, both at home and abroad; and made such a happy use of the helps afforded him, that we know of no work of the kind, in the same compass, which is equal to it in point of merit. Among its many excellencies, it is not the least, that Prof. B. has given a practical illustration of every principle from the beginning to the end; and the possession of his Grammar entirely supersedes the necessity of procuring a separate volume of Exercises on the Rules of Syntax. In a word, we can truly say, in the language of the author, "that there is nothing of much importance in Murray's larger Grammar, or in the works of subsequent writers, that will not be found condensed here."

JOHN LUDLOW,
ISAAC FERRIS,
ALFRED CONKLING,
T. ROMEYN BECK.

ALONZO CRITTENTON,
J. M. GARFIELD,
ROBERT MCKEE.

Albany, October 8, 1842.

[*An Extract from the Minutes of the Board of Trustees of the Albany Female Academy.*]

At a meeting of the trustees of the Albany Female Academy, held on the third instant, the book committee reported, that they had examined Professor Bullions' English Grammar, recently published in this city: and that in their opinion, it contains all that is useful in the most improved treatises now in use, as well as much valuable original matter: that from the copious exercises in false syntax, it will supersede the necessity of a separate volume on that subject; and recommend that it should be used as the text book in this institution.

On motion, it was resolved, that the report of the committee be accepted, and the treatise on English Grammar; by the Rev. Peter Bullions, adopted as the text book in this academy.

An Extract from the Minutes.

A. CRITTENTON, *Secretary of the
Board of Trustees, and
Principal of the Academy.*

Albany, October 13, 1834.

Sing-Sing, November 1, 1834.

DEAR SIR—I have examined your English Grammar with no small degree of satisfaction; and though I am not in the habit of recommending books in this manner, I am constrained in this case to say, I think you have conferred another important favour on the cause of education.

The great defects of most of the English grammars now in use, particularly in the omission of many necessary definitions, or in the want of perspicuity in those given, and also in the rules of construction, are in a great measure happily supplied. I am so well pleased with the result of your labors, that I have adopted it, (as I did your Greek Grammar) for both our institutions.

Yours respectfully,

NATHANIEL S. PRIME, *Principal of*
Mt. Pleasant Academy,

REV. P. BULLIONS,

The undersigned hold the responsibility of recommendation as an important one—often abused, and very frequently used to oblige a personal friend, or to get rid of an urgent applicant. They further appeal to their own conduct for years past, to show that they have only occasionally assumed this responsibility; and therefore feel the greater confidence in venturing to recommend the examination, and the adoption of the Rev. Dr. Bullions' English Grammar, as at once the most concise and the most comprehensive of any with which they are acquainted; as furnishing a satisfactory solution of nearly all the difficulties of the English language; as containing a full series of exercises in false syntax, with rules for their correction; and finally, that the arrangement is in every way calculated to carry the pupil from step to step in the successful acquisition of that most important end of education, the knowledge and use of the English language.

GIDEON HAWLEY,
T. ROMEYN BECK,
JOHN A. DIX.

March 1, 1842.

A cursory examination of the English Grammar of Dr. Bullions, has satisfied me, that it has just claims on public favour. It is concise and simple; the matter is well digested; the exercises excellent, and the typographical execution worthy of all praise. The subscriber takes pleasure in recommending it to the notice of Teachers, and of all persons interested in education.

ALONZO POTTER.

Union College, Sept. 6, 1842.

The English Grammar of the Rev. Dr. Bullions, appears to me, to be the best manual which has appeared as yet. With all the good points of Murray, it has additions and emendations, which I cannot but think would have commended themselves to Murray himself, and if I were a teacher of English Grammar, I would without hesitation prefer it to any other book of the kind,

JAMES W. ALEXANDER,

Professor of Belles Lettres, College of N. J.

Princeton, Aug. 15, 1842

Extract of a letter from REV. BENJAMIN HALE, D.D., *President of Geneva College N. Y.*

REV. DR. BULLIONS.—Dear Sir—I have lately procured a copy of your English Grammar, and given it such attention as my time has permitted, and I do not hesitate to express my conviction, that it is entitled to higher

confidence than any other English Grammar in use among us, and my wish, that it may come into general use. I have seen enough to satisfy me, that you have diligently consulted the best sources, and combined your materials with discrimination and judgment. We have, as a faculty, recommended it by placing it on the list of books to be used by candidates in preparation for this college. I have personally recommended it, and will continue to recommend it, as I have opportunity.

Very respectfully, dear sir, your friend, &c.

BENJAMIN HALE.

Geneva College, July 13, 1842.

Extract of a letter from Rev. CYRUS MASON, D.D., Rector of the Grammar School in the University of New-York.

University, New-York, June 13th, 1842.

REV. DR. BULLIONS.—Dear Sir—At the suggestion of the late Mr. Leckie, head classical master in the Grammar School, we began to introduce your grammars at the opening of the present year. We have made use chiefly of the Greek and English Grammar. The result thus far is a conviction that we have profited by the change, which I was very slow to make; and I doubt not that our farther experience will confirm the good opinion we entertain of your labors in this department of learning. Wishing you a large reward, I remain, very truly yours,

C. MASON, *Rector.*

NOTICES FROM THE PUBLIC PRESS.

FROM A REPORT PRESENTED TO THE JEFFERSON Co. ASSOCIATION OF TEACHERS, *on the English Grammars now in use, the merits of each, and the best method of teaching them.* By the Rev. J. R. BOYD, Principal of Black River Institute.

“2. The Grammar by Prof. BULLIONS of the Albany Academy, is constructed on the same plan as that of Brown; and while it is not so copious in its exercises, nor so full in its observations upon the language, yet it is far more simple in its phraseology, more clear in its arrangement, more free perhaps from errors or things needing improvement, and at the same time contains all that is necessary to be learned in gaining a knowledge of the structure of our language. The Rules of Syntax and observations under them, are expressed generally in the best manner. The Verb is most vividly explained, and that portion of the work contains much not to be found in other grammars, while it judiciously omits a great deal to be found in them, that is unworthy of insertion.

“It is excellent upon Prosody, and upon Poetic Diction

and gives an admirable summary of directions for correct and elegant writing, and the different forms of composition. The typography of the book cannot be too highly commended—a circumstance that greatly affects the comfort and improvement of the learner.

“This grammar is equally well adapted to the beginner and to the advanced scholar. The course of instruction which Prof. B. recommends in the use of his grammar, seems wisely adapted to secure in the readiest manner the improvement of the pupil. The book is not so large as to appal the beginner, nor so small as to be of little use to those advanced. On the whole, in my judgment, no work has yet appeared, which presents equally high claims to general use. It is copious without redundancy—it is well printed, and forms a volume pleasing to the eye. It is lucid and simple, while in the main, it is philosophically exact.—Among the old Grammars, our decided preference is given to that of Prof. Bullions.”

[From the Albany Argus.]

PRINCIPLES OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR.—This work besides containing a full system of grammar, is rendered more immediately useful for academies and common schools, by containing copious examples in good grammar for parsing, and in bad grammar for correction; and all of these are arranged directly under the rule to which they apply. Thus, instead of two books, which are required, (the grammar and the exercises,) the learner finds both in one, for a price at least not greater than the others.

[From the Newburgh Journal.]

BULLIONS' ENGLISH GRAMMAR.—It is not one of the smallest evils connected with our present system of common school education, that our schools are flooded with such a variety of books on elementary subjects, not only differing in arrangement, but frequently involving absurd and contradictory principles. And to no subject are these remarks more applicable, than to English Grammar. And until some one elementary work of an approved character shall be generally introduced into our common schools, we despair of realizing a general proficiency in this important branch of education. It is with pleasure, therefore, that we witness the increasing popularity of “Bullions' English Grammar.” From a familiar acquaintance with the work, from the publication of the first edition, we have no hesitation in pronouncing it the best Grammar with which we are acquainted. The perspicuity of its definitions, the correctness of its principles, the symmetry of its arrangements, as well as the neat and accurate form in which it is presented, and withal the cheapness of the work, are so many recommendations to its general use.

[From the Albany Evening Journal.]

Professor BULLIONS' English Grammar is obviously the fruit of sound and enlightened judgment, patient labor and close reflection. It partakes of the character both of an original work and of a compilation. Following the principles of Murray, and adopting in the main the plan of Lennie, the most distinguished of his successors, the aim of the author, as he states in his preface, has been *to correct what is erroneous, to retrench what is superfluous or unimportant, to compress what is prolix, to elucidate what is obscure, and to determine what is left doubtful*, in the books already in use. In laboring to accomplish this excellent design, he has contrived to condense, in very perspicuous language, within the compass of a small, handsomely printed volume, about 200 pages, and costing but 50 cents, all that is requisite in this form to the acquisition of a thorough knowledge of the grammar of our language. It contains so great a number of exercises in parsing and syntax, judiciously interspersed, as to supersede the necessity of separate manuals of exercises now in use. Among other highly useful things to be found in this book, and not usually met with in works of this nature, are some very valuable critical remarks, and a pretty long "list of improper expressions," which unhappily have crept into use in different parts of our country. Under the head of Prosody, the author has, it is believed, given a better explanation of the principles of English versification, than is to be found in any other work of this nature in this country. In short, I hazard the prediction that this will be found to be decidedly the plainest, most perfect, and most useful manual of English grammar that has yet appeared.

Z.

EXTRACTS FROM LETTERS.

The following, are extracts from letters from County Superintendents of Common Schools in the State of New-York, to whom copies of the work had been sent for examination.

From ALEXANDER FONDA, Esq. Dep. Supt. of Com. Schools, Schenectady Co.

Schenectady, March 30, 1842.

DEAR SIR—I acknowledge the receipt of a copy of your English Grammar, left upon my office desk yesterday afternoon. When in your city some three weeks since, I was presented with a copy by S. S. Randall, Esq.; from the examination I was enabled to give it, and from the opinion expressed in relation to it, by one of the oldest and most experienced teachers of this county, to whom I presented it, as well as from the knowledge I possessed by reputation of its author, I had before I received the copy from you, determined to introduce it as far as I was able, as a class book in the schools of this county.

From CHAUNCEY GOODRICH, Esq. Dep. Supt. of Com. Schools, Onondaga Co
Canal, June 24, 1842.

DEAR SIR—Your favor of the 1st instant has just come to hand. The Grammar referred to has been received and examined. I am fully satisfied of its superior merits as a grammar for common schools, over any

other work I have seen. I shall take the earliest measures for its introduction into the schools under my supervision.

From ROSWELL K. BOURNE, *Esq. Dep. Supt. of Com. Schools, Chenango Co.*
Pitcher, June 30, 1842.

DEAR SIR—Sometime since I received a copy of a work on English grammar, by the Rev. Peter Bullions, D.D. for which I am much obliged. I have given the book as close an examination as circumstances would permit. The book is well got up, and exhibits the thorough acquaintance of the author with his subject. I think it well calculated for our common schools.

From GAERNSEY BEACH, *Esq. Dep. Supt. of Common Schools, Putnam Co.*
Patterson, July 2, 1842.

DEAR SIR—Yours of the first ult, was received on Thursday last. As it respects your Grammar I have carefully examined it, and without entering into particulars, I consider it the best I have ever seen, and as such, I have recommended it to the several schools under my care.

From O. W. RANDALL, *Esq. Dep. Supt. of Common Schools, Oswego Co.*
Phoenix, July 2, 1842.

Mr. P. BULLIONS,—Dear Sir—I have for the last two weeks devoted some considerable time, in perusing your system of English Grammar, and in reply to yours, requesting my views of the work, I can cheerfully say, that its general arrangement, is admirably adapted either to the *novice* or *adept*. The § 27th and § 28th on verbs, with the attendant remarks, are highly important, and essential to the full completion of any system of grammar. The work taken together is remarkable for simplicity, lucidity and exactness, and is calculated not only to make the correct *grammarian*, but also a correct *prosodian*. Whatever may be its fate in the field, it enters with a large share of *merit* on its side, and with full as fair prospect of success as any work extant.

From W. S. PRESTON, *Esq. Dep. Supt. of Com Schools, Suffolk Co. N. Y.*
Patchogue, L. I. July 6, 1842.

Prof. P. BULLIONS,—Dear Sir—Some time since I received a copy of your English Grammar, for which I am much obliged. I have devoted as much time to its perusal as circumstances would permit, and can say of it, that I believe it claims decided preference over the Grammars generally used in schools throughout this country, and indeed I may say, over the many works of that science extant.

From JAMES HENRY, *Esq. Dep. Supt. of Common Schools, Herkimer Co.*
Little-Falls, July 11, 1842.

Prof. BULLIONS,—Sir—I have read with as much attention as my avocations would allow, the work you had the kindness to send me, upon English Grammar, and so far as I am capable of forming an opinion of the merits of your book, I concur generally in the views expressed in the extract from the report of M. Boyd, as contained in your circular.

From D. H. STEVENS, *Dep. Supt. of Common Schools, Franklin Co. N. Y.*
Moirs, Aug. 27, 1842.

Rev. P. BULLIONS,—Dear Sir—On Wednesday the 24th instant, the committee determined upon a series of books, and I have the happiness to inform you, that your English Grammar will be reported on the first Wednesday in October. at the next meeting of the Association, as the most brief, perspicuous and philosophical work, upon that subject within our knowledge.

From R. W. FINCH, *Esq. Dep. Supt. of Common Schools. Steuben Co. N. Y.*
Bath, Sept. 11, 1842.

DEAR SIR—Having at length given your English Grammar a careful perusal; and having compared it with all the modern works on the subject, which have any considerable claims to merit, I am prepared to make a more enlightened decision, and one that is satisfactory to myself. *The work has my decided preference.*

From J. W. FAIRFIELD, and CYRUS CURTISS, *Esqrs. Dep. Superintendents of Common Schools, Hudson, N. Y.*

Hudson, Sept. 15, 1842.

Rev. P. BULLIONS,—Sir—We have examined a copy of your English Grammar, with reference to the introduction of the same into our public schools, and we take pleasure in saying that the examination has proved very satisfactory. We cannot, without occupying too much space, specify the particular points of excellence which we noticed in the arrangement of the different parts, the clearness of expression and illustration, and the precise adaptation of the Rules of Syntax, to the principles previously laid down. It is sufficient to say, that we believe it to be, in all the requisites of a good school book, superior to any other English Grammar which has come under our observation.

II. THE PRINCIPLES OF LATIN GRAMMAR, &c.

This work is upon the foundation of ADAM'S LATIN GRAMMAR, so long and so well known as a text book in this country. The object aimed at was to combine with all that is excellent in the work of Adam, the important results of subsequent labors in this field,—to correct errors and supply defects,—to bring the whole up to that point which the present state of classical learning requires,—and to give it such a form as to render it a suitable part of the series. The following notices are furnished.

From REV. JAMES W. ALEXANDER, *Prof. Belles Lettres in the College of New-Jersey.*

Princeton, N. J. Aug. 15, 1842.

I have examined with some care the Latin Grammar of the Rev. Dr. Bullions. It is, if I may hazard a judgment, a most valuable work, evincing that peculiar apprehension of the pupil's necessities, which nothing but long continued practice as an instructor can produce. Among our various Latin Grammars, it deserves the place which is occupied by the best; and no teacher, as I think, need hesitate a moment about introducing it

[From the Biblical Repertory, or Princeton Review, Jan. 1842.]

THE PRINCIPLES OF LATIN GRAMMAR, &c.—This completes the series proposed by the learned author, who has now furnished us with an English, a Latin, and a Greek Grammar, which have this peculiar recommendation that they are arranged in the same order, and expressed in the same terms, so far as the differences of the languages permit. The basis of this manual is the well known Grammar of Adam, an excellent summary, but at the same time one which admitted of retrenchment, addition, and emendation, all which have been ably furnished by Dr. Bullions. We have not made a business of perusing the work laboriously, but we have looked over the whole and bestowed particular attention on certain parts; and therefore feel at liberty to recommend it with great confidence, especially to all such teachers as have been in the habit of using Adam's Grammar.

III. THE PRINCIPLES OF GREEK GRAMMAR, &c.

The object of this publication was to provide a comprehensive manual of Greek Grammar, adapted to the use of the younger, as well as to the more advanced class of students in our schools and colleges, and especially of those under the author's own care. To this end, the leading principles of Greek Grammar are exhibited in rules as few and brief as possible, so as to be easily committed to memory, and at the same time so comprehensive and perspicuous, as to be of general and easy application.

The following notices of this work, from different sources, will show the estimate formed of it by competent judges.

BULLIONS' GREEK GRAMMAR.—We have examined the second edition of Dr. Bullions' Greek Grammar, and consider it, upon the whole, the best grammar of the Greek language with which we are acquainted. The parts to be committed to memory are both concise and comprehensive; the illustrations are full without prolixity, and the arrangement natural and judicious. The present edition is considerably reduced in size from the former, without, as we apprehend, at all impairing its value.

It discovers in its compilation much labor and research, as well as sound judgment. We are persuaded that the general use of it in our grammar schools and academies would facilitate the acquisition of a thorough knowledge of the language. Judicious teachers pursuing the plan marked out by the author in his preface, would usually conduct their pupils to a competent knowledge of the language in a less time by several months than by the systems formerly in use. We therefore give it our cordial recommendation.

ELIPHALET NOTT,
R. PROUDFIT,
ALONZO POTTER.

Union College, December 19, 1840.

Extract of a letter from Rev. DANIEL D. WHEDON, A.M. Professor of Ancient Languages and Literature, in the Wesleyan University, Middleton, Ct.

Wesleyan University, March 29, 1842.

Rev. Dr. BULLIONS,—Dear Sir—Although I have not the honor of

your personal acquaintance, I take the liberty of addressing to you my thanks for your excellent Greek Grammar. Notwithstanding many personal, urgent, and interested appeals in favor of other grammars—and our literary market seems to abound with that kind of stock—the intrinsic superiority of your manual over every rival, induced me, after I saw your last edition, to adopt it in the Greek department of the Wesleyan University, and the success of my present Freshman class, amply justifies the course.

Extract of a letter from HENRY BANNISTER, A.M. Principal of the Academy in Fairfield, N. Y.

Fairfield Academy, May 12, 1842.

REV. DOCT. BULLIONS,—Sir—Sometime since I received your English and Greek Grammar, of each, one copy; and, if it is not too late, I would now return you my sincere thanks. I have not found in any work, suitable for a text book in schools, an analysis of the verb so strictly philosophical, and at the same time so easy to the learner to master and to retain when mastered, as that contained in your work. The editorial observations on government, and indeed the whole matter and arrangement of the Syntax, especially commend your work to general use in schools.

[From the Princeton Review, for Jan. 1840.]

It is with pleasure we welcome a second edition of this manual, which we continue to regard as still unsurpassed by any similar work in our language. The typography and the quality of the paper are uncommonly good. We observe valuable additions and alterations. For all that we can see, everything worth knowing in Thiersch is here condensed into a few pages. We have certainly never seen the anatomy of the Greek verb so neatly demonstrated. The Syntax is full, and presents the leading facts and principles, by rules, so as to be easily committed to memory. To learners who are beginning the language, and especially to teachers of grammar schools, we earnestly recommend this book.

[From the New-York Observer.]

BULLIONS' PRINCIPLES OF GREEK GRAMMAR, &c. 2d edition. With pleasure we hail the second edition of this valuable work, and are happy to find that the revision which it has undergone has resulted in decided improvements. Formed, as it is, on the basis of that most symmetrical of all modern grammars. Dr. Moor's Greek Grammar, which its learned author never lived to complete. It is now made to embrace not only the general rules, but all the *minutiae* essential to a critical knowledge of that ancient and elegant language. One of the chief excellencies of this model, and one that is fully retained in this grammar, is to be found in the simplicity, perspicuity, conciseness, and yet fulness of the definitions and rules for the various modifications of the language. The sense is clearly expressed, while scarcely a particle is used that could have been dispensed with. We have no hesitation in expressing the opinion, that Dr. B. has produced the most complete and useful Greek grammar that is to be found in the English language.

RECOMMENDATIONS OF THE SERIES.

From the Rev. JOHN LUDLOW, D.D. Provost of the University of Penn.

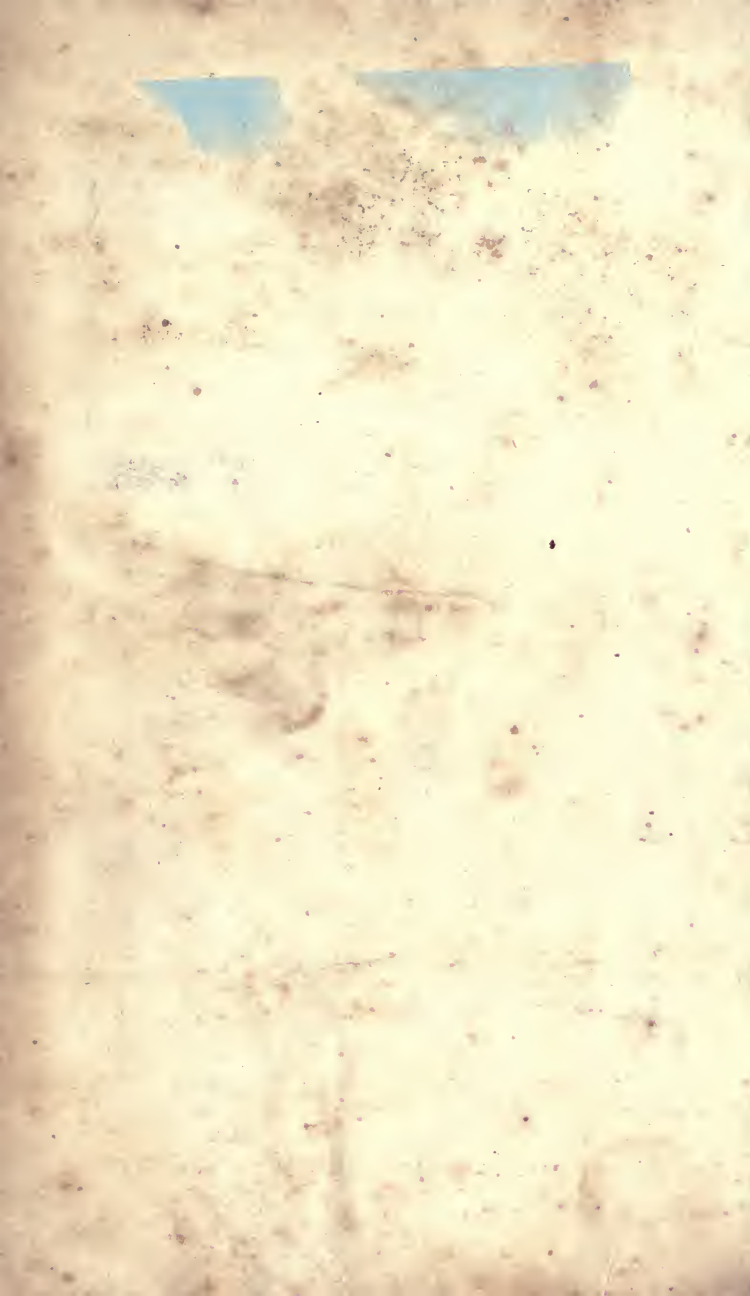
No one I think can ever examine the series of Grammars published by Dr. Bullions, without a deep conviction of their superior excellence. When the English Grammar, the first in the series, was published in 1834. it was my pleasure, in connexion with some honored individuals, in the city of Albany, to bear the highest testimony to its worth; that testimony, if I mistake not, received the unanimous approval of all whose judgment can or ought to influence public opinion. I have seen, with great gratification, that the 2d and 3d in the series, the Latin and Greek, have met with the same favorable judgement, which I believe to be entirely deserved, and in which I do most heartily concur.

From the Hon. ALFRED CONKLING, Judge of the United States Court in the Northern District of New-York, published in the Cayuga Patriot.

BULLIONS' SERIES OF GRAMMARS.—By the recent publication of "**THE PRINCIPLES OF LATIN GRAMMAR**," this series of grammars (English, Latin, and Greek,) is at length completed. To their preparation, Dr. Bullions has devoted many years of the best portion of his life. In the composition of these books, he has shown an intimate acquaintance with the works of his ablest predecessors; and while upon the one hand, he has not scrupled freely to avail himself of their labors, on the other hand, by studiously avoiding all that is objectionable in them, and by re-modelling, improving, and illustrating the rest, he has unquestionably succeeded in constructing the best—decidedly the very best—grammar, in each of the three above named languages, that has yet appeared. Such is the deliberate and impartial judgment which has been repeatedly expressed by the most competent judges, respecting the English and Greek grammars; and such, I hesitate not to believe, will be the judgment formed of the Latin grammar. But independently of the superiority of these works separately considered, they possess, collectively, the great additional recommendation of having their leading parts *arranged in the same order*, and, as far as properly can be done, *expressed in the same language*. An acquaintance with one of them, therefore, cannot fail greatly to facilitate the study of another, and at the same time, by directing the attention of the student distinctly to the points of agreement and of difference in the several languages, to render his acquisitions more accurate, and at the same time to give him clearer and more comprehensive views of the general principles of language. The importance of using in academies and schools of the United States none but ably written and unexceptionable school books, is incalculable; and without intending unnecessarily to depreciate the labors of others, as a friend of sound education, I cannot refrain from expressing an earnest hope of seeing this series of grammars in general use. They are all beautifully printed on very good paper, and are sold at very reasonable prices.







YB 35669

PA6235

B94

1845

Educ

Lib

M577099

